

# Birla Central Library

PILANI (Jaipur State)

Class No :- 414

Book No :- P 91 M

Accession No :- 14189





**MODERN GEOGRAPHY**

**BOOK III**

**EUROPE**





*F. Kratz.*

#### THE RHINE GORGE.

After leaving the broad rift valley, the Rhine flows through a highland region from Bingen to Bonn, and in this part of its course the hills are everywhere very close to the river as in the above picture. Notice the levelness of the plateau top; the limited amount of lowland available for railways, roads, and towns; the convoy of barges and the river steamer; the castle (one of many) which stands high above the river. For the most part the valley sides in this picture are forested, but where the slopes are a little less steep there are extensive vineyards, such as is shown in the bottom right-hand corner.

# MODERN GEOGRAPHY

---

## BOOK III

# EUROPE

BY

D. M. PREECE

LATE SENIOR GEOGRAPHY MISTRESS, CREWE SECONDARY SCHOOL

AND

H. R. B. WOOD, M.A.

CAMBRIDGE GEOGRAPHICAL TRIPOS, DIRECTOR OF EDUCATION  
FOR WALLASEY, FORMERLY LECTURER IN GEOGRAPHY  
ST. MARY'S TRAINING COLLEGE, STRAWBERRY HILL.  
LATE GILCHRIST STUDENT IN GEOGRAPHY



LONDON

UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL PRESS LD.

CLIFTON HOUSE, EUSTON ROAD, N.W. 1

# MODERN GEOGRAPHY

---

A course in general and regional  
geography for schools.

By D. M. PREECE and H. R. B.  
WOOD, M.A.

BOOK I. FOUNDATIONS OF GEO-  
GRAPHY.

BOOK II. THE BRITISH ISLES.

BOOK III. EUROPE.

Three other volumes in preparation.

*Published 1939*

## PREFACE

*Europe* is the third of a series of books issued under the general title “ Modern Geography ” which have been written to meet the needs of pupils preparing for the School Certificate Examinations and other examinations of similar standard.

The first chapters are devoted to descriptions of the more general features of the geography of the continent as a whole. In the remaining chapters each country is described in turn, due emphasis being laid on the regional aspects. In a book dealing with a continent such as Europe where international problems and understanding are so closely related to facts of physical, racial, and economic geography, it is natural that there should be special reference to such vital problems as those produced by the existence of “ minorities ” in many of the Danubian states. If the teaching of geography is to be of real and lasting value then the pupils of to-day must not only learn the facts of the human geography of Europe, but they must be trained to apply those facts to the problems which they may have to consider as citizens of the future.

The Union of Soviet Socialist Republics has been accorded rather more space than is usual in textbooks of this size. It has been felt that, because of their geographical uniformity, the Russian Lands of Europe and Asia cannot logically be separated. For this reason the U.S.S.R. has been described as a whole in relation to its physical, regional, and economic geography. This has been followed by a fuller treatment of the major economic regions of European Russia. The more detailed treatment of Asiatic Russia will be found in the volume on Asia. Every effort has been made to keep the text

and map abreast of recent developments in connection with the expansion of the German Reich up to the time of going to press.

As in the case of the preceding volumes, numerous illustrations and diagrams should prove to be a valuable and attractive feature of the book. Many of the pictures will provide suitable subjects for discussion and form the basis of other appropriate exercises.

The authors are particularly indebted to Mr. W. Hannah, B.Sc., of Crewe Secondary School, for the great help which he has given at all stages during the preparation of this book. They also offer their thanks to Norwegian State Railways; Belgian Railways and Marine; Swiss Federal Railways; Les Petits-Fils des Fois de Wendel; Swedish Travel Bureau; French Railways; O.D.L.U.T. Brussels; Netherland Tourist Office; Official Tourist Office, The Hague; Danish Tourist Bureau; Suomen Matkat; Polish Press Bureau; German Railways; Hungarian National Office for Tourism; Romanian Legation; Bulgarian Legation; Greek Legation; E.N.I.T.; Casa de Portugal; and the former Austrian State Travel Bureau and Czechoslovak Legation.

# CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY .. .. .	1
II. GENERAL ECONOMIC GEOGRAPHY .. ..	26
III. THE COUNTRIES OF THE NORTH-WESTERN MARGINS OF EUROPE: (1) FRANCE ..	40
IV. THE COUNTRIES OF THE NORTH-WESTERN MARGINS OF EUROPE: (2) BELGIUM AND HOLLAND .. .. .	65
V. THE COUNTRIES OF THE NORTH-WESTERN MARGINS OF EUROPE: (3) DENMARK ..	81
VI. THE COUNTRIES OF THE NORTH-WESTERN MARGINS OF EUROPE: (4) NORWAY ..	87
VII. THE COUNTRIES BORDERING THE BALTIC SEA: (1) SWEDEN .. .. .	97
VIII. THE COUNTRIES BORDERING THE BALTIC SEA: (2) THE NEW REPUBLICS OF THE EASTERN BALTIC .. .. .	106
IX. THE COUNTRIES BORDERING THE BALTIC SEA: (3) POLAND .. .. .	113
X. THE COUNTRIES BORDERING THE BALTIC SEA: (4) GERMANY .. .. .	120
XI. SWITZERLAND .. .. .	149
XII. THE DANUBE LANDS: (1) THE NORTH SLAV STATES .. .. .	159
XIII. THE DANUBE LANDS: (2) HUNGARY .. ..	170

CHAPTER	PAGE
XIV. THE DANUBE LANDS: (3) YUGOSLAVIA ..	175
XV. THE DANUBE LANDS: (4) ROMANIA, BULGARIA, ALBANIA, AND TURKEY .. .. .	182
XVI. THE MEDITERRANEAN REGION .. .. .	194
XVII. THE MEDITERRANEAN LANDS: (1) GREECE ..	200
XVIII. THE MEDITERRANEAN LANDS: (2) ITALY ..	205
XIX. THE MEDITERRANEAN LANDS: (3) SPAIN AND PORTUGAL .. .. .	228
XX. UNION OF SOCIALIST SOVIET REPUBLICS ..	247
XXI. UNION OF SOCIALIST SOVIET REPUBLICS: AGRI- CULTURE .. .. .	264
XXII. UNION OF SOCIALIST SOVIET REPUBLICS: MINERALS AND INDUSTRIAL DEVELOPMENT	276
QUESTIONS .. .. .	303
INDEX .. .. .	309

# EUROPE

## CHAPTER I

### PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY

#### The Pre-eminence of Europe

Europe has been called the “most active of the continents” on account of the volume of its trade and industries and the density of its population. Europe occupies one-fifteenth of the land area of the earth, but has one-quarter of the population, *i.e.* nearly four times its share of people relative to the rest of the world. Europe exceeds all other continents in the production of 29 products of major importance, which include wheat, oats, rye and barley; sugar, cattle, dairy produce and hides; sheep, wool, flax; coal and iron and many manufactured goods (Figs. 1, 2 and 3). In comparison, it may be noted that North America leads in the production of ten major products (including maize, cotton, oil and tobacco); Asia in seven (including rice, silk, tea, rubber and tin); South America in two (coffee and linseed); Africa in one (gold); and Australia in none.

The trade of Europe, too, exceeds that of all other continents, and so does the total output of manufactured goods.

Europeans have explored and colonised a large proportion of the land outside Europe, and to-day Europeans or people of European descent (including Americans) control 90 per cent. of the earth's surface, and the European civilisation is responsible for nearly all the progress of the last few centuries.

The European lead in trade, manufactures, and international affairs may be due to a number of causes:—

(1) Its position in temperate latitudes which are neither too hot nor too cold to hinder progress.

(2) Its central position in relation to the land hemisphere and its position relative to the Atlantic Ocean and America.



(3) The high proportion of habitable land. Europe has little desert, a small proportion of mountain waste, and no areas of impenetrable forest such as the Amazon forest.

(4) The shape of Europe, viz. a large peninsula composed of many smaller peninsulas, so that access to the sea is relatively easy, and, moreover, sea influence ameliorates the climatic conditions, especially in the west.

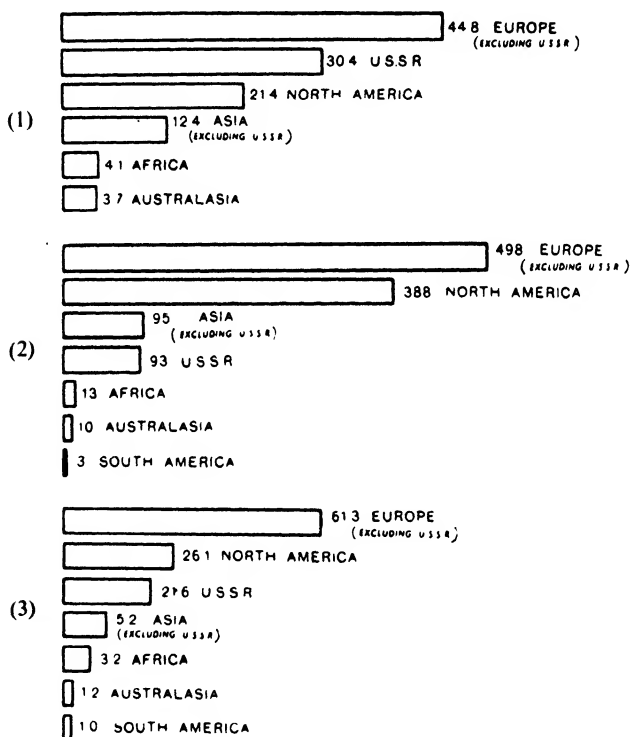


Fig. 1. WHEAT. Fig. 2. COAL. Fig. 3. IRON ORE. Position of Europe as a producer in comparison with other continents, 1934 (in millions of tons).

(5) Its large supplies of coal and iron, and their relatively early exploitation.

(6) The mixing of European races resulting in a variety of energetic and inventive people.

### The Build of Europe

Structurally, Europe consists of three major divisions with an east to west trend (Fig. 4)—

- (1) The Northern Mountains.
- (2) The Central Lowlands.

(3) The Southern Mountain Systems comprising: (a) the new fold mountains, *i.e.* the Alpine system; (b) lower and older and block mountains (the Hercynian system).

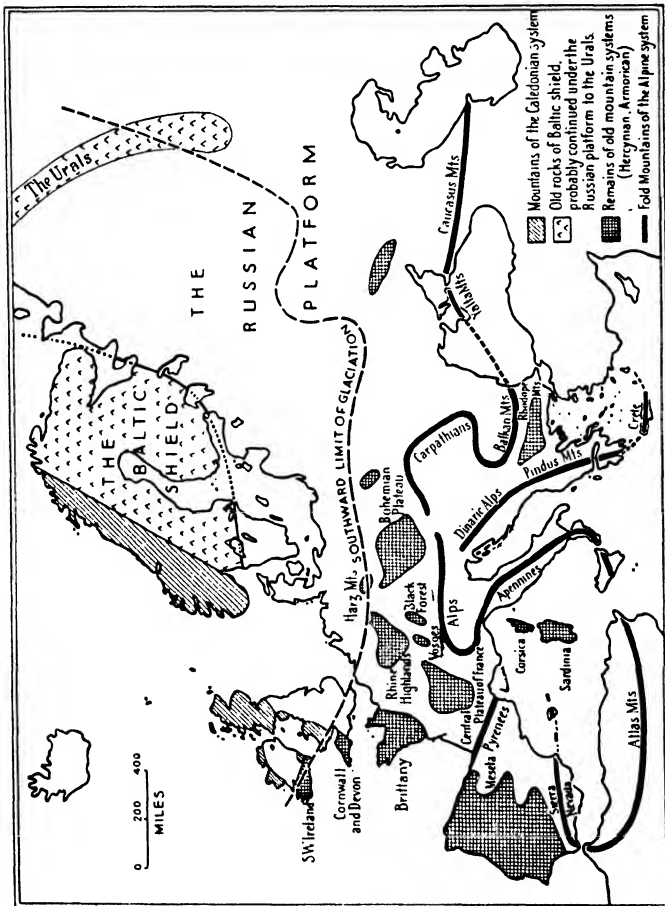


Fig. 4. THE MOUNTAIN SYSTEMS OF EUROPE.

(1) **THE NORTHERN MOUNTAINS.**—The northern mountain system includes the Urals, the mountains of Scandinavia, Spitzbergen, Iceland, and the mountainous regions of North-Western Britain. It is a region of ancient sedimentary, metamorphic and igneous rocks, which have been lowered by weathering and glacial erosion. The highest points reach 8000 feet in the Dovre fjeld of Southern Norway. Finland, although not mountainous, is composed of the same ancient rocks, and, structurally, should be included in this region. The southern limit of this area is marked by a line of depressions extending through the Skager Rak, lakes Vener, Vetter, and Malar in Sweden, the Gulf of Finland, lakes Ladoga and Onega in Russia, and the White Sea.

(2) **THE CENTRAL LOWLAND.**—The Central Lowland of Europe extends from Northern France and South-Eastern England through Holland, Belgium, Denmark, Southern Sweden, North Germany, the Baltic States and Russia. Narrowest in Belgium, it steadily increases in width eastwards. Except in the northern half of Russia, it is everywhere composed of newer sedimentary rocks of Secondary or Tertiary age. These may have been slightly folded and tilted as in Northern France and South-East England, or else, as in North Germany and Russia, they are virtually undisturbed horizontal strata. The general result is a plain of subdued relief and gentle slopes, mostly less than 500 feet above sea-level but rising slowly to just over 1000 feet in the Valdai Hills of Russia.

(3) **THE SOUTHERN MOUNTAIN SYSTEMS.**—Structurally this is the most complex division of Europe and consists of two distinct groups of mountains, (a) the new fold mountains, and (b) the older block mountains.\* The relative positions of these two types of mountains are shown in Fig. 4.

(a) The new fold or Alpine system (see page 19) consists of high ranges (rising to over 15,000 feet in Mont Blanc) which sweep in great curves from west to east across Southern Europe. The main line extends through the Cantabrian

\* The whole system of late Devonian folding is known as the Hercynian System from the Harz Mts. where they are typically exhibited. The western series form the American fragments and the eastern the Variscan fragments (Suess).



*Norwegian State Rlys.*

THE ROMSDAL VALLEY, NORWAY.

This scene is typical of the Northern Highlands of Europe. Notice the even level of the mountain tops; the rounded outlines; the bareness of the slopes and the absence of soil on the hills in the background; and the deep glaciated valley. This picture should be contrasted carefully with the Alpine view on page 19.

Mountains, Pyrenees, Alps, Carpathians, Balkan Mountains and the Caucasus Mountains. From this there are two important branches, (1) through the Apennines, Sicily, the Atlas Mountains of North Africa and the Sierra Nevada of South Spain, and (2) through the mountains of Yugoslavia and Greece, the island of Crete and the Aegean islands to Asia Minor. From earliest times this mountain system has formed a great barrier to intercourse between the Mediterranean and Northern Europe. Hence, where "breaks" (viz. the Rhone valley) do occur they are of great importance as routes (see Fig. 78).

(b) The second series of mountains and plateaux in Southern Europe includes the Meseta of Spain, the Central Plateau of France, the Rhine Highlands including the Vosges and Black Forest, the Bohemian plateau, the Rhodope Mountains and the islands of Sardinia and Corsica. These are all much lower than the Alpine mountains and are composed of older rock. They are the fractured remains of an old mountain system (the Hercynian system) which existed in Europe before the Alps were raised. The two series of mountains exerted considerable influence upon each other. Firstly, the sweeping curves of the Alpine ranges were determined by the resistance offered by the older highlands (*e.g.* note the southward bend of the eastern Alps and western Carpathians in relation to the Bohemian plateau). Secondly, the immense pressure of the Alpine folds against the older mountains caused the latter to be fractured. In some cases the fractured areas were uplifted, and in others depressed so that all that now remains of the earlier system are detached plateaux and block mountains, sometimes separated by rift valleys (*e.g.* the Rhine rift valley) (see Fig. 60). Within the curves of the Alpine folds and between the fold mountains and the older block mountains are numbers of lowland areas, *e.g.* the plains of Andalusia and Aragon in Spain, the lower Rhone valley, the plain of North Italy and the Hungarian plain. These were formed by subsidence during the mountain-building period, since when they have been filled with sediments and are now fertile plains. The depression filled by the Mediterranean Sea was probably formed by subsidence during this same period.

### The Effects of the Ice Age in Europe

The surface of much of Northern Europe has been greatly modified by glacial action during the Great Ice Age. During that period the climate of Europe was colder than it is to-day. Accumulations of unmelted snow on the highlands of Scandinavia developed into great ice sheets which moved slowly southwards. The southern limit to which the ice spread is marked approximately by a line from the Shannon estuary to London, and thence eastwards across the southern edge of the European Plain to Moscow and north-eastward to the northern end of the Urals (see Fig. 4). Broadly, the action of the ice sheets was twofold, (a) erosion in the north and (b) deposition of the eroded material further south. In the Northern Highlands of Europe the ice removed the soil and exposed the bare rock over large areas. Mountains lost their ragged outline and became rounded in contour ; valleys were deepened and lakes formed both by the scooping out of hollows in the rock (*e.g.* Finland) and by the damming of rivers with morainic debris (*e.g.* in Sweden and Scotland).

Further south in the European lowlands vast areas were covered with glacial deposits which concealed the structure of the land. Such deposits are to be found in various parts of the British Isles (*e.g.* Cheshire, East Anglia and Central Ireland). The fertility of glacial soils largely depends on the nature of the rocks from which they were originally derived. In Northern Germany, bordering the Baltic Sea, are morainic accumulations forming low hills (see Fig. 51). There the soils are extremely infertile as are many of the glacial soils of Central Russia. The uneven and hummocky nature of morainic country hinders natural drainage, and water tends to collect in the hollows. Hence these morainic regions are characterised by numbers of small lakes and marshes, *e.g.* East Prussia. During the maximum extension of the ice, rivers flowing north across the European plain had their outlets blocked. The water accumulated along the southern edge of the ice sheet and lakes of a temporary nature were formed. The Pripyet marshes on the Russo-Polish boundary are a remnant of such a lake of the Glacial period. During the Ice Age, too, the glaciers of Switzerland were much more extensive and descended to lower levels than they do to-day.

Some of the lakes of Switzerland and Northern Italy are the result of the damming of river valleys by morainic deposits (*e.g.* Lake Garda).

### The Climate of Europe

The characteristic features of the climate of Europe, viz. the absence of large areas of scanty rainfall and the relative equability of all European countries except Russia, are largely due to three factors.

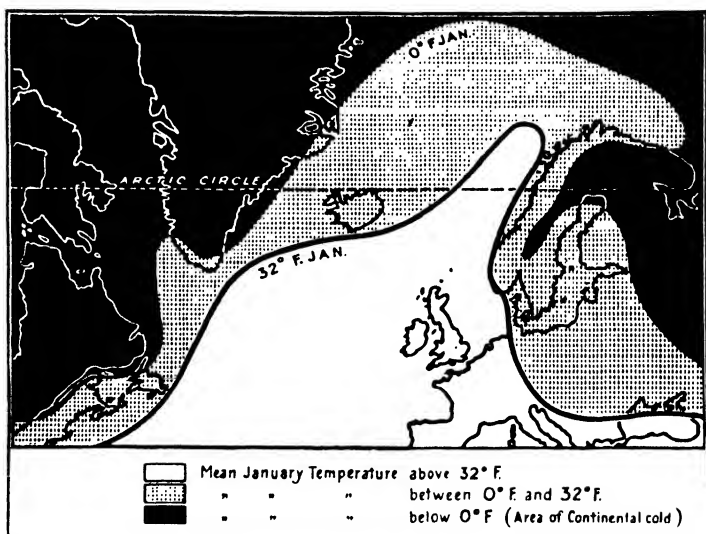


Fig. 5. TO SHOW THE POSITION OF THE BRITISH ISLES WITHIN THE "GULF OF WINTER WARMTH."

(1) The long eastward extensions of the sea (*a*) along the north to the Gulf of Finland, and (*b*) along the south to the Black Sea. Because of this the influence of the sea is felt in Eastern Europe away from the open Atlantic.

(2) The west to east arrangement of highland and lowland, which allows the penetration of rain-bearing winds from the Atlantic. These winds also help to reduce the range of temperature.



*Courtesy of Belgian Rlys. and Marine.*

#### A VIEW IN FLANDERS.

The above picture shows the flatness of the European Plain. Notice the careful cultivation of the fields, a characteristic feature of the western section of the plain. This picture should be contrasted with the view of the Russian section of the plain (page 252) where agriculture is of a more extensive type and where large-scale methods are used.



(3) The abnormal warmth of the waters of the North Atlantic. The January isotherm of  $32^{\circ}$  F. makes a great bend north of the British Isles, enclosing the region generally known as the "Gulf of Winter Warmth." The general effect of the warmth of the Atlantic is to raise the winter temperatures of North-Western Europe well above the average for the latitude (see Fig. 5).

### Isotherms

The general direction of isotherms in summer in Europe is from west to east, bending slightly northwards in Eastern

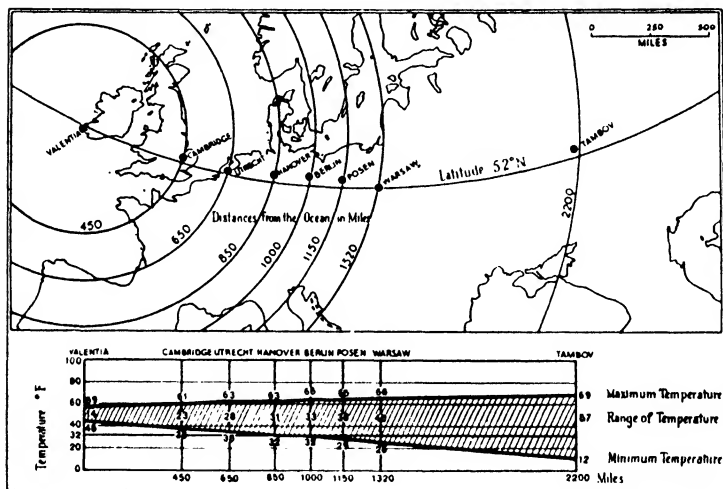


Fig. 6. TO SHOW HOW RANGE OF TEMPERATURE INCREASES WITH DISTANCE FROM SEA.

Europe, and so showing a *gradual* increase in summer temperatures with increasing distance from the sea. The  $50^{\circ}$  F. isotherm passes through Northern Norway and Northern Russia, where it marks the southern margin of the Tundra. The isotherm of  $70^{\circ}$  F. runs west to east through the heart of Central Europe, so that all Southern Europe has average summer temperatures above  $70^{\circ}$  F. The central areas of the three southern peninsulas (viz. Spain, Southern Italy and Greece) have average summer temperatures exceeding  $80^{\circ}$  F.

The January isotherms of Europe offer a striking contrast to those for July, in that over the whole of peninsular Europe they tend to run north and south. This is due to two factors—the continental cold to the east, and the abnormal ocean warmth to the west. The course of the 32° F. should be carefully noted. It shows that Cornwall, in January, is as warm as the south coast of France, and that Iceland is as warm as the northern shores of the Black Sea, in spite of the fact that Iceland is about 1500 miles farther north than the Black Sea. In winter temperatures decrease rapidly eastwards, with a corresponding increase in the range of temperature. The eastward increase in range of temperature is shown by the following figures and by Fig. 6.

	Distance from open Atlantic in miles.	Temperature for hottest month.	Temperature for coldest month.	Range.
Valentia ...	—	59° F.	45° F.	14° F.
Cambridge	450	61° F.	38° F.	23° F.
Utrecht ...	630	63° F.	35° F.	28° F.
Hanover ...	850	63° F.	32° F.	31° F.
Berlin ...	1,100	65° F.	32° F.	33° F.
Posen ...	1,350	65° F.	29° F.	36° F.
Warsaw ...	1,480	66° F.	26° F.	40° F.
Tambov ...	2,100	69° F.	12° F.	57° F.

It should be noted that the summer temperatures increase more slowly eastward than the winter temperatures decrease, showing that the sea has a greater moderating effect in winter than in summer.

If the January isotherm of 32° F. and the July isotherm of 70° F. are drawn on the same map, four distinct temperature regions result which are shown in Fig. 7. They are (a) the north-west, with very low ranges of temperature, mild winters and cool summers, (b) the south-west, with mild winters and hot summers, (c) the north-east, with cold winters and cool summers, and (d) the south-eastern region with the greatest ranges of temperature, cold winters and hot summers.

### Rainfall

In general, the rainfall of Europe decreases from the north-west, where the mountainous areas of Britain have nearly 200 inches of rain per annum, to the south-east where the regions between the Black and the Caspian Seas have less than 10 inches annually. The only other region of low rainfall in Europe is in the north of Russia, in the cold lands of the tundra, where the annual precipitation is also less than 10 inches. The distribution of rainfall is determined by several

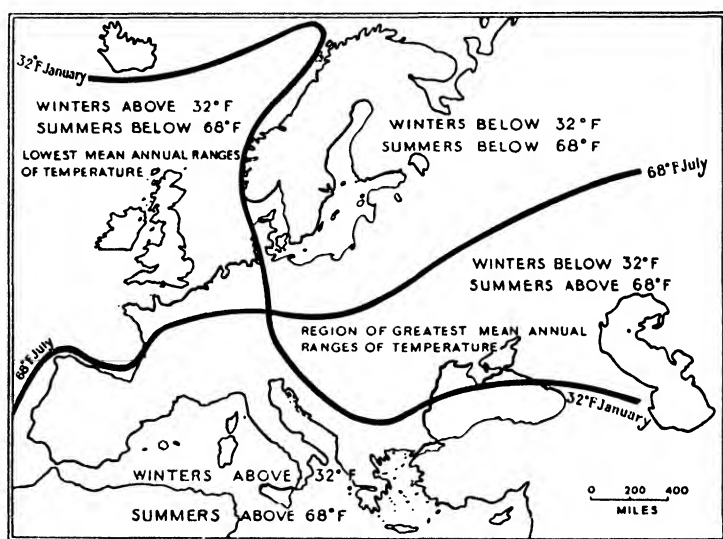


Fig. 7. EUROPE—TEMPERATURE.

factors, (1) the winds, (2) the seasonal changes of pressure on the continent of Europe, and (3) the relief.

In *winter* the whole of Europe lies in the track of the westerly winds and their attendant depressions. The heart of the continent is, however, a region of high pressure due to intense cold (Fig. 8). This wedge of high pressure divides the depressions from the Atlantic into two streams, (1) one of which travels north of the high pressure zone along the coast of Norway, and (2) the other south of the high pressure zone along the Mediterranean. Thus rain falls over the whole of



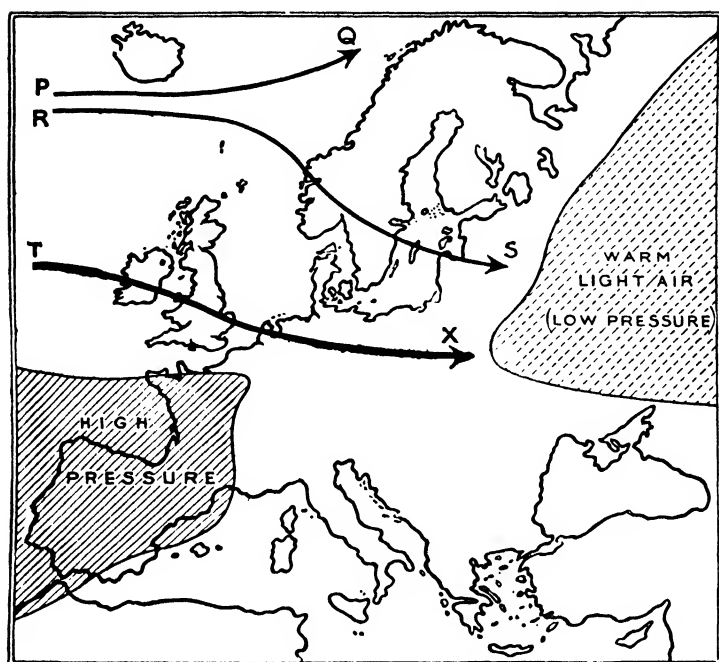


Fig. 9. SUMMER CONDITIONS IN EUROPE.

from the Atlantic and partly due to convection. The summer rainfall decreases steadily eastwards towards the Caspian Sea.

Thus in Europe there are five rainfall zones (Fig. 10)—

(1) The north-western regions, which have heavy rain falling throughout the year, but with a maximum in autumn and winter.

(2) The Mediterranean area, with moderate winter rain and light or scanty summer rain.

(3) The interior of Europe, with moderate to light summer rainfall, but with heavier rainfall in mountainous regions.

(4) The tundra, with scanty rainfall and a summer maximum.

(5) The regions near the Caspian Sea, with scanty rainfall.

### The Vegetation of Europe

Little of the original vegetation of Europe remains to-day, for during the long centuries of development and settlement man has cut down the forests and cultivated the land. The greater part of the continent was originally covered by cool temperate forests, both deciduous and coniferous.

Except where highland areas break the continuity, Europe can be divided into six vegetation zones (Fig. 11).

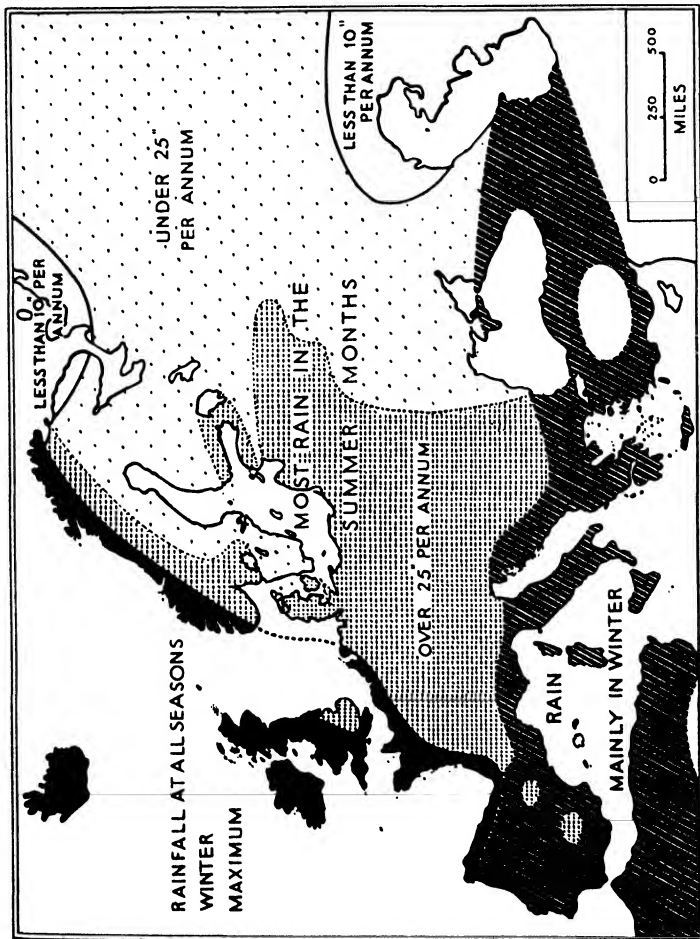


Fig. 10. GENERALISED RAINFALL MAP OF EUROPE.

(1) In the north of Russia is a narrow strip of tundra (cold, almost treeless plains), where the principal vegetation is mosses, lichens, berry-bearing bushes, and occasional stunted birch trees.

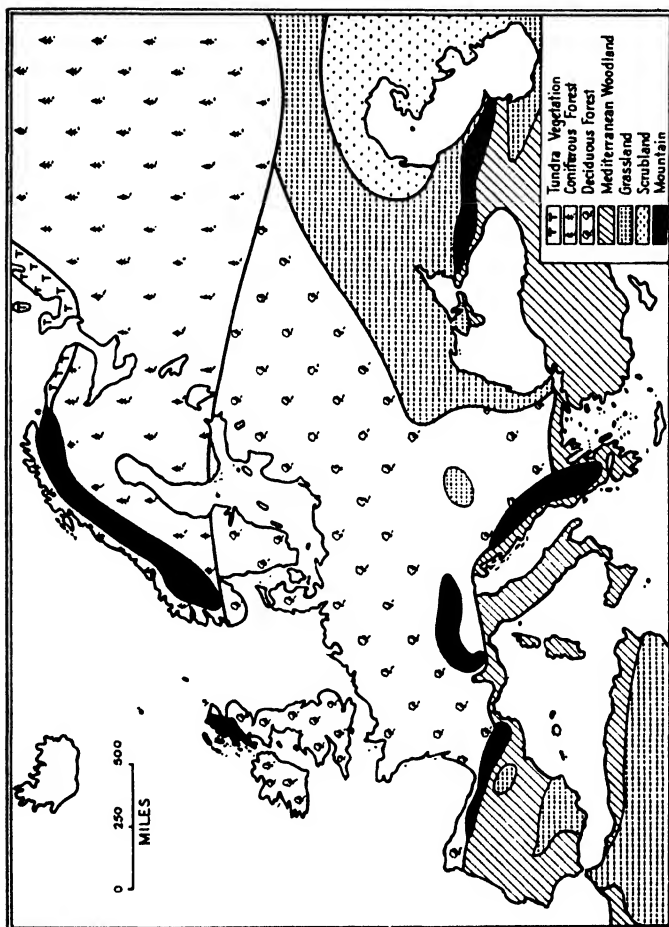


Fig. 11. A SIMPLIFIED VEGETATION MAP OF EUROPE.—Note that vegetation changes with altitude, e.g. in the deciduous forest zone, the highlands are often covered with coniferous forest, and the highest areas may be devoid of trees. Much of the original forest has been cleared.

(2) South of the Tundra is a broad belt of Coniferous Forest, extending through Scandinavia and Russia roughly north of a line from Oslo through Leningrad to the southern end of the Urals. Near Ufa a large area of this forest

is still uncleared and is an important source of timber, wood pulp, etc. The chief trees of this belt are pine, fir, spruce, larch, etc.

(3) South and west of the Coniferous Forest belt is the deciduous forest belt, lying between the Oslo-Ufa line and a line from North Spain to Ufa. Most of this forest belt has been cleared, but it was originally a wedge-shaped area narrowing eastwards along 55° north to the southern end of the Urals, where it ended. Within this area conifers replace

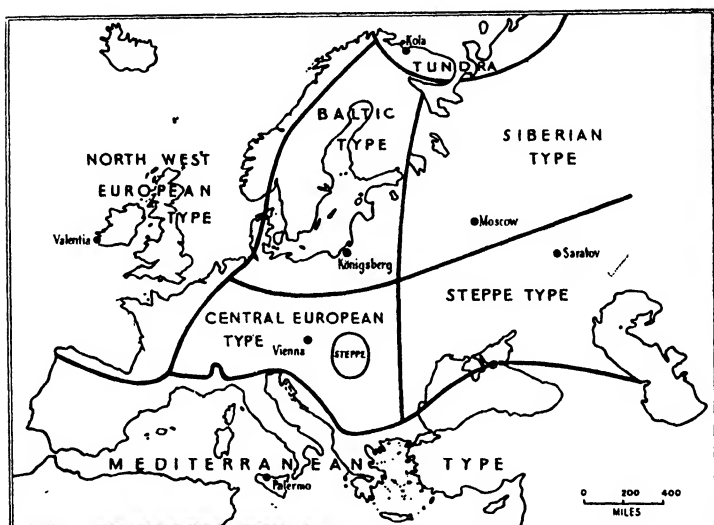


Fig. 12. THE NATURAL REGIONS OF EUROPE.

deciduous trees on highland areas (e.g. the Black Forest), and on porous or sandy soils (e.g. the Lüneberger Heath in Germany or the forests of Fontainebleau near Paris). Since the conifers grow in the least productive areas there are still large uncleared tracts, especially on mountain slopes. The principal trees of the deciduous type are oak, ash, elm, poplar, alder, willow, beech, etc.

(4) In the Mediterranean lands the natural vegetation is of the broad-leaved evergreen type, including the laurel, myrtle, olive, etc., with conifers, such as cedars and cypresses.



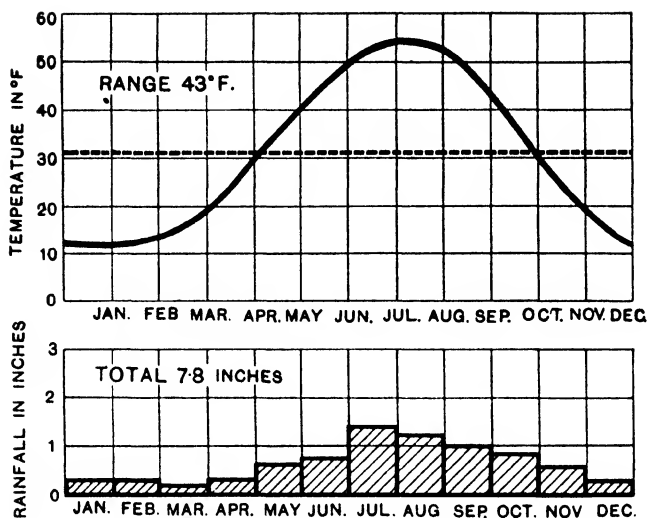


Fig. 13. TUNDRA TYPE. KOLA.

(5) South of the deciduous forest belt in Russia is a vast grassland area extending southwards to the shores of the Black Sea. This is the steppe land, and a small area similar in type is found in the Hungarian plains.

(6) East of the River Volga the steppe lands become drier and gradually merge into semi-deserts of the Caspian depression.

### The Natural Regions of Europe

Europe can be divided into a number of major natural regions based on considerations of relief, climate and vegetation. The extent of the natural regions of Europe are shown in Fig. 12.

**THE TUNDRA** (Fig. 13).—Broadly-speaking, the southern limit of the tundra is the July isotherm of 50 °F., the northward limit of tree-growth. The summers are short and cool (below 50° F.), and the winters long and cold (below 32° F. and often below 0° F.). The summer days are long, and the period of continuous daylight increases northward from the Arctic Circle. The winter days are short, with periods of continuous

darkness at midwinter. The rainfall is scanty, usually less than 10 inches annually. Most of the precipitation falls in the summer. In winter the snow accumulates, and tends to give an erroneous impression of the amount of winter



*Swiss Federal Rlys.*

THE SCHRECKHORN, SWITZERLAND.

This view illustrates some of the characteristic features of the southern system of fold mountains (the Alpine System). Notice the uneven skyline; the sharp pinnacles; the snow on the upper levels; the glacier flowing through a large "U"-shaped valley; the alpine meadowlands and the scattered huts of the summer farms.

precipitation. The tundra is covered for the most part with mosses and lichens, but on sunny south-facing slopes there is a wealth of brightly-coloured flowers, saxifrages, polyanthus, etc., in summer. In other localities are short berry-bearing bushes (*e.g.* bilberries, whortleberries), while along the course of the rivers there are often stunted birch trees. In these regions agriculture is impossible because of the shortness

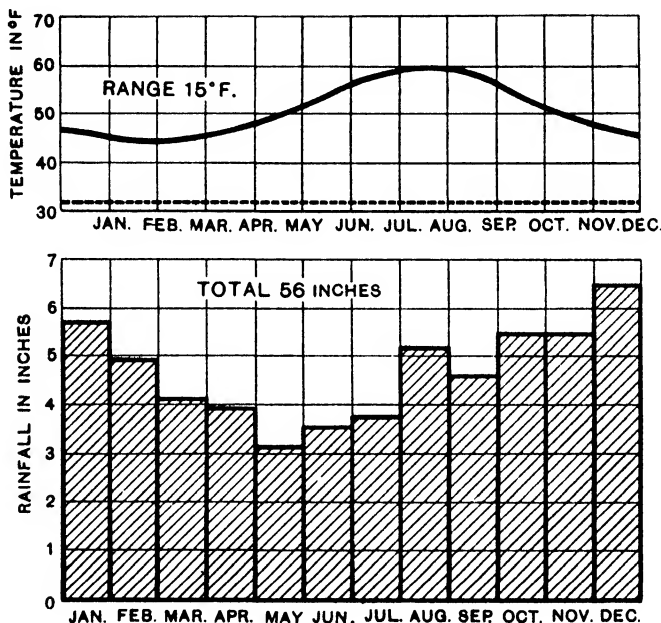


Fig. 14. NORTH-WEST EUROPEAN TYPE. VALENTIA.

and coolness of the summers, and because the ground is frozen for more than half the year.

**THE COOL TEMPERATE WESTERN MARGIN TYPE (Fig. 14).—**This includes the west of Norway, Denmark, Holland, Belgium, North-West France, North Spain, the British Isles and Iceland.

The outstanding features of the climate of this region are the excessive warmth of the winters compared with the average for the latitude, the small range of temperature, the humidity and the cloudiness. Average winter temperatures

do not fall below  $32^{\circ}\text{F.}$ , and average summer temperatures are everywhere below  $70^{\circ}\text{F.}$  Rain falls at all seasons, but the maximum precipitation is in autumn and winter. The amount of rainfall varies from 200 inches in mountainous districts (*e.g.* Snowdonia), to 20 inches (*e.g.* at the mouth of the River Thames) in sheltered plains.

The natural vegetation has, for the most part, been cleared for agriculture, but originally these lands were covered with forests of deciduous trees, *e.g.* elm, poplar, oak, ash, beech.

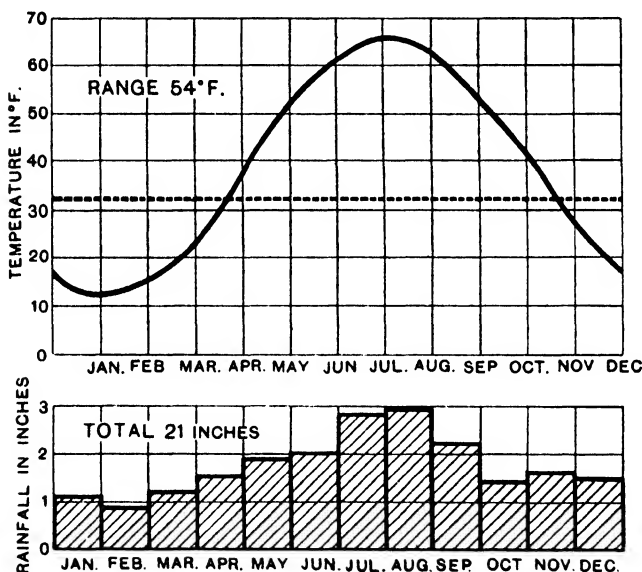


Fig. 15. RUSSIAN CONTINENTAL (SIBERIAN) TYPE. MOSCOW.

Conifers replace deciduous trees on the cooler highlands and in regions of light sandy soils, *e.g.* the forests of Fontainebleau near Paris.

**THE COOL TEMPERATE CENTRAL AREAS OR SIBERIAN TYPE.**—In Europe this region, because of its extent, can be conveniently subdivided into—

- (1) The truly continental area of Russia (Siberian Type).
- (2) The lands bordering the Baltic Sea (Baltic Type).

(3) The lands of Central Europe north of the Mediterranean (Central European Type).

(1) The continental area of Russia (lying roughly north of the latitude of Kiev) is a region of hot summers and very cold winters ( $20^{\circ}\text{F.}$  to  $0^{\circ}\text{F.}$ ) (Fig. 15). The rainfall is light, averaging about 20 in. annually, and it falls mainly in the summer.

The vegetation consists of unbroken stretches of coniferous forest in the north, but further south the original deciduous forests have largely been cleared for agriculture.

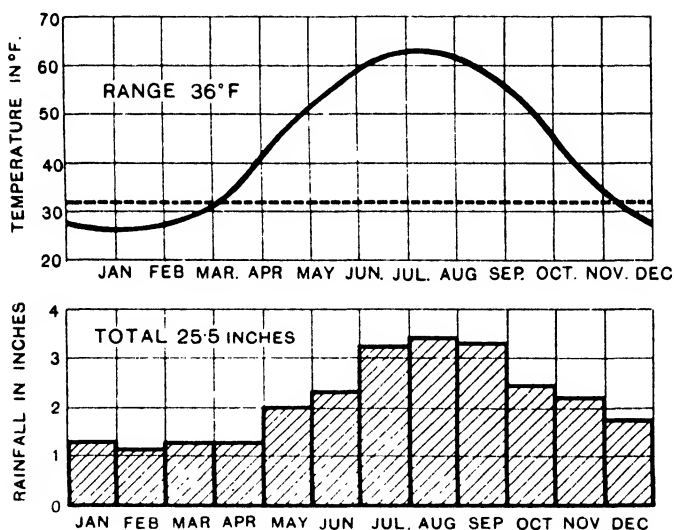


Fig. 16. BALTIC TYPE. KÖNIGSBERG.

(2) The Baltic Region is really a region of transition between the western marginal lands and the continental areas (Fig. 16). It is neither so wet nor so equable as the western margin, because it lies further from the open Atlantic. But, on the other hand, because of the inland penetration of the North and Baltic Seas, it has more rain and less extreme temperatures than the heart of Russia. Again, whereas western Europe has a winter maximum of rainfall, and the Russian plains have summer rain, the Baltic lands have rainfall evenly distributed throughout the year, but often with a summer maximum.

(3) The Central European region is very similar to the Baltic region, except that the summer temperatures are higher (Fig. 17).

**THE WARM TEMPERATE WESTERN MARGIN OR MEDITERRANEAN TYPE.**—The Mediterranean region includes all the lands bordering the Mediterranean Sea, with the exception of Central Spain, the Po Basin, and the interior of Greece and Yugoslavia. The climates of these three regions are not characteristically Mediterranean in type, and will be discussed separately.

The Mediterranean region has hot summers (over 70° F.)

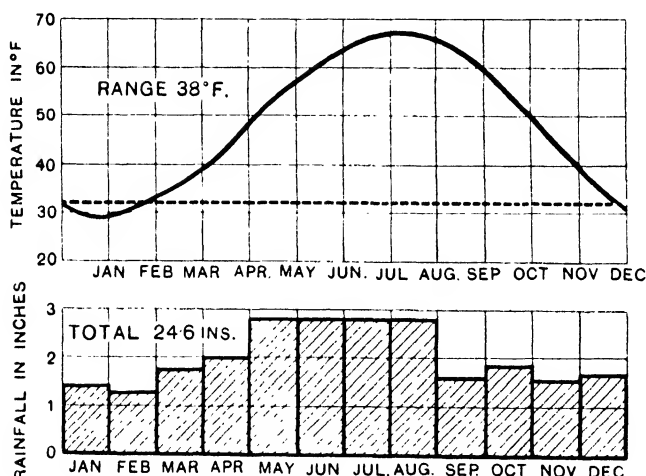


Fig. 17. CENTRAL EUROPEAN TYPE. VIENNA.

and over 80° F. away from the sea as in Southern Italy. The winters are warm, averaging about 50° F. Rainfall is mainly in the winter months, and varies from 30 inches on the northern shores to 10 inches in the south. The region around Trieste has an abnormally heavy rainfall, viz. 80 inches annually. In the north of the Mediterranean zone there is usually one summer month without rain, but in the south, as in Tripoli, there may be as many as seven dry summer months. The climatic conditions also change from west to east, the range of temperature increasing, and the total annual rainfall decreasing from Gibraltar to Palestine.

The natural vegetation may be classed as broad-leaved evergreen forests. The trees are compact and woody, and the leaves often thick and glossy. The characteristic trees and shrubs are cork oak, olives, pines, cedars, cypress, laurels, myrtles, etc. There is little rich pasture land, for the summer drought prevents the growth of luscious green grass.

Three regions have already been noted as not conforming exactly to the Mediterranean type of climate—

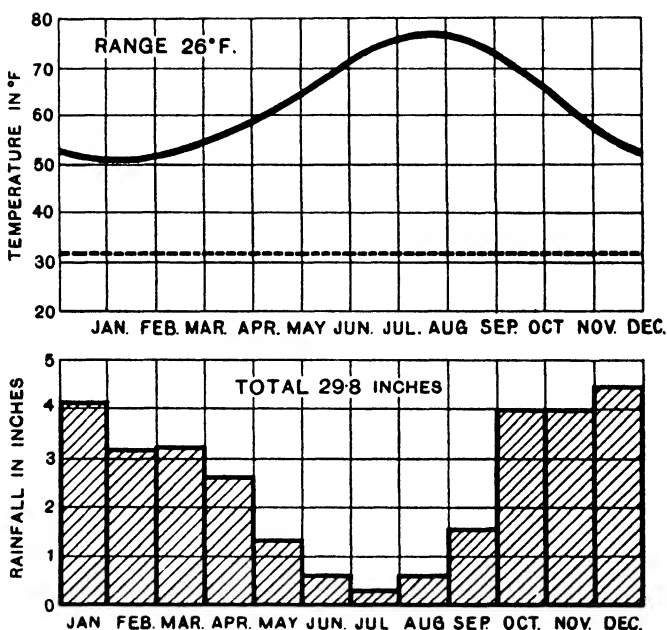


Fig. 18. MEDITERRANEAN TYPE. PALERMO.

(a) Central Spain is a dry plateau subject to extremes of temperature.

(b) The mountains of Yugoslavia are subject to greater extremes of temperature than the true Mediterranean areas.

(c) The Northern plain of Italy has rain in summer (convictional) as well as in winter and it also has greater extremes of climate, because it is cut off from the tempering influences of the sea by the Apennines.

THE WARM TEMPERATE CONTINENTAL AREA OR STEPPE TYPE (Fig. 19).—This region includes the plains of Southern Russia, the plains of the lower Danube in Romania, and the mountain-girt plains of the Middle Danube Valley, *e.g.* Hungary and North-Eastern Yugoslavia.

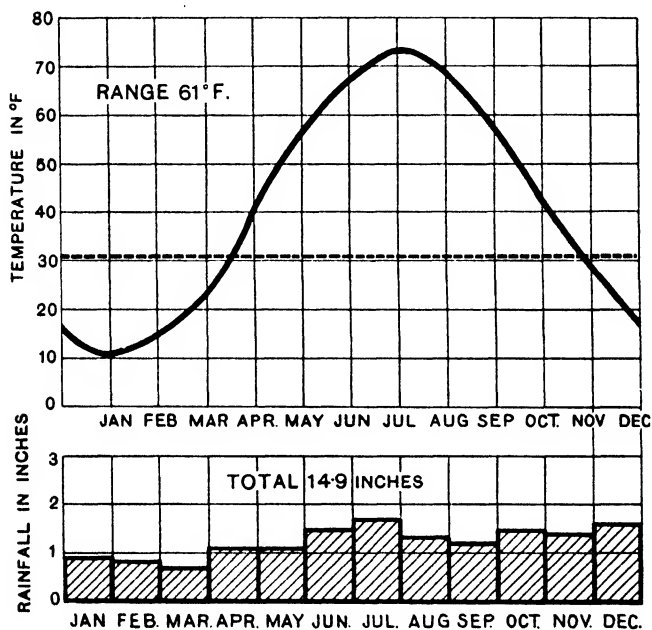


Fig. 19. STEPPE TYPE. SARATOV.

Far removed from sea influences, these are regions of great extremes of temperature. The average summers are hot, usually over 70° F. in July. The average January temperatures are below freezing point (32° F.). The rainfall is light and usually below 20 inches, falling mainly in spring and early summer. East of the Black Sea and around the north of the Caspian Sea the rainfall is scanty, and the region is one of very poor steppe or semi-desert.

The natural vegetation is grass, for the rate of evaporation during the hot summers is high, and there is insufficient ground water for the growth of trees. Along the rivers, however, willows, poplars, alders, etc., are sometimes to be seen.



## CHAPTER II

### GENERAL ECONOMIC GEOGRAPHY

#### THE RESOURCES OF EUROPE

##### **Agriculture**

Three important agricultural zones may be distinguished in Europe, but naturally there will be considerable overlapping at their edges. They are—

(1) The Mediterranean region.

(2) The North-West of Europe and the North Central Lowlands.

(3) The Eastern Lowlands.

(1) The Mediterranean region, with its dry, sunny summers, produces large quantities of fruit, viz. olives, oranges, lemons, peaches, apricots, pomegranates, almonds, chestnuts, etc. Wheat and barley are important cereal crops, but maize is also grown, and even rice in irrigated areas (*e.g.* the valley of the River Po). Because of the summer drought and high temperatures there are few rich green pastures, and cattle-rearing and dairy produce are unimportant, but large numbers of sheep and goats are reared on the dry pastures of the mountain slopes, especially in Spain and the Balkan peninsula.

(2) The agricultural lands of North-West and North Central Europe are mainly concerned with rotation farming, each farm producing a variety of crops. In the regions nearest to the Strait of Dover, viz. South-East England, North France, Belgium, Holland, Denmark and Western Germany farming is highly intensive, so that the biggest possible agricultural return is obtained from the land. Eastward the farming becomes less intensive, and gradually merges into the region of the eastern plains. Temperate cereals, viz. wheat, oats, barley and rye are all cultivated, and the highest average yields of wheat per acre in the world are obtained; in Denmark



E.N.A.

#### HARVESTING WHEAT IN ROMANIA.

Compare the primitive methods of harvesting and the amount of labour required with the harvesting methods shown in the picture of the Russian wheatlands on page 252. Observe the national peasant costume.

40 bushels per acre, Belgium 37, Netherlands 36, England 32, and Germany 32.

Flax is grown for its fibre, especially in North France and Belgium, and sugar beet production is also of outstanding importance. The use of beet pulp for cattle feeding is an important feature of the agricultural economy. Not only does this region produce great quantities of a variety of crops but it includes also some of the highly-organised dairying regions of the world. Denmark, Belgium and Holland have

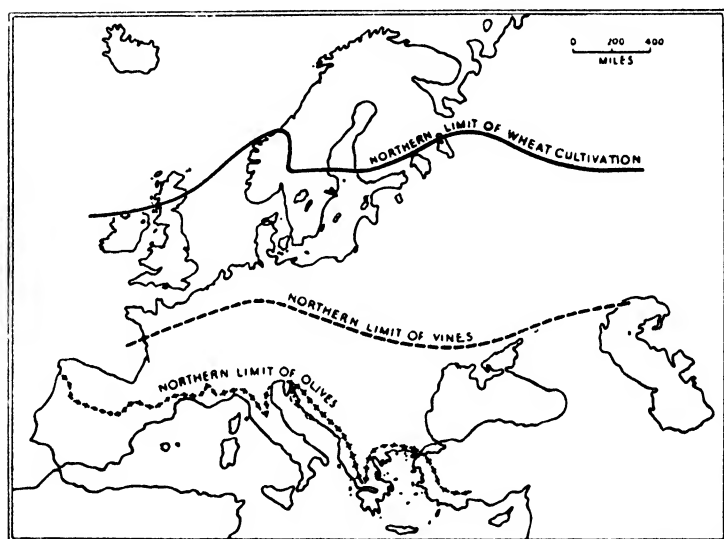


Fig. 20. EUROPE.—The northern limits of wheat, vine, and olive cultivation.

more cattle per square mile than any other countries, and their output of dairy produce for use in the neighbouring industrial areas is extremely high. In these productive countries sheep-rearing is of minor importance, except on the highlands of the British Isles, which have more sheep (250) per square mile than any other country in the world.

(3) Eastward through Poland there is a gradual change in the type of farming, until in the Russian plains rotation farming gives place to what is virtually one-crop farming. This tendency towards limited production is partly the result

of the short summers. The principal crops are rye and flax in central Russia, and wheat further south. The one-crop system leads to poverty and a low standard of living, and to a poor yield per acre (e.g. 10-12 bushels per acre, as compared with over 30 in Western Europe). The agricultural organisation of the Russian plains has however changed considerably since 1928 (see Ch. XXI).

### Minerals and Industries

Europe produces roughly one-half of the mineral wealth of the world. The importance of mining is sometimes overlooked, because it is overshadowed by the great development

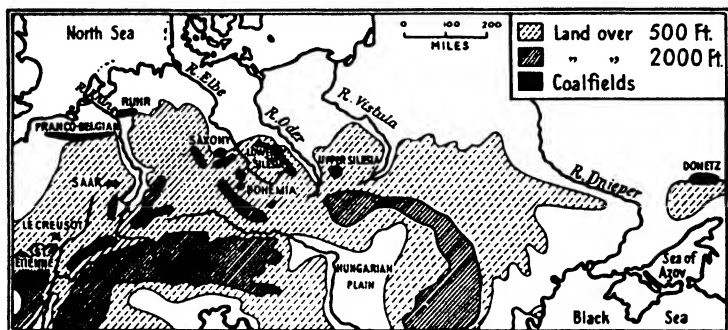
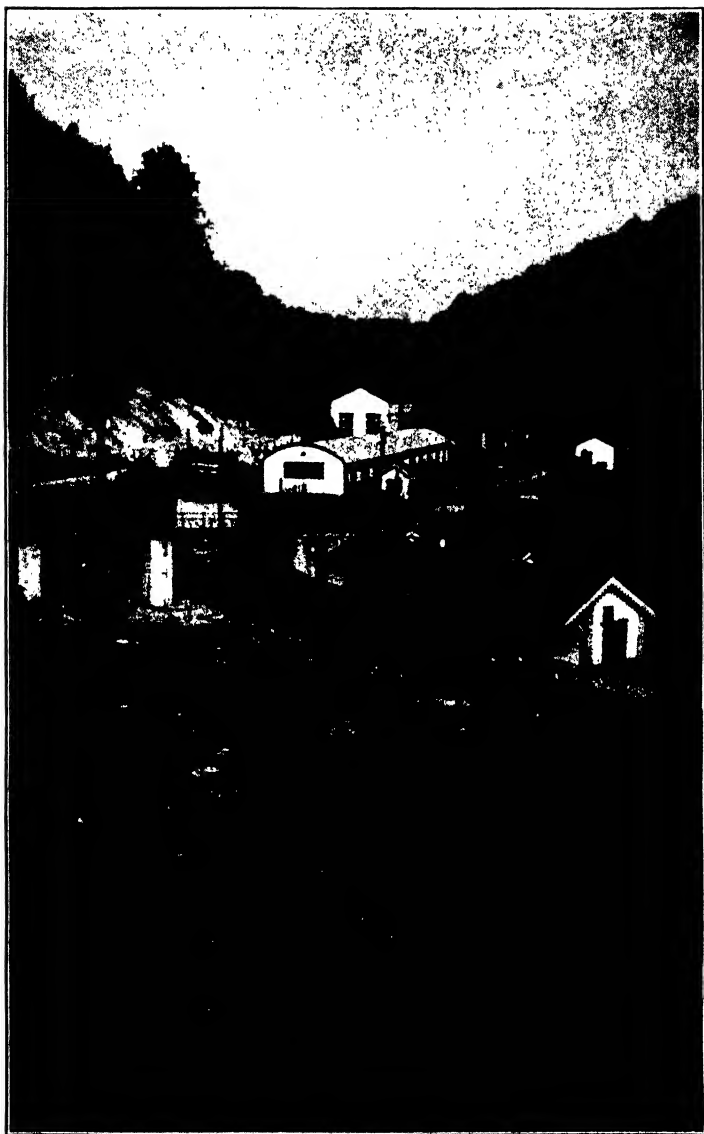


Fig. 21. THE PRINCIPAL COALFIELDS OF THE MAINLAND OF EUROPE SHOWING THEIR RELATION TO THE HIGHLAND AREAS.

of manufactures and commerce, which are the result of the abundance of minerals.

**COAL.**—Europe produces about 50 per cent. of the world's coal. In general the most important coalfields of Europe (outside Britain) are situated along the southern edge of the great European Plain, where the newer rocks of the plain meet the older rocks of the highlands (Hercynian system). This line of coalfields (Fig. 21) includes—(1) the coalfields of North France, (2) Belgium, (3) the Campine coalfield of South Holland, (4) the Ruhr coalfield, (5) the Saxony coalfield and (6) the Silesian coalfields. Apart from these there is an extensive coalfield in the south of the Russian Plain (Donetz



*Cliché Pier-Lac. Exclusivité Les Petits-Fils de Foix de Wendel.*

SCENE AT AN IRON MINE AT HAYANGE IN LORRAINE.

basin) and other smaller areas in the Saar Basin of Western Germany, the margins of the central plateau of France, and North Spain.

**IRON ORE.**—The four outstanding regions of iron ore production are in :—

- (1) North Spain, near Bilbao.
- (2) Lorraine, in eastern France.
- (3) Southern Sweden, around Dannemora.
- (4) Northern Sweden, at Gellivara.
- (5) Krivoi Rog, Kursk and Magnitogorsk in Russia.

The first regions export their ores to the various coalfields.

**OTHER MINERALS.**—Europe also produces large quantities of other minerals, viz. oil in the Caucasus, the Urals, and Rumania ; zinc in South Poland ; lead and mercury in Spain ; platinum and copper in the Urals ; potash in Germany ; sulphur in Sicily, and aluminium ore (bauxite) in South France. In proportion to her area, Europe produces more than four times her share of more than half the important minerals, but her supplies of gold, silver, tin and nickel are insignificant.

### **Industries**

The greatest manufacturing region in the world is centred in North-West Europe on the coalfields of—(1) Britain, (2) North France, (3) Belgium, and (4) Germany and the neighbouring regions. The industries include not only iron, steel and other metal goods of every description, but textiles (silk, cotton, linen, wool and rayon), pottery, glass and industries based on agriculture, such as the refining of sugar, the distillation of alcohol, etc.

There are also a number of industrial regions distant from the coalfields, where manufacturing has developed because of the use of hydro-electricity as a source of power. Such districts are—(1) the north plain of Italy, (2) Switzerland, (3) Scandinavia.

Lesser manufacturing districts are centred around Barcelona, Lyons and Warsaw.

It should be noted that great industrial changes are taking place in Russia, and that (1) the Moscow region, (2) the Donetz region, and (3) the Southern Urals must now be included among the major manufacturing regions of Europe.

## THE MAIN HIGHWAYS OF EUROPE

### Ocean Routes

Europe is well served by ocean routes to all parts of the world. This is due—(1) to the industrial activity of Europe,



*Swedish Travel Bureau.*

### LUMBER AT THE VIFSTAVARF MILLS, SWEDEN.

Lumbering is one of the most important occupations in the forested countries of northern Europe, viz. Norway, Sweden, Finland, and northern Russia. This picture shows the logs which have been floated down the river to the sawmill.

which produces a large surplus of goods for export, and a need for the importation of large quantities of food and raw materials.

(2) To the peninsular shape of Europe which gives all countries, except two, access to the sea, and even those, Switzerland and Hungary, are linked to the sea by internationalised rivers.

(3) To the mildness of the winters because of which the large majority of European ports are ice-free throughout the year. The only ports closed by ice are those on the Baltic coasts and on the shores of the Black Sea (all of which can be kept open most of the winter by means of icebreakers), and Archangel on the White Sea. The most northerly port of Russia, Alexandrovsk, is completely ice-free because of the warming effect of the North Atlantic Drift which flows along the northern coast of the Kola Peninsula.

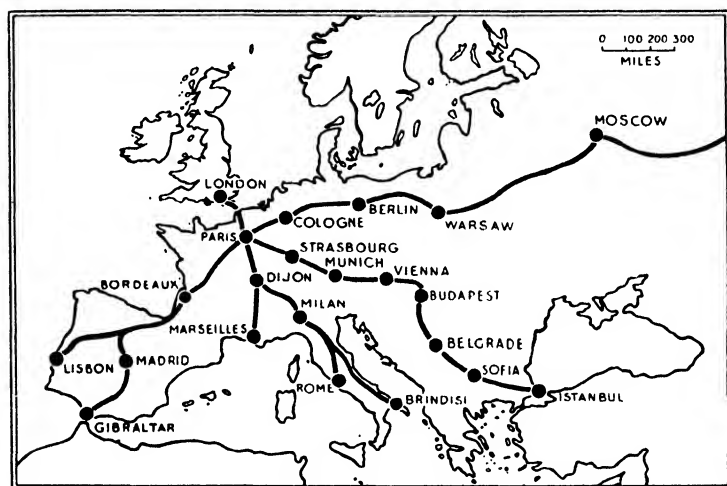


Fig. 22. THE PRINCIPAL MAIN RAILWAY ROUTES OF EUROPE.  
These routes should be followed on a relief map.

### Railway Routes

As is to be expected, the main trunk railway routes of Europe are controlled by the relief. As far as possible they follow the lowlands and river valleys, using natural gaps. But the Alps are a difficult barrier between North and South Europe and the crossing of them involved the boring of long tunnels, viz. the Simplon, Mont Cenis, Lotschberg and St. Gotthard tunnels (see Fig. 78).

Paris is the great western centre from which all the main routes radiate (Fig. 22). The principal ones are—



(1) The route to Calais, Dover, London and the remainder of Britain.

(2) The "Sud" Express route, which crosses the western lowlands of France to Bordeaux, thence passing round the western end of the Pyrenees to reach Madrid, Lisbon and Gibraltar.

(3) The P.L.M. route (Paris-Lyons-Méditerranée) to the Mediterranean, which follows a tributary of the Seine (the River Yonne) and crosses the Côte d'Or by a gap to Dijon. From Dijon southwards it follows the Rhone corridor to Marseilles. This is probably the most important railway route in Europe, for by using it passengers from Northern Europe can pick up eastern-bound ships at Marseilles, and thus not only save time, but avoid the stormy journey across the Bay of Biscay.

(4) The routes to Italy. The first main route is the same as (3) as far as Dijon, whence the route crosses the Jura Mountains. This route then crosses the Alps by the Lotschberg and Simplon tunnels to Milan, whence routes radiate to Rome and Brindisi. A second route to Italy follows the Saone valley to Lyons and crosses the Western Alps via the Mt. Cenis tunnel to Turin.

(5) The Orient Express route. This is probably the most spectacular of all European routes, as it links up the capital cities of many countries. From Paris it follows the Marne valley and goes through the Saverne gate north of the Vosges Mountains to Strasbourg. Thence it crosses Southern Germany and reaches Vienna via the Austrian gate between the Bohemian plateau and the Alps. Following the Danube valley it passes in turn through Budapest and Belgrade. South of Belgrade it follows the Morava valley through Nish, crosses the watershed to Sofia, and then descends the Maritza valley as far as Adrianople, whence it continues south-east to Constantinople. An extension of this great route, *i.e.* the famous Bagdad railway through South-Western Asia to Basra on the Persian Gulf was part of a great scheme to give quick rail communication between the industrial areas of North-West Europe and the Far East.

(6) The great route of the North European plain, which runs from Paris through Berlin and Warsaw to Moscow, where

it links up with the Trans-Siberian railway. From the point of view of relief this is the easiest of all the routes.

All these routes should be carefully followed on a physical map, so that their relation to the relief may be fully realised.

### Airways

It is impossible to analyse the air routes of Europe, for to-day practically every large city has its airport and runs regular air services to other large towns. Air transport between England and the continent probably exceeds that of any other region of the world.

## POPULATION IN EUROPE

### Distribution

The distribution of population in Europe varies according to relief, climate, and agricultural and industrial development. In comparison with its size, Europe has greater population than any other continent, *i.e.* its average density of population is higher than that of the other continents. This population is, however, unevenly distributed, so that there are some areas which are almost uninhabited (*e.g.* the mountains of Norway), and others with a phenomenal density of population, as, for example, the Belgian coalfield (Fig. 23). There are three types of regions with a scanty population of less than 26 people per square mile, *viz.*—

(a) The Tundra, where low temperatures retard development.

(b) Mountainous areas which are both cold, damp and inaccessible, *e.g.* the mountains of Scandinavia and the higher parts of the Alps, Carpathians and Caucasus Mountains.

(c) The semi-arid lands of South-East Russia, where lack of moisture hinders production and settlement.

' Dense population (over 256 per square mile) is associated with the industrial areas, and with the most fertile lowlands where intensive agriculture is practised.

The principal areas of dense population are—

(1) A narrow strip extending from the Ukraine (South Russia) westwards along the southern edge of the European



Plain to Belgium and Northern France (Fig. 23). This region approximates to the line of coalfields, and the density of population is due to the industrial development and the intensive agriculture of the immediate neighbourhood.

(2) A second belt of dense population extends from the mouth of the Rhine southwards up the Rhine valley to the north of Switzerland. This is due to the importance of the river as a natural highway and the agricultural wealth of its valley.

(3) The northern plain of Italy and portions of the coastal plains of peninsular Italy, especially around Florence, Rome and Naples. This concentration is partly due to industrial development, and partly to intensive agriculture.

(4) The Douro plains of Portugal around Oporto, due to intensive agriculture and vine cultivation.

(5) North-Eastern Spain around Barcelona, an important manufacturing centre.

(6) The Rhone valley from Dijon southwards, an area associated with vine cultivation, and the industrial centres of Lyons and Marseilles.

Within the areas outlined above are a few special regions where the population exceeds 512 per square mile. These are—

- (1) The Franco-Belgian coalfield.
- (2) The Ruhr valley.
- (3) The Saxony coalfield.
- (4) Most of the southern half of Holland.
- (5) Portions of the North Italian plain.

With the exception of Holland all these regions are highly industrialised.

In addition to the above all the principal cities, such as Paris, Vienna, Hamburg, Naples, Zurich, Barcelona, Lyons and Marseilles, are centres of small areas of extremely dense population, due to the attraction of people to the industries of those cities.

It is noteworthy that only three countries, viz. England, Belgium and Holland have an average density of population

exceeding 500 per square mile *for the whole country*. This is due to a combination of industrial development and scientific agriculture, and, in Holland, to the great fertility of the alluvial soils and the absence of large unproductive areas.

### The People of Europe

In Europe there are three important subdivisions of the white race known as—(1) the Nordic people, (2) the Mediterranean people, and (3) the Alpine people. It is beyond the scope of this book to discuss the origin of these peoples, but it may be noted that the generally accepted idea is that they drifted westward into Europe from the plains of Central Asia.

(1) The Nordic people are tall, fair-haired, blue-eyed, fair-complexioned people with long skulls. They are found in the North-Western parts of Europe, in Denmark, North Germany, Holland, Scandinavia and Britain. Their characteristics are their inventive genius and their energy and ability to plan and carry through great schemes.

(2) The Mediterranean people also have long skulls, but they are shorter in stature, dark of hair and complexion, and brown-eyed. They are found in all the countries bordering the Mediterranean Sea, but also occur in small numbers in the west of Ireland and the west of Scotland, possibly the result of settlement by the early Phoenician traders. In these people the poetic and artistic temperament is highly developed.

(3) The Alpine people are medium to dark in colouring, have broader skulls, and are more sturdily built than the Nordic and Mediterranean types. Their salient characteristics are patience, perseverance and a capacity for hard work. They are found chiefly in the mountainous areas of Central and Eastern Europe.

In the west of Europe, in France, Britain, the Netherlands and Western Germany these races have intermingled, producing a strong racial combination which is one of the major factors underlying the high standard of development and progress of the region.

The Slavs of Eastern Europe are a branch of the Alpine race. During their westward migration the Slavs divided

into two main streams. One followed the route to the north of the Carpathians where they formed the north Slav group which includes the Czechs, Slovaks, Moravians, Ruthenians and Poles.

The stream following the route south of the Carpathians formed the South Slav group of the Balkan countries, and includes Croats, Slovenes, Slavonians, Serbs and Bulgarians.

In the Hungarian plains, separating the North and South Slavs are the Magyars of Hungary, descendants of steppe peoples from Asia. Practically the whole of the Russian plain is inhabited by Slav peoples, but to the north the Lapps and Finns, and to the south, the Turks, show some traces of Mongolian origin.

The political divisions of Europe do not correspond to these racial groups, but, by the Treaty of Versailles (1919) the limits of the new Danubian states were fixed as far as possible by the racial distribution. Thus, as far as was practicable, all areas where Czechs formed a majority of the population were included in the former state of Czechoslovakia. This plan, at first sight, seemed ideal, but the regions occupied by racial groups do not necessarily coincide with convenient economic or geographical units, and also powerful minorities of peoples of other nations are included within the same political area. It is the existence of these strong minorities in the countries of Central and South-Eastern Europe that has given rise to recent political problems.

## CHAPTER III

### THE COUNTRIES OF THE NORTH-WESTERN MARGINS OF EUROPE: (1) FRANCE

#### **The Position of France and Her Frontiers**

The countries of North-Western Europe are France, Belgium, Holland, Denmark and Norway. They are grouped together because, except for the south of France, they are climatically similar, and fall within the major natural region defined as the Western Margin Region of the Cool Temperate Belt (see page 20).

France stands astride the western portion of Europe stretching from the Mediterranean to the English Channel. This is a great advantage, for the northern and western sea coasts give France direct access to the countries bordering the North Sea, and to the open Atlantic and America, while the southern coast provides contact with the important Mediterranean-Suez route to the East. By virtue of this south coast, France, in contrast to the other countries of North-Western Europe, is saved the expense of the long sea journey via Gibraltar.

While the sea accounts for a large proportion of her frontier, part of the southern and all the eastern side of France have land frontiers. In the south the high sierra ridge of the Pyrenees separates France from Spain. The absence of easy passes makes this an effective barrier and until recently the only railway routes from France into Spain passed around the western and eastern ends of these mountains. In 1928 a railway route across the Central Pyrenees was completed between Pau and Saragossa, involving the cutting of sixteen tunnels, the chief of which is the Somport.

The eastern frontier of France falls into four sections—

(1) The Franco-Italian frontier between the Mediterranean and Lake Geneva, where the boundary follows the watershed of the high Western Alps.

(2) The Franco-Swiss frontier from Lake Geneva to Basel. This section of the boundary follows the ridges of the Jura Mountains.

(3) The Franco-German frontier between Basle and the buffer state of Luxembourg. In the south of this section the boundary follows the River Rhine to a point about 50 miles north of Strasbourg, where it turns slightly north of west across an upland region. This is one of the critical sections of the French frontier, both because of the age-long struggle for the Rhine, and because the uplands are broken by gaps and river valleys which have to be strongly defended (e.g. the Moselle valley with the fortress of Metz).

(4) The Franco-Belgian frontier which strikes north-westward from Luxembourg to the coast near Dunkirk. The eastern half of this frontier is an upland region broken by the deep valley of the Meuse near Sedan, the site of the decisive battle of the Franco-Prussian War in 1870. The western half of this frontier follows no natural feature, but cuts across the narrowest portion of the north European plain between the Ardennes and the sea. It is not a barrier, and workers often travel across the frontier each night and morning. It was partly because of the unprotected nature of this portion of the boundary that the German attack against France was launched through Belgium in 1914.

### **The Physical Features of France**

The dominant feature of the relief of France is the Central Plateau, situated in south Central France, and occupying about one-sixth of the area of the country. Within its limits rise the headstreams of the four great rivers, Seine, Loire, Dordogne and Garonne, whose extensive lowland plains encircle the plateau on the north and west from the Belgian border to the Pyrenees. Beyond these plains, in the extreme west of France, is the hilly district of Brittany. On the south the Central Plateau is fringed by the Mediterranean coastal plain, and on the east by the narrow north to south corridor of the Rhone-Saône valley. Thus the Central Plateau is bordered by lowlands on all sides except the north-east, where lower and more broken uplands extend to the German frontier. East of the lower Rhone valley are the Western Alps drained by two large tributaries of the Rhone, the Isère and Durance. The Pyrenees, also mountains of the Alpine type, are in the extreme south of France on the Franco-Spanish border.



### **Climate of France**

France is situated on the western margin of Europe, partly in the cool temperate zone and partly in the warm temperate zone. Generally speaking, its climate is therefore of a maritime type, especially in the west. Towards the eastern borders and in the highland areas, however, continental influences make themselves felt, so that the temperatures are slightly more extreme and the rainfall lighter than in the west, except on the mountains (e.g. the Vosges, Cevennes and Jura) where there is heavy relief rain.

France may be divided into three major climatic provinces (Fig. 24).

(1) The North-West of France, including the Paris Basin, Aquitaine and Brittany.

(2) The Mediterranean coastal plain and the lower Rhone valley nearly as far north as Lyons.

(3) The mountain and plateau zone separating regions (1) and (2) where temperature and rainfall are both modified by altitude.

The salient characteristics of these climatic provinces are shown by the following figures:—

APPROXIMATE CLIMATIC DATA FOR SELECTED TOWNS IN FRANCE.

PLACE	TEMPERATURE				RAINFALL IN INCHES		
	July	Jan.	Range	Mean Annual	Winter	Summer	Total
<b>1. Nth. Western Zone.</b>							
(a) Nantes ...	65° F.	40° F.	25° F.	52° F.	15	10	25
(b) Paris ...	65° F.	36° F.	29° F.	50° F.	9	11	20
(c) Bordeaux	68° F.	41° F.	27° F.	54° F.	18	15	33
<b>2. Plateau Zone.</b>							
Clermont Ferrand }	66° F.	35° F.	31° F.	50° F.	8	13	21
<b>3. Mediterranean Zone.</b>							
Marseilles ...	72° F.	43° F.	29° F.	57° F.	13	8	21

(1) The north-west of France has a climate typical of all regions with a West European type of climate, viz. equable temperatures and moderate rainfall falling at all seasons, but with a winter maximum. In so large an area as North-Western France there are, however, many variations in climate. The most equable and rainiest region is Brittany (*e.g.* Nantes). From Brittany eastwards the range of temperature increases towards Paris and the Belgian border. The winter temperature of Paris is  $4^{\circ}$  F. colder than Nantes, the range is  $4^{\circ}$  F. greater, the rainfall is less, and the rainfall maximum is in summer, instead of in winter as at Nantes. These changes are indicative of the increasing influence of continental conditions, from A to B (Fig. 24).

The climate also changes from Brittany southwards (in the direction AC, Fig. 24). Because of its more southerly position, the mean annual temperature of Bordeaux is higher than that of Nantes, but Bordeaux still has the low range of temperature and winter maximum of rainfall, characteristic of its oceanic position. Its heavier rainfall is due to the fact that it lies near a route which is frequently followed by depressions (see again the winter conditions in Europe, page 12, and the map, Fig. 8).

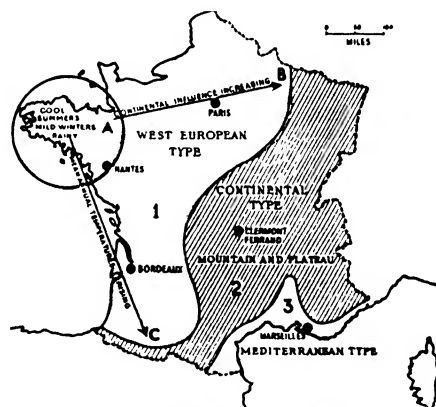


Fig. 24. FRANCE. CLIMATIC REGIONS.

(2) In the upland region of France climatic conditions are more continental in type than elsewhere in the country. Because the region is remote from the sea, the summers are hot in spite of the altitude (Clermont  $66^{\circ}$  F.). The winters are often bitterly cold, and snow is not uncommon. The maximum of rainfall is definitely in summer, a marked continental feature.

(3) The Mediterranean coastlands and the lower Rhone valley have a Mediterranean type of climate, as exemplified by the figures for Marseilles, viz. hot summers, cool winters and the bulk of the rain falling in the winter half-year. Mean temperatures are higher in this region than in any other part of France.

### The Natural Divisions of France

As a result of the relief and climate variations France may be divided into the following natural regions (Fig. 25).

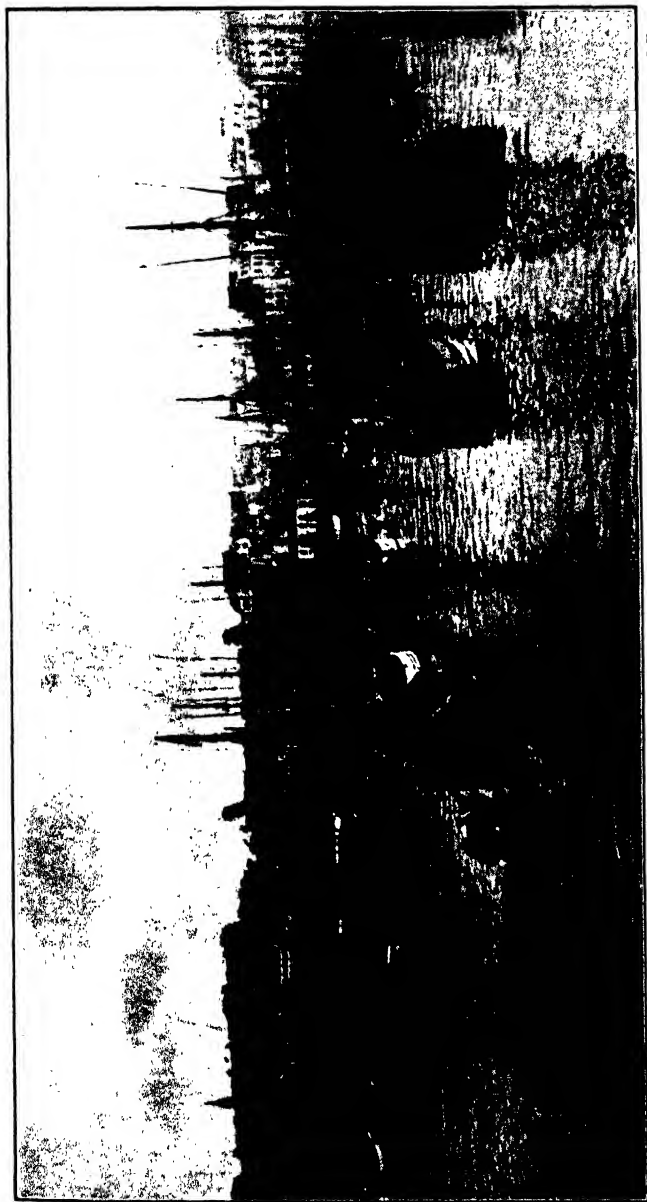
- (1) The North-West Peninsula.
- (2) Aquitaine.
- (3) The Paris Basin and the North-East.
- (4) The Central Plateau.
- (5) The Eastern Borderlands.
- (6) The Rhone-Saône valley.
- (7) The Mediterranean region and Corsica.
- (8) The Western Alps.



Fig. 25. FRANCE. NATURAL DIVISIONS.

### The North-West Peninsula

The north-west of France is that region which lies west of a line from Caen to the Ile de Ré. It is composed of old rocks, granite, etc., and is similar in structure to Cornwall and Devon, being part of the ancient Armorican mountain system. The scenery of the granite moorlands of Central Brittany is very picturesque, and closely resembles Dartmoor. The coast line is rocky and rugged and indented by numerous drowned valleys of the ria type, so that the Bretons, like the people of Cornwall, have developed a fondness of seafaring,



*French Rlys.—National Tourist Office.*

**SARDINE BOATS IN PORT, DOUARNENEZ, BRITTANY.**

Brittany is similar to Cornwall in that it has a rocky and indented coastline which provides a number of natural harbours. Fishing is, therefore, one of the principal occupations of the people.

and fishing is an important occupation. Brest, guarding the southern side of the entrance to the English Channel, is an important naval station (cf. Plymouth): Climatically, too, the region is very similar to South-West England. The equable temperatures and heavy, well-distributed rainfall give rise to luxuriant pastures. Cattle-rearing and dairy farming are therefore of great importance. Except for that part of the region which lies south of the River Loire, North-Western France is too cool in summer for vine cultivation (see Fig. 34). As in Cornwall and Devon, there are extensive apple orchards, and cider is manufactured. Market gardening is another important branch of agriculture, because of the absence of late frosts, and large quantities of strawberries are exported to England. The North-Western region is also an attractive holiday centre, partly because of its mild winters and picturesque scenery, and partly because of its interesting historical associations.

Racially the Bretons differ from the rest of the people of France. Like the Cornish, Welsh, and Irish, they are of Celtic origin, and are descendants of early peoples who were pushed westward by successive invasions from the east. In speech, traditions and customs the Bretons are very similar to the Welsh and Cornish, and in the hilly regions there is a wealth of ancient stone monuments similar to the ancient British circles, the most notable being at Carnac. Rennes, on the River Vilaine, and in the centre of a rich agricultural area, is the route centre and market town of Brittany.

*Nantes*, (outport, St. Nazaire) at the lowest bridging point of the Loire, is connected with the sea by a canal which was built to avoid the shifting sandbanks of the estuary. It uses imported coal in its sugar refineries and flour mills.

### **Aquitaine**

Aquitaine, the lowland of South-West France, includes the basin of the rivers Charente, Garonne and Adour. It is a roughly triangular plain rising to the Central Plateau on the east. It is connected with the Mediterranean coastlands by the narrow gap of Carcassonne between the Central Plateau and the Pyrenees; and north-eastwards with the Paris Basin by the gate of Poitou between the Central Plateau

and the Gâtine, the latter being structurally part of the north-western highlands. The greater part of Aquitaine is a low plain of clayey alluvium, but the Charente basin is a limestone region. The coast of Aquitaine is remarkably straight, being composed of sand dunes, behind which are shallow lagoons. The low, marshy and sandy areas behind the dunes are known as the Landes. They are, by nature, infertile and of little use except as sheep pastures. In recent years much has been done to make this region more productive, firstly by draining the marshes, and secondly, by the planting of coniferous trees. These trees not only prevent the sand moving inland under the influence of the westerly winds, but are an important source of revenue to the French Government, since they yield valuable supplies of turpentine and timber, especially pit props. Because of its high temperatures and evenly distributed rainfall, Aquitaine is a rich agricultural region. The Charente valley is noted for the production of wheat and vine, and the manufacture of brandy (Cognac) and light wines. In the Garonne valley maize, tobacco and wheat are grown, and the region is one of the most important wine-producing areas of France, specialising in the making of clarets.

*Bordeaux* (outport, *Pauillac*) (Fig. 26), at the lowest bridging point of the Garonne, is the chief collecting centre and port. In some ways it may be compared with Bristol, since its industries of sugar refining, chocolate and cocoa manufacturing are based on its imports.

*Toulouse*, in the south-east corner of the lowland, controls the route via the Gate of Carcassonne to the Mediterranean.

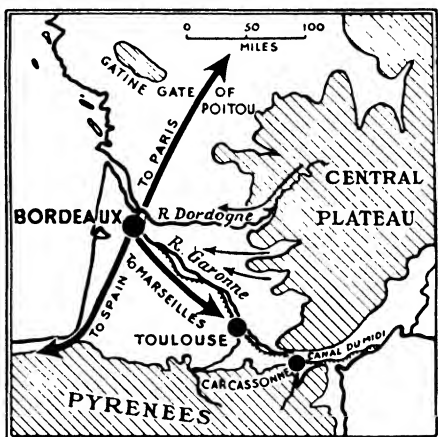


Fig. 26. POSITION OF BORDEAUX.

*Carcassonne*, at the eastern end of the "gate," is one of the most perfect and best-preserved examples of a mediaeval walled town.

In the south the plains of Aquitaine rise to the Pyrenees, famous for their scenery and for their mineral springs, which have given rise to such famous spas as Pau and Lourdes. Extending northwards from the Pyrenees is the fan-shaped plateau of Lannemezan, an infertile area composed of gravelly sediments deposited by ancient Pyrenean glaciers.

### **The Paris Basin**

The Paris Basin includes not only the Basin of the Seine, but also the basin of the River Somme and part of the middle Loire basin. Structurally it is very similar to the London and Hampshire Basins in England (Fig. 27). It is a roughly circular syncline formed by the downfolding of alternate layers of limestones, clays and chalk. The limestones and chalk have resisted erosion, and stand as scarped ridges separated by clay vales. The steep slopes of the escarpments face outwards away from Paris (cf. the steep slopes of the North Downs and Chilterns relative to London). A simple idea of the structure may be obtained by imagining a nest of three saucers partly filled with water. The rims of the saucers represent the scarped ridges, and the surface of the water in the saucers the clay plains between the ridges. The scarped ridges are broken by wind and water gaps, so that Paris in the centre of the Basin is the natural focus of all the routes passing through these gaps (cf. London). The central area of the Basin is known as the Ile de France.

Like Aquitaine, the Paris Basin is a rich agricultural region, but the crops vary in importance from one district to another, largely because of varying soil conditions. *Beauce*, south-west of Paris, where fertile clayey soils cover the chalk, is famous for wheat-growing and sheep-rearing. *Brie*, north-east of Paris, is a region of heavier clays and is more famous for its cattle pastures and the cultivation of sugar beet. South of Paris are large tracts of sandy soils, which give rise to forest lands as at Fontainebleau (cf. New Forest in the Hampshire Basin). To the east of Paris the scarplands are used for sheep-rearing, and the intervening clay vales for

vine cultivation. This region, known as Champagne, is one of the richest wine-producing areas in the country. Reims, commanding a gap in the chalk ridge, is the chief town and market centre. Other gap towns are Troyes, Epernay, and

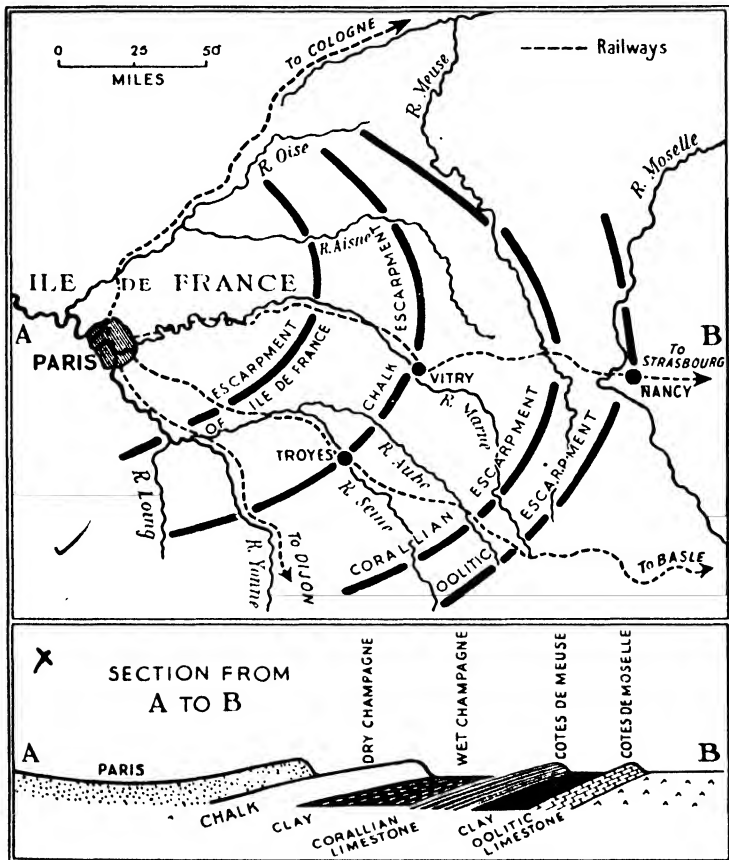


Fig. 27. THE SCARPLANDS TO THE EAST OF PARIS.

Chalons-sur-Marne. North of Paris the summer temperatures are too low for vine cultivation and, as in Brittany, apples are extensively grown for the manufacture of cider (see Fig. 34). Dairy farming and the rearing of horses are both important



because of the rich pastures due to the maritime climate and the clay soils which overlie the chalk.

*Havre*, at the mouth of the Seine, is the second port of France. It is primarily concerned with trans-Atlantic shipping, its chief imports being cotton and coffee.

*Rouen*, at the lowest bridging point of the Seine, is a town of historic interest, and is noted for its textile manufactures (cotton and linen).

Other important coastal towns are Dieppe, Boulogne and Calais, packet stations from which there are regular steamer services to England. The lowlands of the middle Loire are

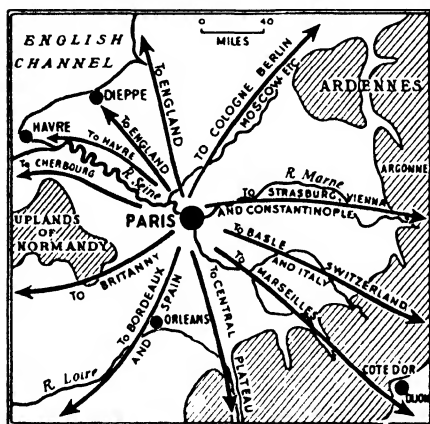


Fig. 28. PARIS AS A ROUTE CENTRE.

also rich wheat and vine lands, with the exception of the rather infertile and scantily-populated district between the River Loire and its tributary, the River Cher. There are three large market towns in the Loire basin, viz. Orleans, Angers and Tours. All three are important bridging points and route centres, but, in addition, Orleans is at the great

bend of the Loire at the point where that river is nearest to Paris.

*Paris* (Fig. 28) is the great route centre of the whole of the area, and its importance throughout history has been primarily due to its control of routes—

(1) North-east via the Oise valley along the European plain.

(2) Eastwards via the Marne valley and the gaps in the escarpments to Strasbourg and Central Europe.

(3) Southwards via the Yonne valley to Dijon and Marseilles.

- (4) South-west via Orleans and the Loire valley to Aquitaine.
- (5) Westwards to Brittany.
- (6) Down the Seine valley to the coast.

Like London, it has an immense variety of small manufactures, mostly those connected with the demands of a large urban population.

### The North-Eastern Industrial Area

The extreme north-east of France is also a rich agricultural area, specially important for hops, flax, sugar beet and grain, but it is, above all, the great centre of industrial development.

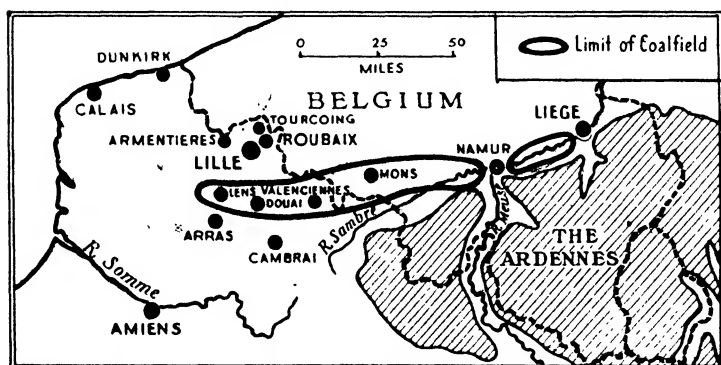


Fig. 29. NORTH-EASTERN FRANCE, SHOWING THE FRANCO-BELGIAN COALFIELD AND THE PRINCIPAL FRENCH MANUFACTURING TOWNS.

The coalfield of North-East France is a continuation of the Belgian coalfield, and extends westward from the frontier near Valenciennes to Lens (Fig. 29). During the period of post-war reconstruction the coal mines have been reorganised, and the equipment is now of the most modern type. There is a large variety of industries associated with this area, viz. textiles, such as linen (from local flax), cotton goods (using cotton imported at Dunkirk), and woollen goods. These industries date back to the Middle Ages, when the tapestries of Arras were world-famous. The chief textile centres to-day are Lille, Roubaix, Tourcoing and Armentières. In addition to their textile industries, Arras, Lille and Valenciennes have important engineering works. Sugar-refining (from the local

supplies of sugar beet), brewing and glass-making are all important industries.

### The Central Plateau

In south Central France is the Central Plateau which occupies about one-sixth of the total area of France. It is part of the ancient highland system of Central Europe. Most of this plateau, which averages 3000 feet in height, is composed of ancient crystalline rocks.

In the north-west (the Auvergne—p. 57) are the remains of old volcanic cones, known as "Puys," which rise high above the plateau level, *e.g.* Mount Doré (6138 feet) and Cantal (6096 feet). The western and south-eastern margins of the plateau are composed of limestone, and the scenery is of the "karst" type. These regions are known as Causses, and are characterised by deep valleys, caverns and disappearing rivers. Around the plateau are a few small basins of workable coal measures, *e.g.* at St. Etienne, Le Creusot, Alais, Décazeville and Commentry (Fig. 30). On its eastern side the plateau drops steeply to the Rhone valley, and is known as the Cevennes. The Central Plateau is one of the principal watersheds of France. From its north-eastern extension drain the Seine and some of its tributaries. In the eastern half of the plateau the upper courses of the rivers Loire and Allier flow through broad valleys. On the west the plateau is cut into long finger-like ridges by the parallel valleys of streams (*e.g.* River Lot; River Tarn) tributary to the Dordogne and Garonne.

The agricultural activities of the Central Plateau vary considerably from place to place, large areas being unproductive on account of the altitude, severe winters and infertile soil. In the limestone Causses goat and sheep-rearing is of major importance, and gives rise to small industries of wool-weaving and cheese-making, the well known Roquefort cheese being made from goats' milk, while the carpets of Aubusson have been famous for centuries. The north-western portion of the plateau, with its ancient volcanic rocks, is infertile and scantily peopled. Limoges, noted for china made from local deposits of kaolin derived from the granite, is the most important town. Further east are the rich agricultural areas of the sheltered valleys of the Loire and the Allier. The soil of these valleys is enriched by the volcanic material carried down

from the plateau, and large quantities of grain, sugar beet and fruit are cultivated. The high regions surrounding these valleys are used as summer pastures for cattle. Clermont

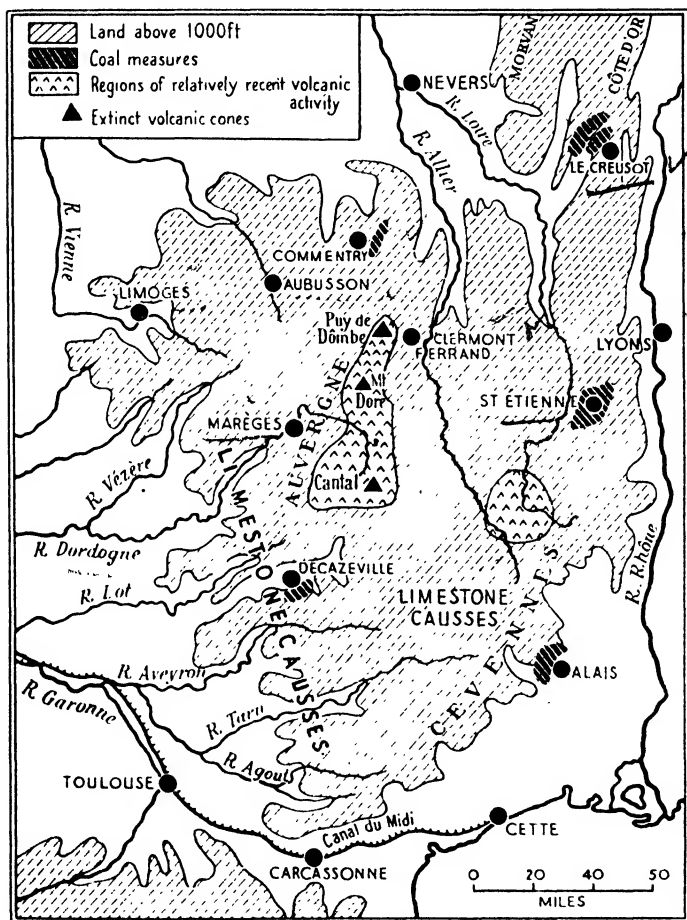


Fig. 30. THE CENTRAL PLATEAU OF FRANCE.

Ferrand is the chief market centre, and is important for its rubber manufacture. The richest agricultural areas are those of the eastern and south-eastern slopes facing the Rhone valley and the Mediterranean coastlands.



*French Rlys.—National Tourist Office.*

#### THE TARN GORGE.

The west of the Central Plateau of France is, in part, composed of limestone. This picture shows a typical limestone gorge. Notice the narrowness of the valley; the almost perpendicular valley walls; the exposures of bare limestone; the horizontal layering (stratification) of the rock. Similar scenery can be seen in all limestone regions, *e.g.* the Karst region of Yugoslavia, the southern Pennines and the Mendips in England.

The two most important coalfields of the plateau lie towards the eastern margin, viz.—

(1) Le Creusot coalfield, which is primarily engaged in iron and steel manufacturing.

(2) The St. Etienne coalfield, noted for its silk industries and the manufacture of armaments.

The swift streams of the Central Plateau are being harnessed for the production of hydro-electricity. The largest generating

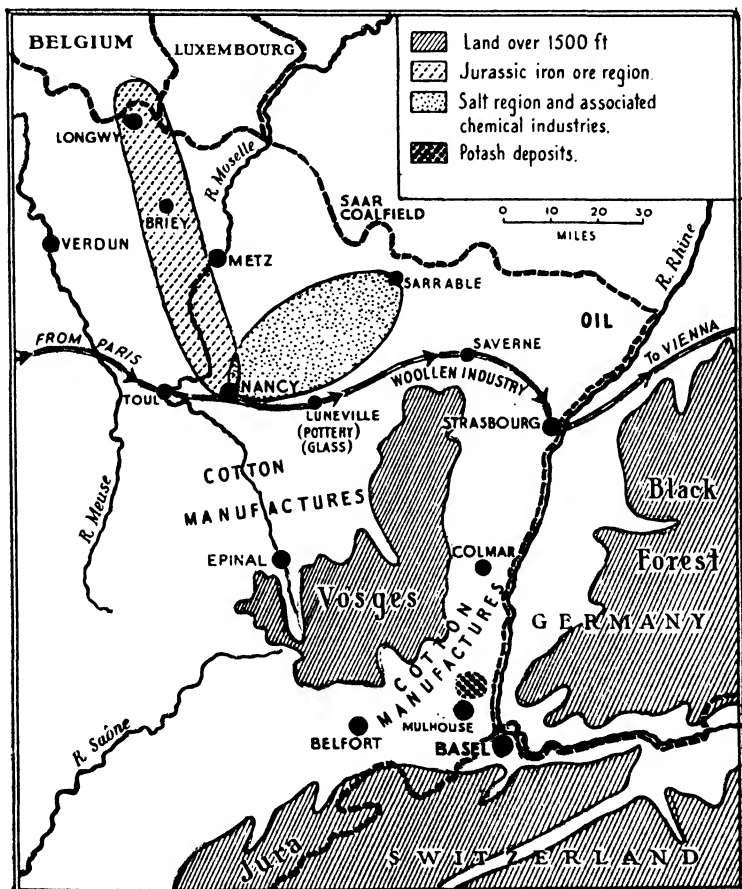


Fig. 31. THE EASTERN BORDERLANDS OF FRANCE.

centre is at Marèges in the upper Dordogne valley, whence electricity is being carried over the whole of South-Western France to Bordeaux, Toulouse and the Pyrenees by a "grid" system. This scheme was inaugurated by the Paris-Orleans-Midi Railway Company for the electrification of its lines.

The Central Plateau is scantily populated in comparison with the rest of France. Its inhospitable climate (especially the winters), poor soils and difficult communications make it a region of difficulty and there is a steady movement of people from the plateau to Paris and other large towns (cf. Wales and the Highlands of Scotland).

### **The Eastern Borderlands**

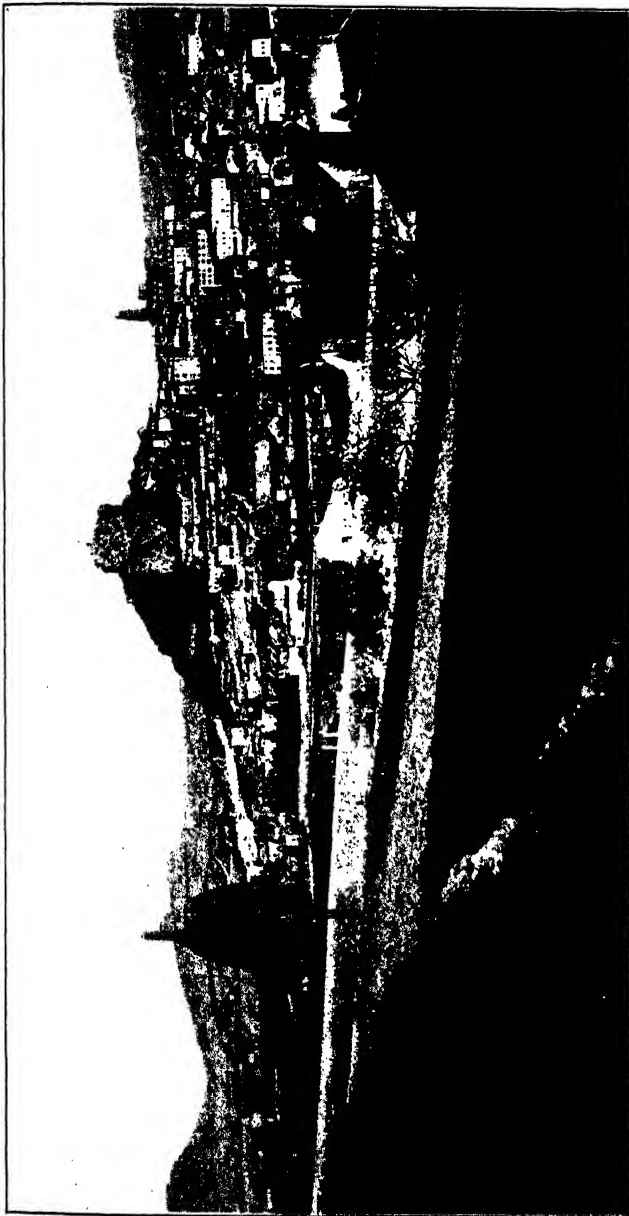
This region comprises that part of France which lies between the River Meuse and the Rhine. It is a low, broken plateau drained by the north flowing Moselle and its tributaries. In the south-east are the Vosges Mountains, one of the old "blocks" of Central Europe. To the east of the Vosges the land drops steeply to the flat plains of the Rhine rift valley. This part of France is primarily important for its mineral wealth (Fig. 31). In the north of Lorraine, immediately south of Luxembourg are the largest iron deposits in Europe. Most of this rich iron field was annexed by Germany in 1870, but was regained by France in 1919. These ores are similar to those of the Jurassic scarplands of England, and could not be utilised until modern methods of smelting were perfected. The iron ore is mined chiefly in the neighbourhood of Longwy, and during the period of French ownership of the Saar coal-field from 1919 to 1935 large iron works were established, as at Nancy and Metz. ✓

In the New Red Sandstones east of the River Moselle are large deposits of salt (cf. the salt deposits of Cheshire), which have given rise to chemical manufactures and glass-making.

Around the south and east end of the Vosges Mountains are several towns engaged in textiles, principally the manufacture of cotton goods. The chief centres are at Mulhouse, Colmar, and Belfort.

Two great natural routes pass through eastern France—

(1) The route between the Vosges Mountains and the Jura Mountains (the Burgundian Gate) which gives easy access



*French Rlys.—National Tourist Office.*

### LE PUY.

Le Puy is a town situated in the Auvergne, the volcanic district of the Central Plateau of France. In this picture are to be seen two steep-sided "necks" of volcanic rock, the remnants of ancient volcanoes. Notice also the skyline of the plateau in the background.



between the Rhone, Saône and Rhine valleys, and is followed by the Burgundy Canal.

(2) The route around the north of the Vosges via the Saverne Gate. This route from Paris to Strasbourg is part of the Orient Express route (see Fig. 22).

*Strasbourg*, where the River Ill joins the Rhine, is the centre of the Rhine Rift Valley. It controls routes: (a) westwards to Paris via the Saverne Gate; (b) northwards down the Rhine and via Frankfurt to Central Germany; (c) eastwards along the northern end of the Black Forest to Eastern Europe, and (d) southwards up the Rhine valley to Switzerland and the Mediterranean, via the Burgundy Gate and Rhone Valley. River steamers can navigate the Rhine as far as Strasbourg, hence it is an important river port.

### The Rhone-Saône Basin

The River Rhone rises in Mount St. Gothard and its upper course, *i.e.* the east of Lake Geneva, lies outside the limits of France (Fig. 32). From Lake Geneva westward it flows through mountainous country to Lyons, where it turns abruptly south and is joined by the River Saône. The combined valley of the Rhone-Saône forms a long north to south valley, usually known as the Rhone "corridor" which has been, throughout historical time, the chief highway from the Mediterranean to Northern Europe. The importance of this great natural way cannot be over-emphasised, for it provides natural routes via Dijon to Paris and Britain, and via the Burgundy Gate to the Rhine and Northern Germany. While it is primarily noteworthy as a route as shown by the fact that two main railway lines use the valley, it is also agriculturally and industrially important.

The Saône valley north of Lyons has a somewhat "continental" climate, with extreme temperatures and some rain in summer.

South of Lyons the summer rain disappears, and the climate becomes Mediterranean in type. Because of the summer rainfall, the pastures of the Saône valley are richer than those further south, and the rearing of cattle is important. Wheat and vine are the chief crops. The south-facing slopes of the

Côte d'Or are terraced with vineyards, and this is one of the important wine areas noted for the making of Burgundy.

*Dijon*, at the convergence of routes from Paris, the Rhine lands, Switzerland and Marseilles, is a very important railway junction.

To the east of the Saône valley are the Jura Mountains.

These mountains are formed of parallel limestone ridges which make west to east communication difficult except where there are narrow transverse valleys. The railway from Dijon to Switzerland follows a zigzag route across these ridges via Pontarlier.

*Lyons*, at the confluence of the Rhone and Saône, is the third town of France, and a great industrial centre engaged primarily in the manufacture of silk. This is due to the extensive cultivation of mulberry trees, and the attendant silkworm industry in the Rhone valley south of Lyons. The coal supplies are obtained from the St.

*Etienne* coalfield to the south-west. South of Lyons the Rhone valley narrows as far as Montélimar, where it opens out into the Mediterranean coastlands. The valley sides are terraced for the cultivation of vines and mulberries. To the east of the Rhone valley are the Western Alps, drained by two large tributaries of the Rhone, viz. the Isère and

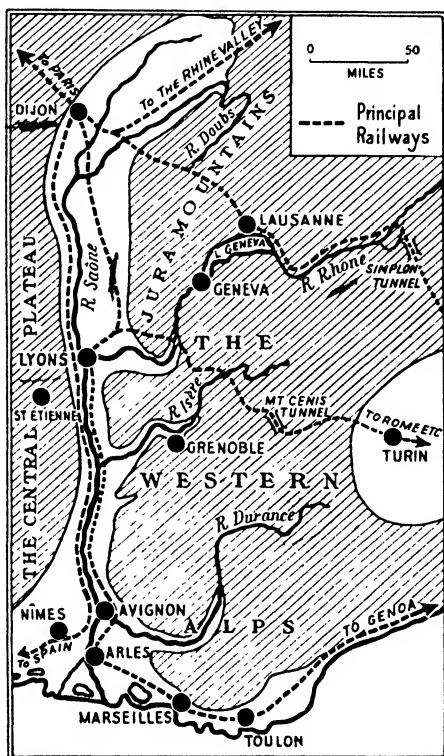


Fig.32. THE BASIN OF THE RHONE, SHOWING PRINCIPAL ROUTES AND TOWNS.

Durance. The valleys are cultivated, but the mountain slopes are either forested or used for the pasturing of sheep and goats. The swift-flowing streams are an important source of hydro-electric power. There is one important route across the Western Alps between France and Italy, and that is the route from Lyons to Turin, which crosses the watershed by a tunnel just south of the Mont Cenis Pass.

*Grenoble* is the chief city of the Western Alps. It is situated on the Isère, and is famous for the manufacture of gloves and for its university.

### **The Mediterranean Coastlands**

The Mediterranean coastlands include the triangular lowland of the lower Rhone and the narrow plains extending eastward and westward along the coast. West of Marseilles the plain is alluvial, and includes the large delta of the Rhone. The whole region is liable to destructive floods, partly as a result of deforestation, and partly because the rivers (with the exception of the Rhone) are short streams, liable to sudden increases in volume due to the heavy rains and the melting of the snow in spring on the plateau to the north. Climatically the region is of the Mediterranean type, with hot summers and mild winters, during which the bulk of the rain falls. Irrigation is necessary, and pastures, because of the hot and relatively dry summers, are much poorer than in other parts of France. The products are those typical of Mediterranean areas, viz. olives, vines and mulberries. West of the Rhone agriculture is almost entirely limited to vine-growing, a fact which, in years of poor harvests, causes great poverty and hardship. East of the Rhone, olives, mulberries, early vegetables, flowers, and some oranges are grown in addition to vines, so that it is a region of greater prosperity. The salty pasture lands of the delta are used for feeding Alpine sheep during the winter months.

East of Marseilles the coastal plain is narrow and backed by high and picturesque mountains. This region is known as the Côte d'Azur, and, because of its scenery, its intensely blue sea, and sunny skies, is a famous holiday region with such well-known resorts as Nice, Antibes, Cannes, etc. A few miles inland, in a sheltered valley, is Grasse, famous for the

cultivation of flowers and the distillation of their essence for the manufacture of scent.

*Marseilles*, situated thirty miles east of the Rhone mouth and linked to the main river at Arles by a canal, is the first port and second city of France. Here a sea current flows from east to west, so that the silt brought down by the Rhone is carried away from the harbour. Its great importance, both in the days of the Greek and Roman Empires and in modern times, is primarily due to its position at the entrance to the Rhone corridor. The opening of the Suez Canal, and the development of the great sea route to the East, added greatly to the importance of this port. Moreover, it is the port through which France has direct access to her North African colonies. Like many other ports, its industries are based on its imports of raw materials, and Marseilles is important for flour-milling, sugar refining, the tanning of leather, etc. But its most important group of industries are those connected with, and dependent on, vegetable oils. These industries, originally based on the local supplies of olive oil, now include the manufacture of candles, margarine, soap and toilet requisites. They involve the use and importation of such products as palm oil, copra, ground nuts, soya beans, cotton seed, linseed, etc., so that Marseilles is the greatest centre for the importation of vegetable oils and oil seeds in the world.

*Toulon*, to the east of Marseilles, and situated on a fine natural harbour, is the French Mediterranean naval station.

In the lower Rhone region are a number of towns of great historical interest such as Arles, Avignon and Nîmes, the latter being famous for its great Roman aqueduct.

### **Corsica**

Is a mountainous island about the size of Wales. More than half the island is covered with a dense growth of shrubs and scrub, known as maquis or macchia. The people of the highlands are principally engaged in the rearing of sheep and goats. On the fertile alluvial coastal plain, grain, vines, olives and chestnuts are grown.

The capital is Ajaccio, but Bastia is the largest town and the chief port.

### France as an Agricultural Country

If the map of the distribution of population for France (see Fig. 23) is studied, two points are clear, viz.: (1) that there are far fewer areas of dense population in France than in England; (2) that over most of France the density of population is similar to that of the exclusively agricultural counties of England, viz. Cornwall, Devon, Wiltshire, etc. Furthermore the average density of population for England and Wales is 685 people per square mile, while that of France is 192 per square mile.

The difference in the densities of population of the two countries is primarily because in France agricultural pursuits are far more important than industry, while in England the

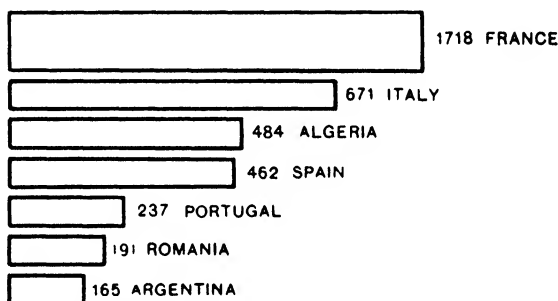


Fig. 33. WORLD PRODUCTION OF WINE, 1934 (IN MILLIONS OF GALLONS).

reverse condition holds. In France about 41 per cent. of the population is engaged in some form of agriculture and 27 per cent. in industry, while in Great Britain under 10 per cent. is engaged in agriculture and over 50 per cent. in industry. From this it may be seen that France is primarily an agricultural country, and this is due to—

- (1) The large percentage (over 80 per cent.) of productive lands.
- (2) The favourable climatic conditions of humidity and temperature.
- (3) The absence of extensive coalfields to encourage industrial development and rural depopulation.
- (4) The great variety of crops which can be cultivated, ranging from the grains, roots, and fruits of the cool temperate zone to the olive, mulberry and vine of the warmer latitudes.

(5) The high esteem in which land ownership is held by the French people, the love of the French peasant for his acres, and his reluctance to depart from his inherited lands and from the mode of living which his ancestors have practised for centuries. Because of the subdivision of farms owing to the French laws of inheritance, most of the French farms are

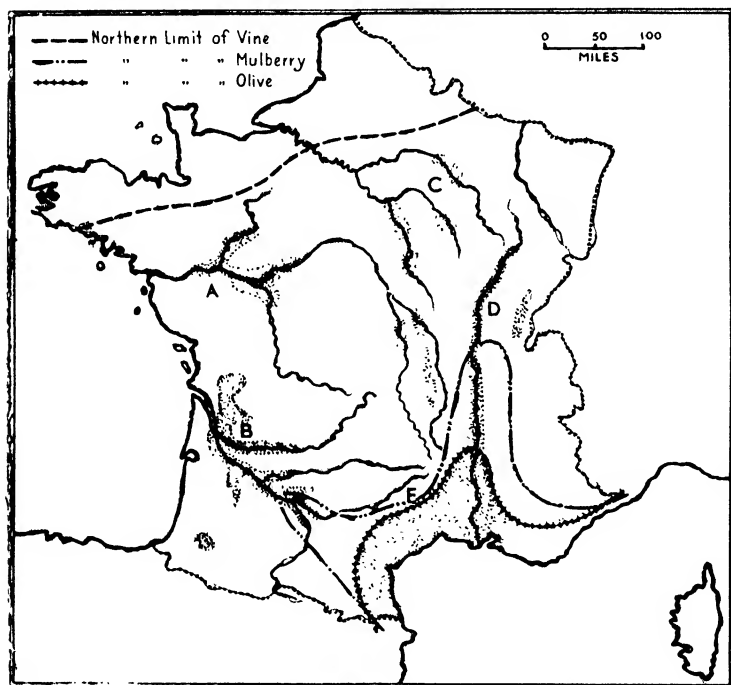



Fig. 34. THE DISTRIBUTION OF VINE, MULBERRIES, AND OLIVES IN FRANCE.—A, Loir Basin; B, Charente, Dordogne; C, Champagne; D, Côte D'Or; E, Languedoc.  Chief vine regions.

extremely small (under 25 acres), but they are efficiently and carefully cultivated, though often by methods considered out of date in comparison with the modern scientific methods of large-scale farming. By far the most important crops of France are wheat and vine.

**WHEAT.**—France ranks as the fourth producer of wheat in the world, and in normal years has to import only a very

small amount. Nearly one-eighth of France is wheat-growing; the chief regions are the Paris Basin, Aquitaine.

**VINE CULTURE.**—France is the most important wine producer in the world, though Italy has a greater acreage of vineyards (Fig. 33). Wine is the national beverage of France. Most of the wines are light, and many of them do not bear special names, but are commonly known as “vin ordinaire.” Because the summers of Northern France are too cool, the vine is not cultivated north of a line running from the mouth of the River Loire to Paris (Fig. 34). It will be noted that in Eastern France the vine can be cultivated further north than in Western France. This is because the summer temperature increases eastward away from oceanic influences. South of this line the vine is cultivated everywhere except on the barren uplands, but five districts are of special importance—

(A) The lower Loire valley. (B) The lowlands of the Charente and Garonne valleys, noted for brandy and clarets. (C) The Champagne region of the chalk escarpments east of Paris. (D) The south-facing slopes of the Côte d’Or, noted especially for burgundy. (E) The south-facing slopes of the Central Plateau and the plains of Languedoc—where over 50 per cent. of the wine is made.

### **The Trade of France**

Situated athwart Western Europe between the English Channel and the Mediterranean Sea, France has an excellent situation for the development of overseas trade. Her total trade, however, is only about two-fifths that of Great Britain in value. The great development of agriculture and the variety of agricultural products makes her less dependent on foreign supplies of food, viz. wheat, meat, etc. Because her industrial development is not so great as that of Britain, France needs less imported raw materials and has fewer manufactured goods to export.

Apart from food, the chief imports of France are coal, metal ores, vegetable oils, wool, cotton, silk, machinery and coffee. Her exports are principally textiles (chiefly silk and linen), machinery, motor cars, and a whole range of luxury commodities.

## CHAPTER IV

### THE COUNTRIES OF THE NORTH-WESTERN MARGINS OF EUROPE: (2) BELGIUM AND HOLLAND

#### A Comparison

Belgium and Holland are two small countries, situated at the narrowest part of the European plain and opposite to the Thames estuary.

The following figures show the similarity of their size and population—

	SIZE IN SQUARE MILES	POPULATION	NO. OF PEOPLE PER SQUARE MILE
Belgium	11,775	8,247,750	700
Holland	12,579	8,290,389	659

The two countries are nearly the same in area, they both have a population of approximately eight and a quarter millions, and both are extremely densely-populated. In the whole world Java is the only country with a greater density of population than Belgium, and Holland ranks fourth in the world, Britain occupying the third place.

In both countries a highly-intensive form of agriculture is practised; in Belgium 60 per cent. of the land is under cultivation, and in Holland 70 per cent. Belgium, because of her greater percentage of highland (the Ardennes) has a larger percentage of unproductive land. The principal crops of the two countries in order of production are—

BELGIUM		HOLLAND	
Sugar beet	Wheat	Oats	Flax
Potatoes	Barley	Rye	Sugar beet
Oats	Tobacco	Wheat	Potatoes
Rye	Flax	Barley	
EUR.	65		5



The yield per acre for all these crops is high in both countries. For some crops, such as potatoes, oats, and barley, Belgium has a higher yield per acre than any other country. This is due to the diligent and careful methods of cultivation, Belgium and Holland using more fertilisers per acre than any other countries. Many of the crops are the basis of flourishing industries. The sugar beet gives rise to sugar factories, of which there are 51 in Belgium and 14 in Holland. Potatoes are used for the distillation of alcohol, and rye for the distillation of gin; there being 21 distilleries in Belgium and 278 in Holland. Home-grown flax is the basis of the important linen industries in both countries. Both countries have a large number of horses, cattle, and pigs per square mile. Holland has more cattle per square mile than any other country in the world, and more horses and pigs per square mile than any other country except Denmark.

Intensive agriculture alone is not responsible for the phenomenal density of population of these two small countries, but, with regard to occupations other than agriculture, the two countries differ very greatly. Belgium has large coalfields, and originally had good supplies of iron and zinc ores. Hence, in addition to agriculture, Belgium is highly developed industrially, and is famous both for textile and engineering industries. Holland, on the other hand, without her own supplies of coal, until the discovery of the deep-seated coal seams of southern Holland (Limburg) during the Great War, developed as a great commercial country, ranking seventh among the nations in respect of gross tonnage of shipping. Her industries are those which

- ✓ (1) require little raw material or fuel but much skill, viz. diamond cutting,
- ✓ (2) are the direct outcome of agriculture, viz. the manufacture of butter and cheese, or,
- ✓ (3) are based on colonial imports, *e.g.* chocolate and tobacco manufacture.

Both countries had an early start, for the Belgian textile industry dates back to the Flemish woollen and linen industries of the Middle Ages, while Holland's commercial importance can be traced to the sixteenth century, when she distributed the produce brought via Lisbon from the East by the

Portuguese. The position of Holland at the mouth of the Rhine, giving easy access to Central Europe has also been a strong factor in the development of her trade. Holland, with a long coastline, has developed an important fishing industry, an occupation almost completely neglected by Belgium, whose sandy coastline is straight and lacks good harbours.

To sum up, the density of population of Holland and Belgium may be attributed to—

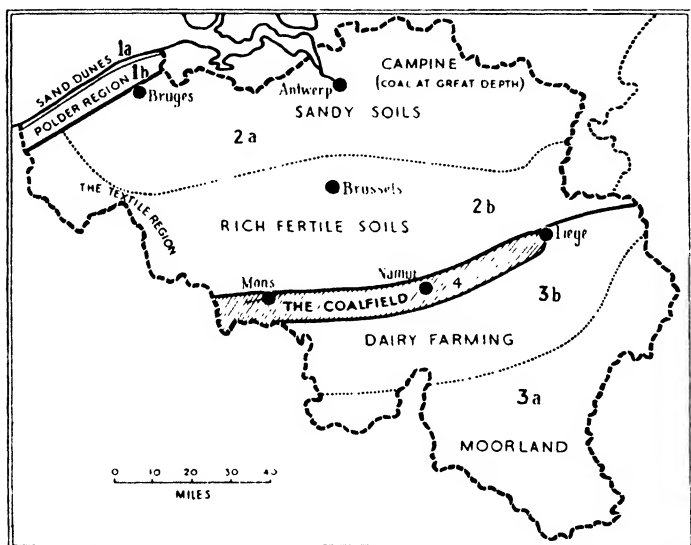


Fig. 35. BELGIUM. NATURAL DIVISIONS.—This map should be compared carefully with Fig. 36.

- (1) The small percentage of unproductive land.
- (2) The favourable climate.
- (3) The intensive agriculture and its attendant industries.
- (4) The industrial development of Belgium and the commercial development of Holland.

## BELGIUM

Belgium falls into four regional units (Fig. 35)—

- (1) The coastal lands.
- (2) The central plains.

(3) The southern highlands.

(4) The coalfield zone, which is a relatively narrow strip of country extending west to east between divisions (2) and (3).

### **The Coastal Lands**

The coast of Belgium is about 40 miles long and is very straight, consisting of a ridge of sand dunes rising about 20 to 30 feet above the level of the plains behind. The chief ports are Nieuport, at the mouth of the River Yser, and Ostend and Zeebrugge, both of which are connected to Bruges and Ghent by canal. The sandy shores have caused the growth of a number of well-known seaside resorts, such as Blankenberghe.

Immediately behind the dunes is a region of low-lying reclaimed marshland, usually referred to as "polder" land. It is about ten miles wide, and is crossed by a network of drainage canals, the scenery being reminiscent of Holland. It was the flooding of these low-lying lands in the Yser basin of Western Belgium in 1914 which stemmed the advance of the German armies towards Calais. The polders are a rich agricultural region, producing large crops of wheat, barley and sugar beet. There are also rich pastures devoted to cattle-rearing.

### **The Central Plains**

This region includes the Basin of the Scheldt and the region known as the Campine near the Dutch frontier. The Campine is a region of poor sandy soil where agriculture is difficult, for it consists largely of heathland. Coal has been discovered at a great depth, and mining centres are growing, so that the region may have an important industrial future.

The Scheldt Basin occupies Central Belgium (Fig. 36). The Scheldt itself rises in France, and its tributaries the Lys, Dendre, Senne, Dyle and Demer flow to it fanwise, so that their valley routes converge on Antwerp at the mouth of the main river. This is the great agricultural region of Belgium, and the chief region for grain and sugar beet. Flax is grown mainly in the west of the basin in the Lys valley and near Ypres. Market gardening and, in particular the growth of greenhouse grapes for export, is important around Brussels. It is in this region that most of the industries based on



*Photo Schindler - O. D. L. U. T. Brussels.*

THE VALLEY OF THE OURTHE, BELGIUM.

The Ardennes country of southern Belgium, with its rolling wooded hills and fertile valleys offers a strong contrast to the flat plains of northern Belgium (see page 9).

agriculture are located, viz. sugar refining, brewing, distillation of alcohol, and the manufacture of margarine and vinegar. In the west of the basin in the valley of the river Lys is the great linen manufacturing region, the chief towns being Ghent, Courtrai, Roulers and Tournai. The growth of this industry has been due to—

- (1) The inherited skill in spinning and weaving, which dates back to the Flemish woollen industries of the Middle Ages.
- (2) The local supplies of flax.

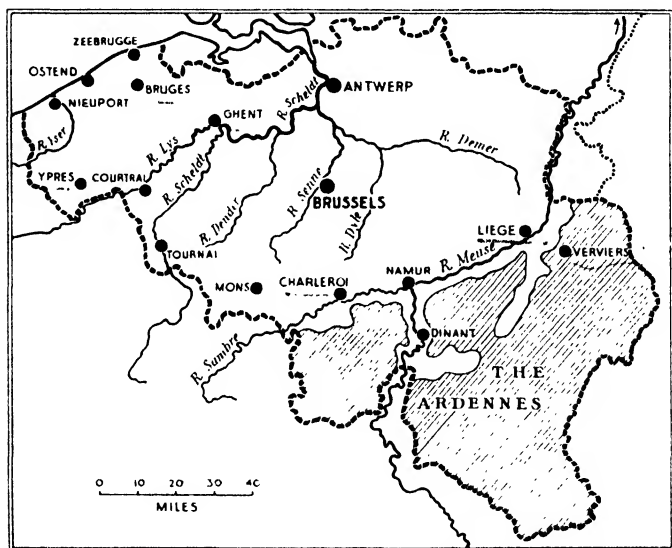


Fig. 36. BELGIUM. THE CHIEF TOWNS IN RELATION TO THE RIVERS AND HIGHLAND.

- (3) The suitability of the waters of the River Lys for retting. ✓
- (4) The supplies of coal from the Belgian coalfield. ✓

*Brussels*, the capital, situated on the River Senne, occupies a central position in Belgium. It stands half-way between the coalfield and the sea, and is nearly the geometric centre of the Scheldt basin. It is connected by canal with Antwerp, so that it has some importance as a port. Its industries are of the luxury type usually connected with a "capital" city, viz. the manufacture of furniture, paper and luxury articles.

*Antwerp*, at the mouth of the River Scheldt, is not only the great port of Belgium, but, measured by the tonnage of shipping which enters the port annually, is one of the greatest ports in the world, competing with New York, London and Rotterdam for first place. For instance, in 1926-1928 the total tonnage of shipping entering and leaving Antwerp actually surpassed that of all other ports in the world. The importance of Antwerp is not merely due to the import and export trade of Belgium. It has, in addition, a large "transit" trade, *i.e.* goods are imported at Antwerp for dispatch to other European countries, especially Germany, and goods from other countries are exported via Antwerp. The hinterland of Antwerp extends far beyond the limits of Belgium and includes part of Eastern France, the Rhine Valley and the Ruhr coalfield.

Ypres, Bruges and Ghent are old towns famous for their woollen manufactures in the Middle Ages.

### **The Southern Highlands**

South of the basin of the Scheldt is the west to east valley of the Meuse and its tributary the Sambre. South of the Sambre-Meuse valley rises the highland area of Belgium. This is the Ardennes, structurally a region of old rock rising to over 2000 feet and part of an ancient mountain system. It is drained by a section of the Meuse and its tributaries. The higher districts to the south are partly forested and partly open moorland used as sheep pastures, but the northern half of the upland region is a flourishing agricultural area, and is specially important for dairy farming, due to the need of the towns of the coalfield for supplies of milk and dairy produce. The Meuse valley is very picturesque and contains a number of well-known tourists centres, *e.g.* Dinant.

*Verviers*, near the German frontier specialises in the cleaning of wool, mainly imported. Formerly it had a woollen industry which owed its origin to the wool supplies from the Ardennes and to the proximity of coal supplies.

### **The Belgian Coalfield**

The coalfield extends from Northern France (see Fig. 29) through Mons, and Charleroi to Namur, following the line of the Sambre valley. The coalfield also extends further east

along the Meuse valley to Liège. The chief mining centres are around Mons and Charleroi. While the annual output of coal is 27,000,000 tons, the coalfield has been exploited so actively for many decades that mining operations are becoming more difficult. The workable seams are now deep-seated, thin and irregular. The deposits of zinc ore and iron ore are almost exhausted, but fortunately the iron ore deposits of Lorraine and Luxemburg are within easy reach.

Metal industries are the basis of the principal activities of the coalfield, and include the smelting and manufacture of iron, zinc, copper and tin. The chief engineering and metal working centres are Charleroi and Liège. Chemicals and glass are also manufactured.

The Sambre-Meuse valley is a natural highway between Germany and France, and this, coupled with its industrial development, makes the area the most densely-populated in Belgium.

### Language and Peoples

Belgium is essentially a transition country between Germany and Holland on one hand and France on the other.

The people of Northern Belgium (*i.e.* the north of a line from Liège through Brussels to Courtrai) are often a fair-haired, blue-eyed type akin to the peoples of Northern Europe (Nordic type, see page 38). They speak Flemish, a language similar to Dutch. In Southern Belgium the people are generally of a darker type and speak Walloon, a language similar to French. The Flemish are not only careful agriculturalists, but throughout history have been skilled craftsmen and had a strong sense of civic pride, founding such cities as Ypres and Bruges with their fine public buildings. The Walloons, like their French neighbours are strongly attached to the land, and the great cities of Southern Belgium are usually of more recent growth than those of the north.

## LUXEMBURG

Luxemburg, a little country about the size of Cheshire, is a buffer state situated between Belgium, France and Germany. Politically, it is independent, but for customs purposes it is linked with Belgium. It is largely devoted to agriculture,

but also has valuable iron deposits which are a continuation of the Lorraine iron deposits of Eastern France (see Fig. 31).

## HOLLAND

Holland is the deltaic area of the Rivers Rhine, Meuse and Scheldt. Consequently it is a low-lying country and its highest point, in the extreme south-east of the Limburg "pan-handle," is under 350 feet above sea-level. The main drainage of the country consists of a complicated series of distributaries of the Rhine and Meuse, the chief of which are the River Waal and the River Lek, which flow westward. Another large distributary, the River Yssel, flows northward to the Zuyder Zee.

Climatically Holland is very similar to Eastern England, the main difference being in the greater coldness of the Dutch winters. The similarities and differences are shown by a comparison of the climatic data for London and Utrecht.

	July Temp.	Jan. Temp.	Winter Rainfall	Summer Rainfall	Total Rainfall
London ...	62·8° F.	38·7° F.	12"	13"	25"
Utrecht ...	62·6° F.	34·5° F.	13"	14"	27"

In spite of the absence of positive relief features and strong climatic contrasts, Holland may be divided into three well-defined regions (Fig. 37)—

(A) The coastal belt.

(B) Central Holland, *i.e.* the polder land which is mostly below sea-level.

(C) Eastern Holland, *i.e.* the land above sea-level lying generally to the east of the polders.

### The Coastal Belt

The coast of Holland is composed of sand dunes, which also border the seaward edges of the islands of Zeeland and the west Frisian Islands. Between these two groups of islands is a smooth unbroken coastline extending from the Hook to the Helder.

The dunes are strengthened and reinforced to prevent the sea encroaching on the low-lying polders behind the dunes.



### The "Polder" Country or Central Holland

About 40 per cent. of Holland consists of polder land and two-thirds of this area is below the level of high tide, often by as much as 25 feet. Polder land is reclaimed land. In the fourth century large areas of Holland were inundated. The lagoons (*e.g.* Haarlem Meer) and salt marshes thus formed have been drained and converted into valuable agricultural

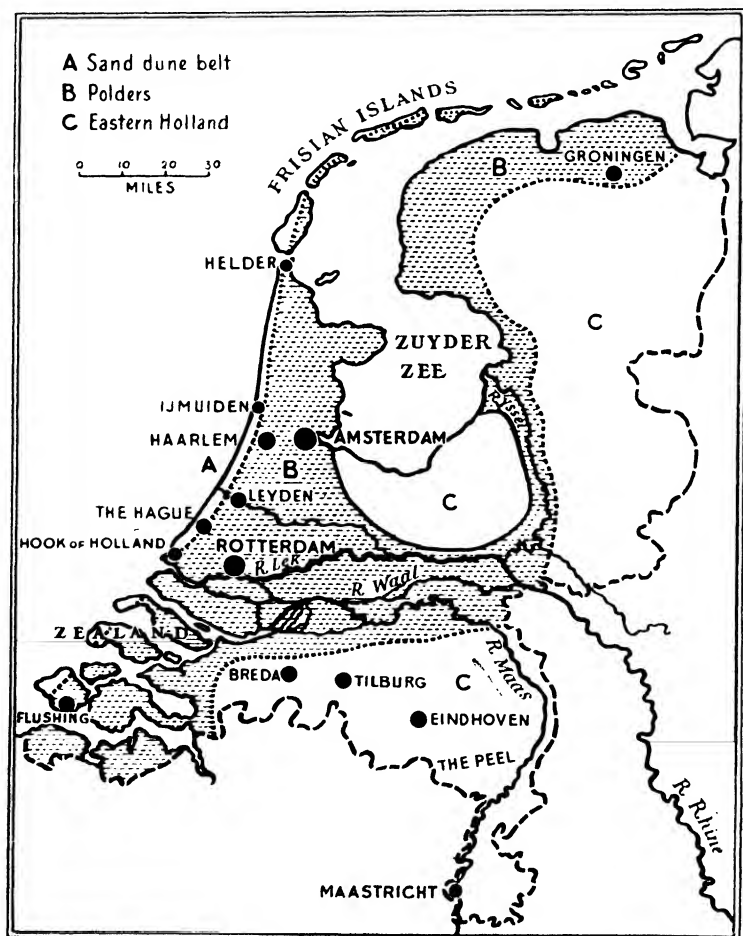


Fig. 37. HOLLAND. NATURAL DIVISIONS AND CHIEF TOWNS.



*Netherland Tourist Office.*

**BULB FIELDS NEAR HAARLEM, HOLLAND.**

This picture shows part of a "polder," *i.e.* flat fertile land, usually below sea level, which has been reclaimed by the draining of former lakes. Notice the neat arrangement of the bulb fields; the drainage canal; the coastal sand-dunes in the background; the coarse grass and pine trees growing on the sandy soils of the dunes.

land. Dykes were constructed around these low-lying areas, and the water pumped into high level canals and so drained to the sea. The maintenance of these dykes and the control of the dunes is one of the most important responsibilities of the Dutch Government. At the present time a great scheme is in progress for the reclamation of part of the Zuyder Zee. By this scheme over 800 square miles of polders (i.e. one-sixteenth of the total area of Holland) will become

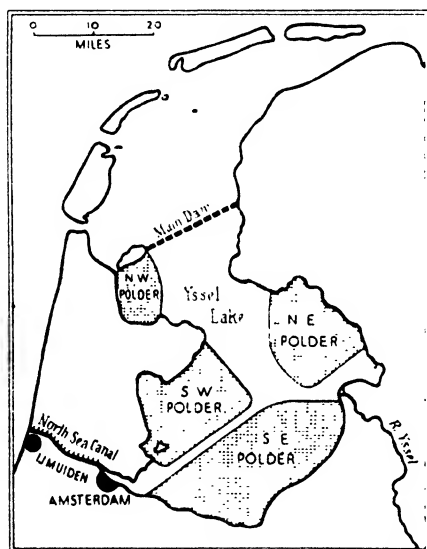


Fig. 38. THE RECLAMATION OF THE ZUYDER ZEE.

available for agricultural development. Work was begun in 1927, and will probably take 25 to 30 years to complete. Details of the scheme are shown on Fig. 38. The dam across the northern end of the Zuyder Zee has already been completed and the North-West polder drained and cultivated. Lake Yssel will gradually become a fresh-water lake, and will probably be important for fresh-water fisheries.

The polders constitute the richest agricultural regions of Holland because of the fertility of the alluvial soils, and they may be divided into three distinct regions,

(1) In the south is the "island" region of Zeeland. Here cattle and horses are reared on rich pasture lands and a variety of crops are grown, viz. wheat, oats, potatoes, flax and sugar beet, etc. In this region the people are closely in contact with the sea, and thus it may be considered the nursery of the Dutch fishing industry, and of Dutch maritime and commercial activity.

(2) A second large area of polder lies in the north-east of Holland, in the province of Groningen. Because of its less indented coastline it lacks the maritime associations of Zeeland, and is more exclusively devoted to farming. It is a region of rich pasture lands, and produces large quantities of milk, butter and cheese. Holland ranks high as an exporter of cheese and condensed milk, but does not export butter to the same extent as Denmark.

(3) Between regions (1) and (2) lie the central polders. Agriculturally this is the richest region of all, for the mixing of the sandy soils of the dunes with the heavier soils of the polders has produced a soil of exceptional fertility. Here, as elsewhere, dairy farming and the cultivation of wheat, sugar beet and flax, etc., is important, but in the neighbourhood of Leyden and Haarlem bulbs are intensively cultivated and flowers and vegetables grown for their seed. Market gardening and the cultivation of early strawberries and potatoes are also important.

The principal cities of Holland lie in the polder zone. Many of them are associated with industries based on agricultural products, viz. the distilling of gin, the manufacture of linen (brown Holland), the refining of sugar, brewing, and the making of cheese. Some, notably Rotterdam and Amsterdam, have industries based on imported raw materials, e.g. diamond cutting (Amsterdam), the manufacture of cocoa and chocolate, the manufacture of cigarettes and cigars, the manufacture of margarine. Margarine was originally made from animal fat, but the industry now depends on imported supplies of vegetable oils, e.g. palm kernel oil, ground nut oil, etc. Other towns owe their importance to their maritime position. Thus IJmuiden is an important fishing port. Flushing, on the Island of Walcheren, and the Hook of Holland are packet stations from which steamers sail to Britain (Harwich and Hull).

*Amsterdam*, situated on the west side of the Zuyder Zee, is the capital. The ships of olden days could navigate the shallow Zuyder Zee, but to-day Amsterdam is linked with the North Sea at IJmuiden by the North Sea Canal. During the "Period of Discovery" it was the great entrepôt (or depôt for distribution and collection of produce) for Northern

Europe and had a great trade in Oriental produce. The need for maintaining this trade in the face of Spanish opposition led to voyages of Dutch explorers (viz. Van Dieman and Tasman) and the ultimate foundation of the great colonial empire in the East Indies. Even to this day the trade of Amsterdam is primarily concerned with the produce of the East Indies, viz. rubber, cocoa, tin, rice, spices, tobacco, copra, etc.



*Official Tourist Office, The Hague.*

#### THE RECLAMATION OF THE ZUYDER ZEE.

Less than ten years ago the farm land shown above was part of the bed of the sea. The soil is a rich loam partly composed of river silt and partly of sea sand, but when first reclaimed it was heavily impregnated with salt. The Dutch people have made a series of experiments to discover the most suitable crops for cultivation. In the background of this picture sheaves of rye can be seen.

*Rotterdam*, on a distributary of the Rhine, known as the New Maas, is to-day connected with the sea at the Hook of Holland, by a deep canal known as the New Waterway. Although Rotterdam is smaller than Amsterdam, it is the greater port and handles about three-quarters of Dutch trade. Rotterdam, however, is not only a port concerned with the importation of food and raw materials for use in Holland, and

the exportation of Dutch produce, but it is, like Antwerp, a great port of transshipment for the Rhine Basin. Hence it imports, for instance, vast quantities of food, mineral ores, oils, etc., for Germany and exports coal and manufactured goods from the Ruhr coalfield.

*The Hague*, on the western edge of the polders, is the seat of the government and a city of great international importance. Its relation to the countries of the World is very similar to that of Geneva to the League of Nations, and its "Peace Palace" is one of the most famous of its many stately buildings.

### **Eastern Holland**

That part of Holland which lies mainly to the east of the polders is the least densely populated part of the country. This is the result of the relative infertility of large areas. The soils are glacial deposits of the Ice Age, and are often sandy and pebbly. There are also large areas of peat bog. The whole district is often called the Geestland, and similar regions are to be found in the North German Plain and in Western Denmark. The great need for agricultural land has forced the Dutch to take measures to convert much of this once uncultivable region into productive farm land. This has been done by literally "re-making" the soil by a process of mixing the overlying peat and the underlying sandy soils, followed by the intensive use of artificial manures. The reclamation of the Geestland is comparable to the reclamation of the polders, and it is in these regions that the population is increasing most rapidly. But another factor also helps to account for the rapid increase in population in South Holland, and that is the discovery of coal. Coal is now worked to the east of Maastricht and in the Peel district further north. Because of the vast network of canals in Holland the coal can be distributed easily and cheaply all over the country, but the rapid growth of the older towns and the development of new industrial centres is most marked in the south. For instance, Eindhoven, a town engaged in the manufacture of electrical equipment, doubled its population between 1921 and 1931. Among the important industries are the textile industries of Tilburg (wool), Breda (rayon), and Twente (cotton), tanneries, leather works, and the manufacture of bicycles—for which the flatness of Holland causes a great demand.

**Communications**

Because of the general flatness of Holland transport is easy in all directions, and owing to the ease of canal construction and the network of navigable distributaries of the Rhine, water transport is everywhere more important than transport by rail or road. It is interesting to note that Holland has 4660 miles of canals and navigable waterways, as compared with 3000 miles of road, and 2250 miles of railway.

**Trade**

Holland ranks fifth among the nations in respect to foreign trade, but this is largely due to its transit or entrepôt trade. The Dutch merchant service ranks seventh in the world.

The large East Indian Empire has an important effect on the trade of Holland, for the East Indies not only provide a market for some of the manufactured goods (*e.g.* cotton manufactures) but supply the home country with vast quantities of tropical produce. Holland exports to Britain bacon, condensed milk, cheese, butter, onions, tomatoes, paper, etc., and in return receives coal, textiles, machinery, motor cars, etc. It is noteworthy that wheat and flour stand high (third) on the list of imports, showing that, in spite of highly intensive agricultural development, Holland is not self-supporting with regard to food supplies.

## CHAPTER V

### THE COUNTRIES OF THE NORTH-WESTERN MARGINS OF EUROPE: (3) DENMARK

#### **Position and General Characteristics**

Denmark consists of the north-pointing peninsula of Jutland and some hundreds of islands, large and small, the chief of which, Funen, Zealand, and Laaland, lie between Jutland and the south of Sweden. Thus Denmark controls the three natural routes between the North Sea and the Baltic Sea, viz. via the Little Belt, Great Belt, and the Sound, the latter strait being only three miles wide at its northern end. In the south of the country, where Denmark and Germany meet, the peninsula is only thirty miles broad. The peninsular and insular form of Denmark, and the nearness of all parts of the country to the sea, have helped to develop an important fishing industry and a large mercantile marine.

Except for the island of Bornholm, which is composed of ancient rocks similar to those of Scandinavia, Denmark is structurally part of the Great European Plain. Although no part of the country reaches an elevation of 600 feet, it is not flat like the polder land of Holland, but undulating and well-drained. The islands of Funen, Laaland, and Zealand and the eastern part of Jutland are covered with a mantle of fertile soils of glacial origin, but the western half of Jutland consists of sandy and pebbly soils similar to the Geestland of Holland. These soils are naturally unproductive, but, as in Holland, they have been converted into fertile agricultural areas by the addition of marl and lime and the intensive use of fertilisers.

On the extreme west of Jutland is a belt of sand dunes similar to the coastal dunes of Belgium and Holland. These have been planted with pine trees and special grasses to prevent the sand being blown inland. The pine trees, as in the Landes of France, are becoming an important source of revenue in a country poor in forests.



### **Climate**

Situated on the west of Europe, but to the east of the British Isles and so further from the open Atlantic, Denmark has a climate similar to, but rather more extreme, than of Eastern England. Its average rainfall is about 25 inches, and its summer temperature about 60° F. (cf. Eastern England), but its January temperatures average 32° F. (cf. Eastern England 38°F.). It should be noted that the January isotherm of 32° F. passes from north to south through Denmark (see Fig. 7).

### **The Resources of Denmark**

Denmark is a country of limited resources—

(1) Its position at the entrance to the Baltic Sea makes it important strategically, and up to 1857 “Sound Dues” were collected from all shipping passing through the Straits.

(2) Its close association with the sea, and its nearness to the North Sea fishing grounds, have given rise to an important fishing industry.

(3) It has no coal and no minerals except the kaolin of Bornholm, which is used for the manufacture of pottery. Tyne coal, however, because of cheap sea transport, costs little more in Copenhagen than in London.

✓ (4) It has no swiftly-flowing rivers that can be used either for transport or for the development of hydro-electricity.

A small amount of electric power is carried to Copenhagen by submarine cable from Sweden. It is obvious that Denmark is not an industrial country. The manufactures are almost entirely confined to the preparation of agricultural produce for export.

(5) Although originally a forested country, to-day less than 4 per cent. of the country is timbered, so that, unlike other countries, such as Norway, Sweden, and Finland, Denmark has no lumbering industry.

Thus it will be seen that the dominant resource of Denmark is agriculture, but even with regard to this there are a number of natural disadvantages, e.g. the infertility of large areas and the tendency of the climate to extremes of temperature and light rainfall. The conditions of temperature and rainfall



*Danish Tourist Bureau.*

#### THE GEESTLAND OF DENMARK.

Much of the soil of Denmark is not fertile by nature and has to be scientifically treated. This picture shows a portion of the heath vegetation associated with the light sandy soils of western Denmark.

show that, climatically, Denmark is better suited to the cultivation of grain than to dairying, yet Denmark is the pre-eminent dairy-farming country of the world, exporting large quantities of bacon, butter, eggs and cheese. Up to the middle of last century Denmark was a grain-growing country, and even to-day, on her more limited wheatlands, the yield of wheat (up to 50 bushels per acre) is higher than in any other country in the world. The competition of cheap grain from the New World caused Denmark to change from grain growing to the rearing of animals. This does not mean that Denmark is a country of green pasture lands like Ireland, for it lacks the humidity and winter warmth which make the Irish pastures so luxuriant. Less than 20 per cent. of Denmark is used as permanent pasture, and seventy-five per cent. is still under the plough, but the crops raised are mainly for fodder, *i.e.* oats, barley, hay, clover and special grass crops. It is the aim of all Danish farmers to grow these crops and to rear dairy cattle, bacon pigs, and poultry.

### **Reasons for the Importance of the Danish Dairying Industry**

That Denmark should be the greatest dairy-farming country in spite of her obvious drawbacks is due to a number of causes most of which may be traced to the foresight, initiative and diligence of her people—

(1) Highly scientific methods of farming are practised and the educational system of the country is largely directed towards the increase of agricultural knowledge by the provision of State scholarships in agriculture, etc.

(2) The Danish Government maintains a rigid system of inspection both of the farms, to see that a satisfactory standard of cleanliness is maintained, and also of the export products to ensure that they are of high quality in order that the reputation of Danish products will be maintained abroad.

(3) Co-operative production has replaced the manufacture of butter, cheese and bacon on individual farms. Eighty per cent. of the milk produced is sent to the co-operative creameries, and eighty per cent. of the pigs are made into bacon and ham in co-operative factories. These methods result in a great saving of energy and expense, and make possible the financial

success of the smaller farms. Denmark is a country of small farms. Nearly three-quarters of the farms are less than 14 acres. There are approximately 9000 co-operative societies in the country.

(4) Within easy reach of Denmark are a number of highly industrialised and densely-populated areas (*e.g.* Britain, Germany) which provide a market for surplus dairy produce.

### The Trade of Denmark

By far the greatest portion of the export and import trade of Denmark is with Great Britain (providing 40 per cent. of the imports and taking 70 per cent. of the exports) and Germany (providing 28 per cent. of the imports and taking 17 per cent. of the exports). These countries, with their highly industrialised areas, not only require the food products of Denmark, but can supply her with fuel and manufactured goods. The

principal exports of Denmark are bacon, butter and eggs, cheese, etc., amounting in 1933 to 90 per cent. of the total exports. Her principal imports are coal and manufactured goods (textiles, machinery, etc.), but large quantities of cattle food, *viz.* oil-cake, bran, and maize are imported as well as vegetable oils for the manufacture of margarine. Large quantities of margarine are used in Denmark so that a greater surplus of butter remains for export.



Fig. 39. THE ROUTES TO THE BALTIC AND THE POSITION OF COPENHAGEN.—Note that the Kiel Canal is not in Denmark but in Germany.

### Towns

*Copenhagen* ("the merchants' haven") is situated on the east coast of Zealand commanding the Sound, and contains one-fifth of the population of Denmark. It is the one great port of the country and in former times became important because of its control of the route into the Baltic Sea. The opening of the Kiel Canal, which shortened the journey between the North Sea and the Baltic by two hundred and forty miles, adversely affected its trade (Fig. 39).

*Esbjerg* on the west coast of Jutland is the second port. It is an important fishing centre and from it a railway runs across Denmark to Copenhagen, the straits being crossed by train ferries. Another train ferry links Copenhagen with Helsingborg in Sweden.

### Other Danish Territories in Europe

THE FAROES.—The Faroes (Sheep Islands) situated between Scotland and Iceland are governed by Denmark. Sheep-rearing and fishing are the chief occupations of the people, more than 50 per cent. of the inhabitants being engaged in cod-fishing or whaling. The chief town is Thorshaven, and the total population of the islands is only 24,000.

ICELAND.—Iceland was formerly ruled by Denmark but since 1918 it has ranked as an independent state, but the King of Denmark is also the King of Iceland. It is situated on a submarine ridge linking Scotland with Greenland, and is largely composed of volcanic rocks. Some of the volcanoes, e.g. Mount Hecla, are still active. In the south-east of Iceland are large glaciers (Vatna Jokull). The island is subject to high winds and heavy rainfall, for it is situated near to a great cyclonic track of the North Atlantic. The winters are very mild, but the coolness of the summers, due to the northerly position, makes the growth of cereals unprofitable. Most of the people live in the south-west of the island, and are engaged in fishing and in the rearing of cattle and sheep. Reykjavik, the capital, is growing rapidly as a result of the increasing development of the fisheries and the trade in fish oils and salted fish.

## CHAPTER VI

### THE COUNTRIES OF THE NORTH-WESTERN MARGINS OF EUROPE: (4) NORWAY

#### **General Physical Features**

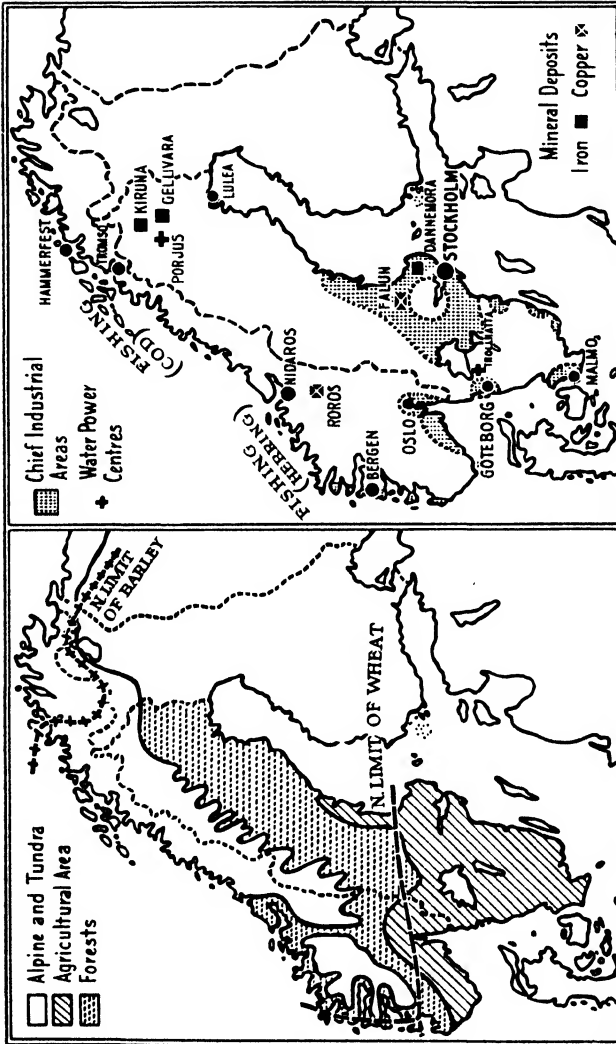
Norway offers a great contrast to Denmark, for, whereas 75 per cent. of Denmark is cultivated, more than 70 per cent. of Norway consists of unproductive land. Forests are unimportant in Denmark, but in Norway they cover nearly one-quarter of the land surface. Only 3.6 per cent. of Norway is under cultivation (Fig. 43). Norway is slightly larger than the British Isles and has a population of roughly 2½ millions.

Norway is the western portion of the Scandinavian peninsula. It is composed of a mountain mass of ancient rocks rising to over 8000 feet, and is part of the Northern Highland system of Europe. Norway is widest in the south, where there are broad stretches of high plateau known as fjelds, above which rise the peaks of Galdhopig and Jotunheim. These fjelds are covered by extensive snow-fields and glaciers, from which valley glaciers flow, in some cases, down to sea-level. With the exception of the river Glommen, which flows north to south in south-eastern Norway, and forms a natural highway between Oslo and Nidaros (Trondhjem), there are no long rivers. Hundreds of short, swift streams, however, are an important source of electrical energy.

#### **The Fiord Coastline**

One of the most striking features of Norway is its fiord coastline. This coast is characterised by an amazing number of islands (over 150,000) known as the "skerry guard."

The fiords, long, narrow, steep-sided indentations, deepened by glacial action, are drowned valleys (Fig. 41). The fiord sides often rise almost perpendicularly from the sea for several hundred feet, above which level the slope is more gradual. Streams from hanging valleys above plunge over the fiord side, forming magnificent waterfalls. The water is often over a



(a) SCANDINAVIA—VEGETATION. (b) SCANDINAVIA—ECONOMIC RESOURCES.

thousand feet deep, but it becomes shallower at the seaward end of the fiord where there is a bar of solid rock or of morainic material. The sides of the fiord provide little room for settlement except where small "beaches" occur, but there is usually a small fertile plain of deltaic origin at the head of the fiord where a village is found. The resources of such regions are meagre. The calm waters of the fiord (protected by the bar) have fostered a love of seafaring, and the peoples of these coastlands are primarily engaged in fishing. The lower slopes of the fiords are often covered with coniferous forests which provide timber, not only for local use, but also for the manufacture of matches, pulp, etc. The swift streams can be utilised for the generation of hydro-electricity. Farming activities are limited by the lack of flat land. Where possible, oats, roots

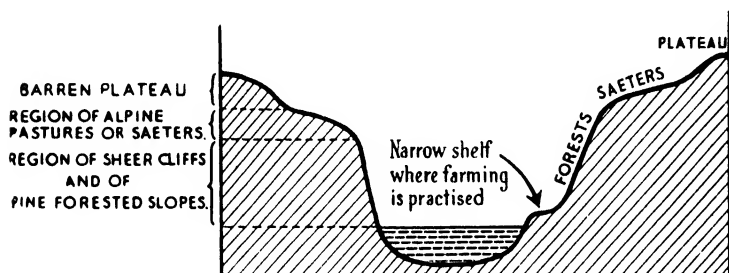


Fig. 41. CROSS-SECTION OF A FIORD.

and hay are grown. Cattle are pastured in summer on the *saeters* (i.e. the pasture lands above the tree line) and are brought down to the lower lands during the winter.

The total coastline of Norway, if straightened out, would stretch half-way round the Equator. The Sogne fiord alone is 130 miles long (e.g. about the same distance as from London to Bristol).

### Climate

The south of Norway is in the same latitude as Northern Scotland. In spite of its northerly position ( $58^{\circ}$  N to  $71^{\circ}$  N), the coasts of Norway are always ice-free, and in January the temperature of the Lofoten Island is the same as that of Bulgaria, nearly 2000 miles further south. The abnormal warmth





*Norwegian State Rlys.*

**LYSFIORD, STAVANGER, NORWAY.**

This scene is typical of the west coast of Norway. Notice how the sides of the fiord drop steeply to the water allowing little opportunity for human settlement; the "U" shape of the drowned valley; the river meandering over the deltaic flats at the head of the fiord; the river terraces in the right foreground.

of the Norwegian winters is due to the warming influence of the South-West winds from the Atlantic and to the North Atlantic Drift (see Fig. 3). The rainfall of Norway is heavy, and, though no systematic records are available, for the mountain areas it is estimated that in many places the rainfall is over 200 inches per annum. Another important factor is the length of the summer days. At North Cape there is continuous daylight for over two months. The length of the summer days is important in relation to agriculture, for barley will ripen in two months in the north of the peninsula, whereas it takes three months in the south. The climate is so humid and cloudy that hay often has to be hung on specially constructed fences to dry.

### **The Resources and Occupations of Norway**

The natural advantages and disadvantages of Norway are that it has—

- (a) Only a small percentage of lowland, the largest areas being in the south-east near Oslo and in the Glommen valley.
- (b) Vast stretches of unproductive highland.
- (c) Extensive forest lands.
- (d) An ice-free and deeply-indented coastline.
- (e) Very few minerals.
- (f) A large number of swiftly-flowing streams.

These resources (or the lack of certain other resources) determine the major occupations of Norway, which are—

- (1) Agriculture.
- (2) Fisheries.
- (3) Forestry.
- (4) Manufactures.

**AGRICULTURAL ACTIVITIES.**—Cultivation in Norway is limited by the high unproductive mountains. The hard rock weathers so slowly that the soil is transported to the valleys almost as quickly as it is formed. Hence, on account of their thin soils, high altitudes, cold temperatures and inaccessibility, the plateau regions are totally unproductive. Cultivation is limited to the more sheltered lowlands of the

south-east (Fig. 40*a*), the valley bottoms and the narrow ledges of fertile land along the sides of the fiords. In spite of all these limitations, more people (31 per cent.) are engaged in agriculture than in any other occupation. Wheat can only be cultivated in the extreme south of Norway so that the chief crops are oats, rye, potatoes, barley, and hay. There is a strong tendency for dairying to increase at the expense of cereal cultivation, and small amounts of dairy produce are exported, while large quantities of grain are imported. A notable feature of Norwegian agriculture is the use made of upland pastures or saeters. These are located above the forest belt at an elevation of 600 to 2000 feet. Snow covered in winter, they form excellent summer pastures. Most of the fiord and valley dwellers have both a lowland and an upland farm. On the former they cultivate during the summer crops and hay for winter use. Other members of the family live in crude dwellings on the saeters, tend the cattle, and collect and dry grass, which is brought down to the lowland farm to eke out the supply of winter fodder. As there is a shortage of good building stone the houses of the farmers are built mostly of wood, and to-day they are well-equipped with electricity.

**FISHERIES.**—From earliest times the influence of the sea has been strong in Norway. The small amount of agricultural land bordering the fiords, and the barrenness and inaccessibility of the interior, caused the fiord dwellers to turn to the sea to eke out their means of livelihood. The calm waters of the fiords and the sheltered creeks between the islands were the nursery of a seafaring people, who in the early days of history set out on long voyages of discovery and settlement, to Britain, Iceland, Greenland, and America (e.g. the voyages of Lief Ericson about 1000 A.D.). The nearness of the North Sea fishing grounds and the inherent love of the sea, has led to the development of a great fishing industry. The most famous fishing grounds are those south of the Lofoten Islands, where immense quantities of cod and herring are caught (Fig. 40*b*). Tromso and Hammerfest are the chief centres of the cod fisheries, and Nidaros (Trondhjem) and Bergen are the chief centres of the herring fisheries. Canned fish (e.g. Norwegian brislings) and fish oils are important items of Norwegian export.



*Norwegian State Rlys.*

GUDBRANDSDALEN, NORWAY, SHOWING AN UPLAND FARM OR "SAETER."

Notice the use of wood for building in a country where wood is plentiful and good building stone is not always available; the forests of the valley slopes; the crop of hay for winter feeding in the valley farms; the method of drying the hay. Why does this method of drying have to be adopted?

Whaling is becoming increasingly important, especially in Antarctic waters, where Bouvet Island is a Norwegian whaling station. Norway supplies over 50 per cent. of the whale oil of the world.

The familiarity with the sea not only helps to explain the importance of the Norwegian fishing industry, but it is also largely responsible for the importance of the Norwegian mercantile marine, which takes a large share of the carrying trade of the world, and ranks fourth in respect to tonnage, being surpassed only by the mercantile marines of Britain, U.S.A. and Japan.

**FORESTRY.**—Although nearly one-quarter of Norway is forested, most of the valuable stands of timber are in the more sheltered south-eastern region. The western slopes of the Norwegian mountains are generally too steep and too exposed to strong winds for the growth of large trees. The most valuable of the western forests are in the neighbourhood of Nidaros (Trondhjem). Moreover, in past years, the accessibility of the forests of the fiords slopes led to extensive cutting for export, and a serious depletion of the forest reserves.

Large quantities of timber are used in Norway for building and for fuel, but there remains a large surplus. This was formerly exported as lumber, but to-day Norway does not supply much wood to other countries, but uses it as the basis of manufacturing industries, such as the manufacture of wood-pulp and paper. The short, swift streams of Norway are not suited to the floating of logs, but they provide the hydro-electric power for the factories.

**INDUSTRIES.**—Norway has no coal resources, and her mineral ores, though varied, are limited in quantity. The chief are pyrites (which yields sulphur and copper), copper ores, and aluminium ore.

Industries in Norway are mainly based on raw materials produced within the country and on water-power. Norway has many advantages for the development of hydro-electric power. The rainfall is evenly distributed throughout the year, so that the rivers maintain a constant flow; there are many waterfalls, and the rivers are swift flowing and do not freeze in winter. Hydro-electric power is most intensively

developed in southern Norway near to the capital, Oslo, and to the heavily forested regions. In West and Northern Norway electricity is primarily used for domestic purposes. The development and use of hydro-electricity has caused a great increase in the manufacturing industries. Timber is manufactured into wood-pulp, paper and matches. There has been a rapid increase in the use of electricity for the smelting of metal ores (e.g. aluminium) and the manufacture of chemicals, e.g. calcium carbide, and nitrogen compounds, including ammonia and nitrates for fertilisers. An important nitrate plant is situated at Saahcim near the Rjukan Falls.

### Communications

One of the greatest difficulties in Norway is that of transport, this is partly due to the great distances involved in a long narrow country, and partly to the mountainous nature of the land. The chief railway development is in the richer regions of the south-east, and from Oslo three railways strike out north; (1) to Bergen, which involved the cutting of 178 tunnels; and (2) two routes to Nidaros, one of which follows the Glommen valley. From Nidaros northwards there is no railway except for a small length which links Narvik with Sweden, and which was built for

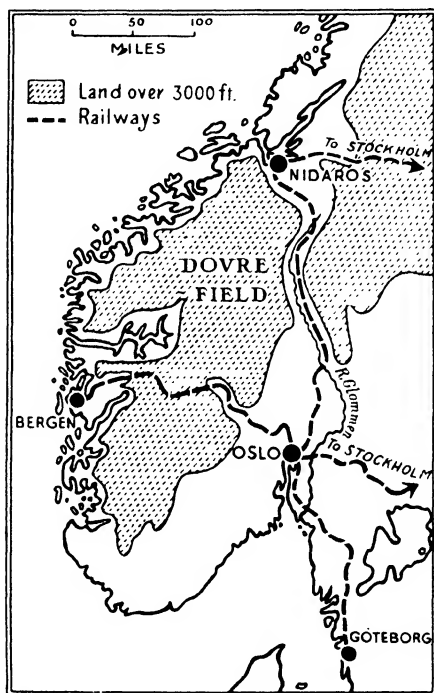


Fig. 42. THE POSITIONS OF OSLO AND NIDAROS IN RELATION TO THE GLOMMEN VALLEY.

the special purpose of exporting Swedish iron ore from Gellivara via. an ice-free port.

*Oslo* (250,000), the capital, is situated at the head of a long fiord in the south-eastern lowland of Norway. It is the centre of the most highly-developed area, and has rail communications with Bergen and Nidaros, and also with Stockholm and Göteborg in Sweden (Fig. 42).

*Bergen*, only one-third the size of Oslo, is the second largest town. It was an important city of the Hanseatic League, and to-day is responsible for large exports of fish to the Roman Catholic countries of Europe.

*Nidaros* (Trondhjem), at the northern end of the Glommen depression, is the ancient capital of Norway and the centre of the most productive and most heavily forested region of the west coast. It is also the ecclesiastical capital of the country.

No other town in Norway has a population exceeding 50,000, and most of them are comparable in size with small English market towns.

### Trade

It is clear from the nature of her occupations that the exports of Norway will consist of fish, fish products, wood-pulp, paper, cardboard, timber, and chemicals. Her imports include grain, food for animals, coal, and a vast range of manufactured goods, including textiles and machinery.

### Norwegian Possessions

*Spitsbergen* lies some 400 miles to the north of Norway. It was probably discovered by the Norwegians in the 12th century, and in the 17th century was an important whaling station. The sovereignty of Spitzbergen has often been a matter of dispute, but when the rich coalfields of the island were discovered at the beginning of this century the matter of settlement became important. It officially became a Norwegian island in 1925. There are six mining camps, the largest of which is Longyearben with 500 inhabitants.

## CHAPTER VII

### THE COUNTRIES BORDERING THE BALTIC SEA: (1) SWEDEN

The countries bordering the Baltic Sea include Sweden, the new countries of Finland, Esthonia, Latvia and Lithuania, Poland, and Germany. Since the U.S.S.R. reaches the Baltic in the east it might be included, but climatically the country is of the Continental, and not of the Baltic type.

#### **The Baltic Sea**

The Baltic Sea is an almost enclosed sea which extends eastwards into the heart of Northern Europe. Leningrad, at its most easterly point, is more than 1000 miles from the open Atlantic. Because of the vast quantities of fresh water added to the Baltic by rivers it has a low salinity and freezes easily. The length of time during which the Baltic ports are frozen annually increases eastwards and northwards. Thus near the mouth of the River Oder the sea is only frozen for twenty days, but at Danzig the period has increased to three months, and at Leningrad it is five months. Stockholm is icebound for less than two months, but the period increases northwards, and Lulea, at the northern end of the gulf of Bothnia, is frozen for six months. The Baltic Sea not only provides a water highway into Northern Europe, but it has a considerable influence on the climates of the surrounding countries, which have less extreme temperatures, and more rainfall than they would have if the Baltic Sea did not exist. Thus the Baltic has the effect of making the climate changes between Britain and Central Russia more gradual, and the Baltic type of climate is therefore a transitional type. In general the summers vary from hot in Central Germany to cool in Finland; the winters are everywhere below freezing point, the winter cold increasing eastward; and the rainfall is light (average 20 inches), falling at all seasons, but with a summer maximum.



### Sweden in Contrast with Norway

Sweden is the eastern portion of the Scandinavian peninsula. It differs from Norway in a number of ways, viz—

(a) Since most of its coastline faces the Baltic, which is frozen for at least one month during the winter, and since it lacks the deeply, indented coastline and well-developed island fringe of Norway, its maritime activities and its fishing industry are of minor importance.

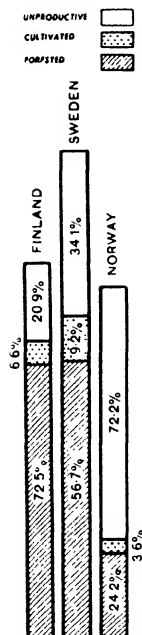


Fig. 43. DIAGRAM TO SHOW PERCENTAGES OF THE TOTAL AREA OF NORWAY, SWEDEN AND FINLAND WHICH IS CULTIVATED, UNPRODUCTIVE, OR FORESTED.

(b) While a quarter of Norway is forested, over half of Sweden is forested, but, in view of the greater area of Sweden, the latter has more than three times the area of forest than Norway has (Fig. 43).

(c) Sweden has a greater extent of lowland than Norway, and the climate is not so humid (Fig. 44), hence Sweden has a much greater area devoted to agriculture.

(d) Sweden has much larger mineral resources than Norway, and particularly of iron ore (see Fig. 40b).

(e) The streams of Sweden are less swift than those of Norway, hence, while they are of much greater value for lumbering, they do not form quite such an important potential source of hydro-electric power.

(f) In spite of its greater size Sweden has a smaller area of unproductive land than Norway.

### Divisions of Sweden

Sweden can be divided into four regions—

- |                             |                          |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| (1) Norrland.               | (2) The lake depression. |
| (3) The plateau of Småland. | (4) Scania.              |

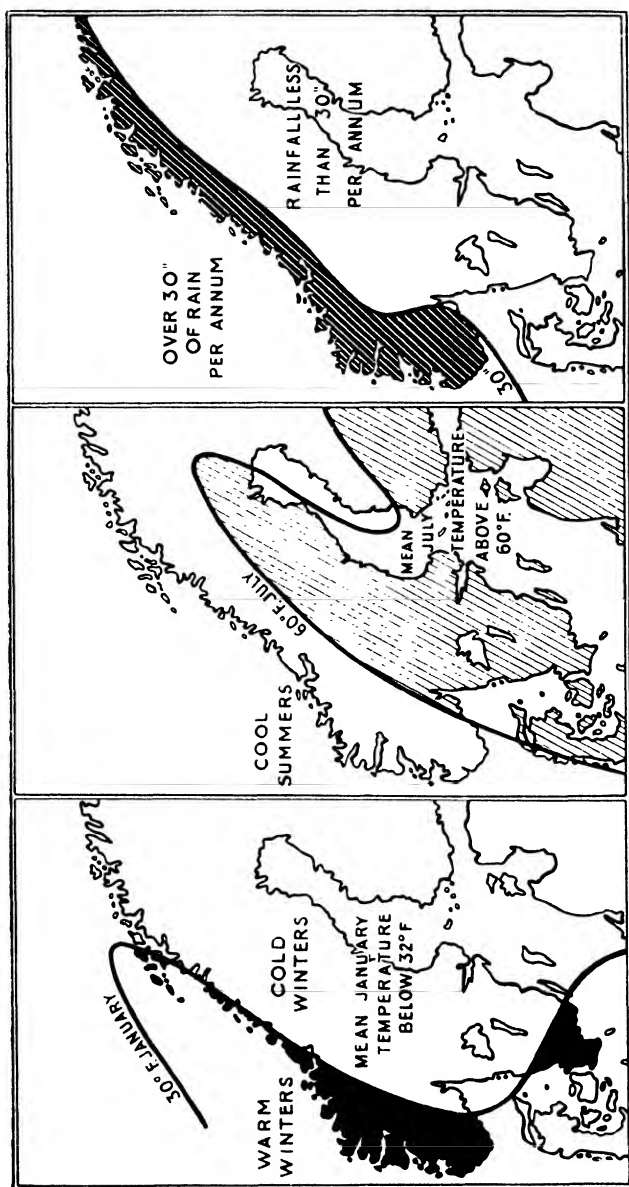


Fig. 44. CLIMATIC CONTRASTS BETWEEN NORWAY AND SWEDEN.

(1) NORRLAND.—This part of Sweden lies north of Lat.  $61^{\circ}$  N. It extends from the crest of the Scandinavian mountains on the west, and drops gradually eastward to the Baltic Sea. It is drained by innumerable parallel streams, in the upper courses of which are long, narrow and deep lakes formed by the erosive action of the glaciers and the deposition of morainic dams across the river valleys. In the west of Norrland is a high unproductive plateau region upwards of 5000 feet in elevation. This plateau forms a barrier to communication between Norway and Sweden except in the latitudes of Trondhjem and the Lofoten Islands, where the crest is lower, and at these points railways cross the barrier.

Below the level of the plateau are the east-facing slopes, everywhere covered with extensive forest of pine, fir and birch.

The coastal plain, a region of uplift, is an area of fertile soils. The coast is broken by numerous indentations known as fiards (not similar to the Norwegian fiords), and there is a fringe of tiny islands. This large region of Norrland was virtually uninhabited until the end of last century, when the forest wealth was exploited, and to-day it is one of the greatest producers of timber in the world. The rivers are so numerous that there is hardly a lumber camp which is more than five miles from a waterway suitable for the transport of logs. But the forests are not the only resource of Norrland. The coastal plain is cultivated, and produces crops of oats, barley, and rye, etc. There are also important mineral deposits, e.g. the iron ores of Gellivara and Kiruna (see Fig. 40). Because of its great distance from the manufacturing centres of Southern Sweden most of these ores are exported, partly through Narvik (Norway) during the winter months, when the Baltic is frozen, and partly through Lulea during the summer months. Some forty miles east of Gellivara is a great hydro-electric power station at Porjus, which supplies the power for the Lulea-Narvik railway.

The towns of the coast are mostly small (10,000–20,000 inhabitants), and are centres for saw mills, the manufacture of paper and wood pulp, and the exportation of timber.

In the extreme north of Sweden and in the neighbouring districts of Norway and Finland is Lapland. The Laps are a nomadic people who depend on their herds of reindeer, and, where they live near the sea, on fishing also.

(2) THE LAKE DEPRESSION (Fig. 45).—Immediately to the south of Norrland is a lowland, the Lake Depression, extending from the Skager Rak to Stockholm. In it lies the large lakes, Vener, Vetter, and Mälar. These lakes are joined by a canal so that there is a complete waterway between the two greatest cities of Sweden, viz. Stockholm, the capital, on the east, and Göteborg, the great western outlet of the country. Not only is this the main “thoroughfare” of Sweden, but it is



*Swedish Travel Bureau.*

THE KIRUNAVAARA IRON MINES, LAPLAND, SWEDEN.

In these mines the top soil is removed and then the iron ore is dug out by large steam shovels. Kirunavaara lies well within the Arctic Circle and during the dark winter days work is carried on by artificial light.

The electric light standards are shown in the picture.

well developed both agriculturally and industrially. Potatoes and cereals (except wheat) are grown, and dairy cattle are reared. There are rich mineral deposits, viz. iron ore at Dannemora, zinc at Ammeberg, lead in the Sagan valley west of Upsala, and copper at Falun.

In the days when charcoal was used for smelting, this region had important iron industries, and was the chief producer of iron in Europe, until the use of coal and coke revolutionised the

industry. Because of the shortage of coal in Sweden the chief metal working centres are to-day situated near the coast, where supplies of imported coal are cheapest. The engineering industry includes the manufacture of cream separators, ball bearings, lighthouse apparatus, telephone equipment and electrical machinery. Some of the principal centres are the port of Norrköping; Motala, on Lake Vetter; and Eskilstuna, on Lake Mälär. Trollhätta, the Niagara of Sweden, is a great

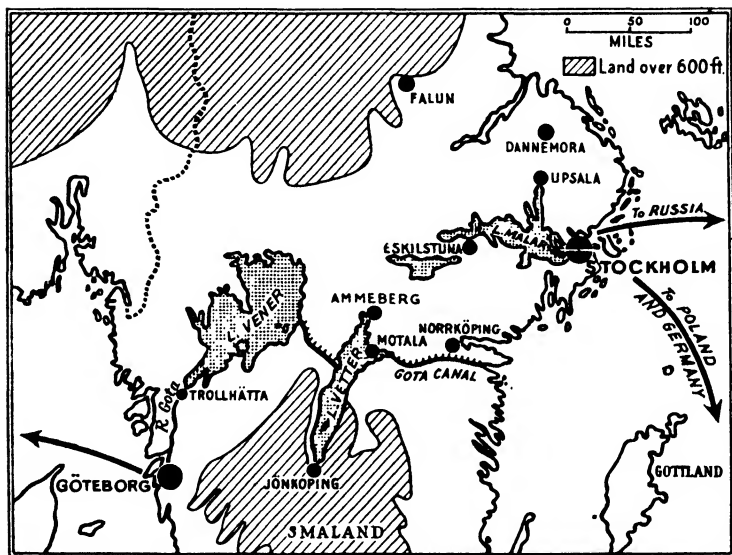


Fig. 45. THE LAKE DEPRESSION OF SWEDEN.—Note the waterway linking the east and west coasts and also the positions of Stockholm and Göteborg at the ends of the "thoroughfare."

hydro-electric centre on the river Göta, which flows from Lake Vener.

*Stockholm* (500,000), the capital of Sweden, grew up on and around a small island at the eastern end of Lake Mälär. Its suitability for defence made it a great Viking stronghold. It controls routes westward across the Lake Depression, northwards to the forested areas, and lies opposite the Gulf of Finland, which gives access to Russia. Its disadvantages are that it is not ice-free, and that it lies on the side of Sweden away from the main trading routes.



*Swedish Travel Bureau.*

**AERIAL VIEW OF STOCKHOLM.**

This picture of Stockholm seems to justify the title of the "Venice of northern Europe."

*Göteborg* on the west of Southern Sweden and at the mouth of the River Göta, is at the western end of the Lake Depression and is the great trading centre of the country. It is ice-free, in direct contact with the busy nations of Western Europe, and has excellent canal and railway communications with all parts of Southern Sweden.

*Norrköping*, another important port on the east coast, is not only a metal working and engineering centre, but has important textile industries.

(3) SMÅLAND.—This region is a plateau of ancient rocks rising to about 1000 feet and occupying the central area of Southern Sweden. It is an area of forests, swamps and moorland, and the population density is low. The only cultivable lands lie around the edges of the mountain core. One of the most important towns of the interior is Jönköping, at the southern end of Lake Vetter. This is the great centre for the manufacture of matches, which are produced in immense quantities, and exported to all parts of the world. The location of the match industry is primarily due to the fact that the inventor of safety matches was a native of Jönköping, and also to the availability of raw materials. Karlskrona, on the south coast, is the Swedish naval station.

(4) SCANIA.—The peninsula Scania, at the extreme southwest of Sweden, is composed of newer rocks similar to those of Denmark. Because of its southerly position, warmer temperatures, and fertile soils, it is the richest agricultural region in the country. Wheat can be grown as well as oats, barley and rye, and the production of dairy produce is sufficiently large to give a surplus for export. Sugar beet is also cultivated. There are some small deposits of coal in this region. The chief town and port of Scania is Malmö. In winter the harbour has to be kept open by ice-breakers. It has important ferry connections with Copenhagen.

### **The Trade of Sweden**

The trade of Sweden is primarily with Britain, Germany, and Poland. She receives most imports from Germany, and sends most exports to England. As would be expected, the chief exports are timber, wood pulp and paper, and machinery

of special types, in the manufacture of which the Swedes are specialists. Mineral ores rank high in the export list (*e.g.* the iron ore of Dannemora), and the export of dairy produce is increasing. Sweden buys large quantities of coal from Poland, to which country iron ore is exported. Textile manufactures head the list of imports, followed by coal, foodstuffs and machinery not manufactured in Sweden.



## CHAPTER VIII

### COUNTRIES BORDERING THE BALTIC SEA: (2) THE NEW REPUBLICS OF THE EASTERN BALTIC

#### FINLAND

##### **Position, Relief and Climate**

Finland lies to the north-east of the Baltic sea and north of the Gulf of Finland. It extends northward to the Arctic coast, which, because of the influences of the North Atlantic Drift, is ice-free. For several centuries Finland was politically part of Sweden, and to this it owes much of its progress and development. For practically the whole of the 19th century it was politically linked with Russia, but gained its independence after the Russian Revolution of 1917.

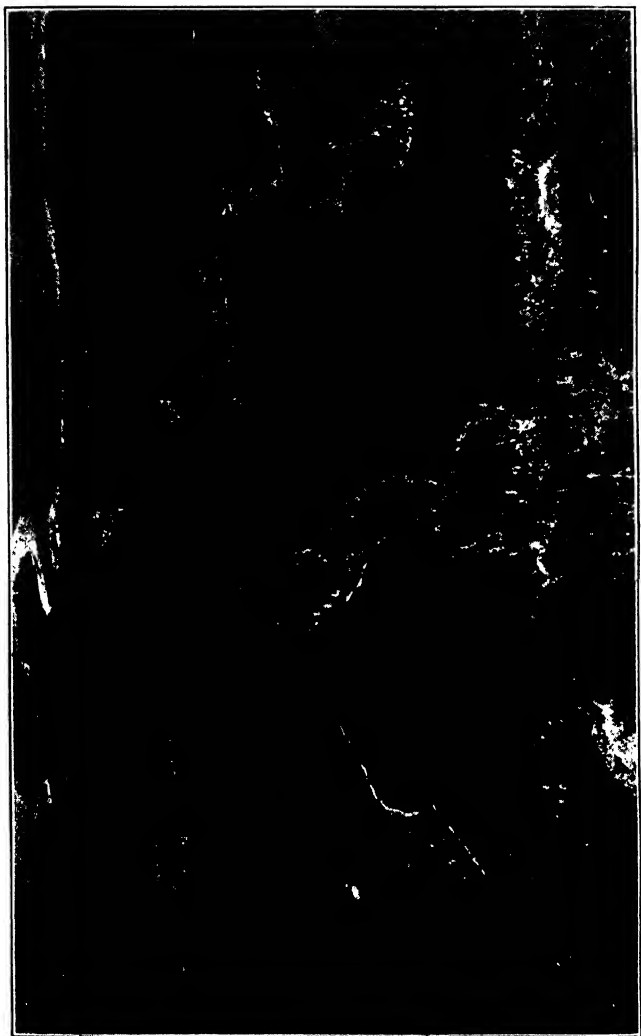
Finland is a low plateau of ancient rocks worn down by ice action. Large areas are composed of bare rock, but in other districts there are extensive morainic deposits. Rivers wind about among small rounded hills, and water collects to form lakes, both in the rocky hollows scooped out by the ice and in the depressions of the hummocky morainic areas.

There are 35,000 lakes in Finland, and one-third of the area is composed of lakes, bogs and marshes.

Although Finland lies so far north (*i.e.* entirely north of 60° N), because of its position to the east of Scandinavia away from the moderating influences of the Atlantic, its summer temperatures are similar to those of South-Eastern England. The winters are, however, much colder than those of England, viz. 20° F., in the south to 10° F., and less in the north-east. The average annual rainfall is about 20 inches, the winter snow-fall being heavy. In the south-west the ports, though frozen, can usually be kept open for shipping by the use of ice-breakers.

##### **Occupations**

The chief occupations are those concerned with agriculture and forestry, though there is some industrial development in the towns of South-West Finland, largely due to the former political connections with Sweden.



*Suomen Markat.*

**PUNKAHARJU.**

This picture shows some of the characteristic features of southern Finland, viz. the low morainic lands threaded with rivers and lakes, and the dense coniferous forest. The lakes and rivers form a valuable source of water-power in a country devoid of coal.

**AGRICULTURE.**—Finland has less agricultural land than any other European country except Norway (see Fig. 43). In spite of this, more people are engaged in agriculture than in any other occupation, but it must be remembered that many of the men engaged in lumbering during the winter turn to agricultural occupations during the summer. The principal areas of cultivation are along the south-west coastal plain, where climatic conditions are least severe, and in the valleys

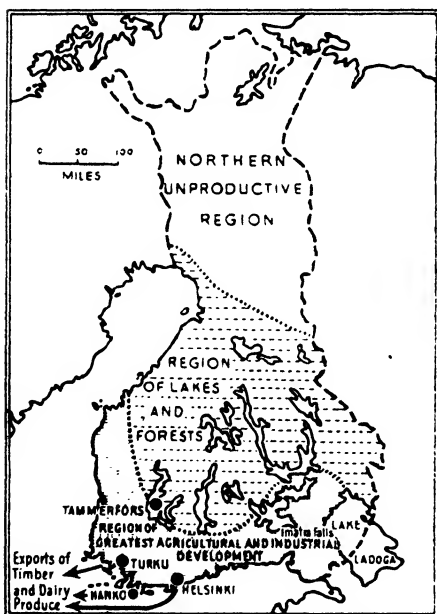


Fig. 46. FINLAND. ECONOMIC DIVISIONS.

and along the lake shores (Fig. 46). Wheat will not ripen, and the chief crops, as in the other countries of Northern Europe are rye, barley, oats, potatoes, and hay. Because of the greater length of the summer days, grain will ripen in a shorter period in the north than in the south of the country (e.g. Norway and Sweden). In recent years dairying has increased in importance, and butter is exported chiefly to Britain. Co-operative societies, similar to those of Denmark

have been formed, and the dairying industry will probably continue to grow.

**FORESTRY.**—Finland lies in the cool temperate forest belt. Over 70 per cent. of the country is forested, the chief trees being pine, fir, larch and birch (see Fig. 43). The percentage of forested area is greater than that of any other European country, and Finland ranks second to Canada as an exporter of timber and wood products. The total exports of wood and

wood products account for 85 per cent. of the total value of the export trade of Finland.

The importance of forestry is due to—

- (1) The large extent of forests.
- (2) The absence of other important resources.
- (3) The unsuitability of much of the cleared land for agriculture, so that re-forestation is practised.
- (4) The winter covering of snow which is an advantage for lumbering operations.
- (5) The large number of streams which can be used for the transport of logs.

(6) Numerous waterfalls and rapids (*e.g.* Imatra rapids), which make possible the generation of cheap electric power.

**MANUFACTURES.**—Industrial development is related to the two great resources of wood and water-power. The chief industries include the manufacture of wood pulp, paper, cardboard, cellulose, veneer, plywood, bobbins and matches. Textiles, chiefly cotton goods, are manufactured at Tammerfors. Because of the extensive use of electricity, relatively little coal or oil is imported.

*Helsingfors* (Helsinki) is the capital and chief port. It is situated on the Gulf of Finland, and, though its harbour is frozen for nearly four months, communications are usually maintained by means of ice-breakers.

*Hangö* (Hanko) and *Åbo* (Turku), the former capital, are frozen for a shorter period, and the former is the chief port for the exportation of butter.

There are a number of railways in Southern Finland, often built in the hope that they would lead to agricultural settlement in the interior. This, however, has not generally materialised because of the infertility of the soils derived from the ancient rocks. The only ice-free coast of Finland is in the extreme north facing the Arctic, and as yet this has not been linked to Southern Finland by rail. This is partly because the northern portion of Finland is economically poor, an area of tundra inhabited by nomadic tribes such as the Laps. A port on the Arctic coast would, therefore, be situated too far from a productive hinterland.

## ESTONIA, LATVIA AND LITHUANIA

**General**

The name Baltic States is often applied to Estonia, Latvia and Lithuania. These countries lie on the east side of the Baltic and south of the Gulf of Finland. Like Finland these three states were formerly part of the Russian Empire, and gained their independence after the Russian revolution of 1917. All three states are as yet poorly developed. This is largely due to the old conditions of land tenancy and agriculture. The land was divided into great estates owned by the Balts or German barons. These landlords, absent from their estates for long periods, have in the past insisted on a type of agriculture, mainly cereal growing, which was not economically sound. The subdivision of the large estates, and the creation of a land-owning peasantry has stimulated a new interest in agricultural development.

The Baltic States are lowland areas structurally part of the Russian platform. Estonia, heavily glaciated, and with much of its surface soil thus removed, resembles Finland. Latvia and Lithuania, covered with thick morainic deposits, are similar to the neighbouring plains of Central Russia and North Germany. The chief rivers are the Dvina, which flows westward through Latvia, and the Niemen, which forms part of the southern boundary of Lithuania.

**Occupations**

AGRICULTURE.—Situating further south, the Baltic states are somewhat warmer both in summer and winter than Finland, hence the climate is more favourable to agricultural development. The crops grown are, as in other North European countries, barley, oats, rye and potatoes. In addition to these crops, wheat is grown because of the higher summer temperatures, and the cultivation of flax is increasing so rapidly that this fibre ranks among the major exports of all three countries. The flax crop of Lithuania is only exceeded by that of Russia and Poland. Increasing attention is being given not only to the rearing of dairy cattle, but to pigs for bacon, and poultry for eggs. Co-operative production, based on the Danish model, is improving the quality of the exports, so that dairying and its allied industries would seem to have a

prosperous future. In Estonia butter is the chief export, in Latvia it ranks second, and in Lithuania meat products, including bacon, take first place, with butter second (Fig. 47).

**FORESTRY.**—The Baltic States are situated in the cool temperate forest belt of Europe, but there has been far more extensive deforestation than in such countries as Finland and Sweden. In spite of this there are large forest areas, so that lumbering and the manufacture of wood products, such as wood-pulp, paper and cellulose, are important throughout the region.

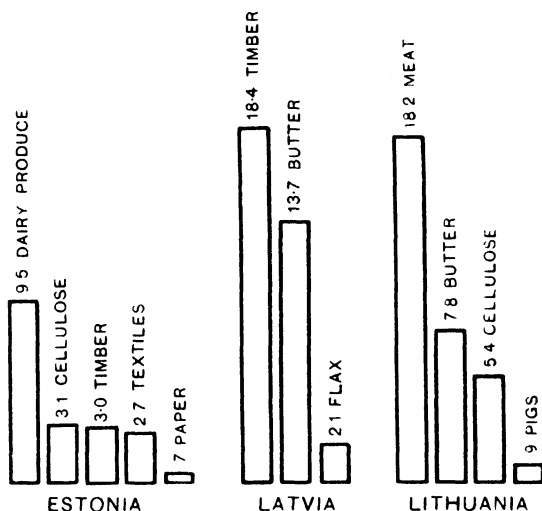


Fig. 47. THE PRINCIPAL EXPORTS OF THE BALTIC STATES (IN MILLIONS OF POUNDS), 1933.

**MANUFACTURES.**—In these states manufacturing industries, though increasing, are poorly developed. This is largely due to lack of fuel and mineral deposits. There are small textile industries at Narva on Lake Peipus in Estonia.

### The Peoples

The structural, climatic and occupational similarities of the region are so obvious that it might be wondered why it has been divided into three political divisions. These divisions are ethnographic, that is, they are based on racial differences.

Estonia is inhabited by Esths, a people akin to the Finns ; Latvia by Letts, whose language and Protestant religion differ from that of the Esths ; Lithuania by Lithuanians, who are Roman Catholic, and whose language also differs from those of Estonia and Latvia.

### **Political Problems**

(1) During the period of Russian political control the ports of the Baltic states, viz. Revel (Tallinn), Riga, Libau (Liepaja) and Memel (Klaipeda) were very important as outlets for Russian trade. This was largely because they were icebound for a shorter period than Leningrad. Libau, for instance, could in most winters be kept open by ice-breakers, and it had direct rail communication with the wheat lands of the Ukraine. To maintain transit trade for Russia, the main railway lines of Latvia, converging on Riga, have been converted to the Russian gauge. But in spite of this, the trade through Leningrad has caused a great decrease in the trade of these ports. Their hinterlands are very much restricted, and they are now merely small regional ports.

(2) Between Eastern Lithuania and Russia is a strip of Polish territory in which is situated the town of Vilna. The Lithuanians claim that this territory should be included in their country, and that Vilna is their true capital city. They always refer to Kovno as "the provisional capital." In spite of the fact that the boundaries were agreed upon by the European powers, the position is so unsatisfactory to Lithuania, that she has no diplomatic or commercial connections with Poland.

(3) The coast of Lithuania is not only short but, because of its sand dune formation, it contains no good harbour. Because of this, Memel was taken from Germany and made the port of Lithuania, and it was granted a large measure of self-government. In 1939, however, it once more became part of Germany.

(4) The Baltic states are economically weak. Their position between the great Russian state and the Western Powers may be regarded as somewhat precarious. It must not be forgotten that the creation of the four independent states of the Eastern Baltic deprived Russia of the greater part of her western coastline, and that her western outlet is now confined to a short length of coast at the head of the Gulf of Finland.

## CHAPTER IX

### THE COUNTRIES BORDERING THE BALTIC SEA: (3) POLAND

Before 1772 Poland was an independent state. It was partitioned in 1772, 1793, and 1795, and the present country consists of territories which from 1795 to 1918 were part of Russia, Austria and Germany. Like the Baltic states, its boundaries were fixed ethnographically (*i.e.* according to race). Nearly 70 per cent. of the peoples are Polish, but in the west are strong German minorities due to the large German population of some of the towns, *e.g.* Posen. In the east are other strong minorities of Lithuanians, Russians and Ruthenians. There are also large numbers of Jews who live mainly in the cities, where, often over 50 per cent. of the population consists of these people.

#### **Position and Relief**

Poland is part of the European plain, rising southwards to the crest of the Carpathians. The whole country approximates very closely to the basin of the River Vistula though some of the eastern territory is drained by the River Pripiet eastwards to the U.S.S.R. In the north, Polish territory extends along the narrow "corridor" of the lower Vistula to the Baltic sea. Danzig, the port at the mouth of the Vistula and essentially a German city, is not a Polish port, but a "free city" under the control of the League of Nations.

#### **Climate**

The climate of Poland is much more continental in type than the rest of the Baltic countries. Extremes of temperature increase from west to east and from north to south. The annual rainfall averages twenty inches, and most falls during the summer months.





Fig. 48. POLAND. ECONOMIC DIVISIONS.

### Natural Divisions and Occupations

Poland may be divided into the following areas:— viz. (Fig. 48):

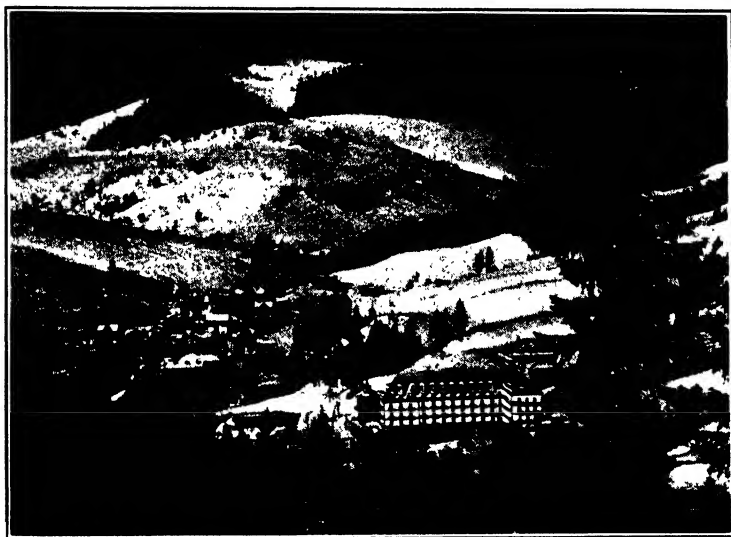
- (1) The northern regions.
- (2) The lowland plains of the central belt.
- (3) The southern plateau.
- (4) The Carpathians.

(1) THE NORTHERN REGIONS.—These comprise two widely separated areas, viz.—

- (a) The north-eastern plateau.
- (b) The Polish corridor.

(a) The north-eastern plateau (the "panhandle" of Poland) is a region of morainic hills rising to 1,000 feet. The soils are often infertile and sandy, and are comparable to the "geest" of Holland. The drainage is complex, and the hollows of the unevenly-distributed glacial deposits are filled with lakes and marshes. The region is poorly developed, agricultural yields are low, and, except for Vilna, there are no important towns. Much of the land is still forested, and forestry is one of the most important occupations. The region suffers from the lack of a direct outlet, and this is made more acute by the political differences of Lithuania and Poland.

(b) The Polish corridor consists chiefly of the broad fertile valley of the lower Vistula, though there are small areas of infertile moraines in the north-west. The lighter soils are



*Polish Press Bureau.*

#### KRYNICA IN THE CARPATHIANS, POLAND.

Poland, for the most part consists of the low-lying lands of the European Plain, and only in the south of the country does the land rise to any considerable height. The above is a winter scene in the Carpathians, showing a resort for winter sports. Since the Carpathians are not as high as the Alps the slopes are clothed with trees, often to the summits.

Compare this picture with the one of the Alps on page 155.

used for the cultivation of rye and potatoes, but elsewhere there are high yields of wheat, sugar beet, and dairy produce. The southern end of the "corridor" is controlled by Bydgoszcz (Bromberg) an engineering centre.

The free city of Danzig is one of the three greatest ports on the Baltic Sea, competing with Copenhagen and Gdynia for first place. Because Poland wished to have an outlet on her own coastline the port of Gdynia was constructed, and a flourishing city now occupies a site which in 1920 was only a barren stretch of sandy coast. In 1934 Gdynia ranked as the first port of the Baltic in relation to the value of overseas trade. The greatest export is coal which is sent largely to Sweden, and the imports are primarily metal ores (e.g. iron ores from Sweden), manufactured goods and fertilisers.

(2) THE CENTRAL LOWLAND.—This is the heart of Poland, and extends from the German frontier on the west to the Russian frontier on the east. In part, this lowland consists of undulating areas of glacial deposits, and in part, of broad, flat and often marshy valleys which were formed by the waters of the melting glaciers of the Ice Age, such as the east-west depression occupied by the Pripet, the Middle Vistula and the River Warta (a tributary of the German Oder).

Agriculturally the region may be considered as transitional between Germany and Russia. In the *west*, in the lands, formerly German, which have had the benefit of German agricultural research and up-to-date methods, agriculture flourishes and yields are high. The chief crops are rye, oats, potatoes, sugar beet, flax and wheat. Rye and potatoes are largely used for food, but the potato crop is so big (the third in Europe) that there is a large surplus which is used for the manufacture of alcohol. Poland ranks next to Russia as a producer of flax, most of which is exported. The sugar production of some 60 refineries leaves a large surplus for export. Most of the barley is exported for brewing.

In the *east* of the plain, agriculture is less well developed, yields are poor, and much of the land is forested or swampy. The Pripet marshes, due to poor drainage, form a kind of natural buffer between Poland and the U.S.S.R.

*Warsaw* (Warszawa), the capital (1,100,000), is situated at the bend of the Vistula and in the centre of the plain. Its great

importance as a route centre is largely due to the ease of east and west communication along the old glacial lowlands. Like all capital cities it has a large number of industries such as sugar refining, flour milling and engineering.

To the south-west of Warsaw is Lodz (600,000), the "Manchester" of Poland. Its textile (mainly cotton) and engineering industries owe much to German influence and organization. Though it is nearly 100 miles from the Polish coalfield, it is the greatest industrial centre of the country.

(3) THE SOUTHERN PLATEAU.—The south of Poland consists of a low plateau (upwards of 600 feet) dissected by the broad valleys of the Vistula and its tributaries. Here the extreme

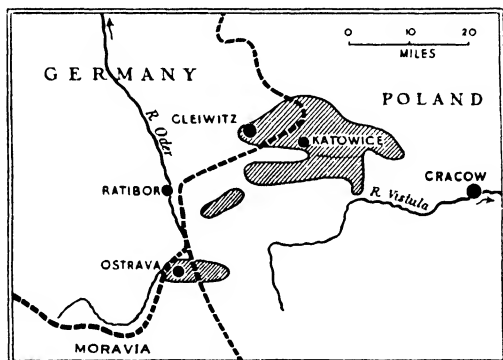


Fig. 49. THE SILESIA COALFIELD.

flatness of Central Poland gives place to rolling upland country separated by fertile vales. This is the most favoured region of Poland both agriculturally and industrially. Large areas are covered with fertile loess, summer temperatures are high because of the southerly position, and rainfall is somewhat heavier because of the proximity of the Carpathians. This is the richest wheat-growing region of Poland, particularly in the low plateau of Podolia, in the east. Dairying is important because of the proximity to the densely-populated industrial region of the south-west.

In the extreme south-west Poland has a large share of the Silesian coalfield, which extends over the frontiers into Germany and into Moravia (Fig. 49). In November 1938 Poland

acquired from the former Czechoslovak state an area of about 450 square miles around Teschen (see Fig. 69). By this change of frontier Poland has a still larger share of the Silesian coalfield, and her coal resources have been considerably increased.

The coal is of good quality, easily worked, and there are immense reserves. Over a quarter of the coal produced is exported, coal accounting for over two-thirds of the total exports of the country. In this area there are also deposits of iron, lead and zinc ores. The industries of the coalfield are therefore primarily concerned with metal working. There are extensive salt deposits to the south of Cracow, the chief city of the industrial area on the upper Vistula, which are used in the chemical industries. Cracow is important both as a fortress and a route centre, for it controls the natural route from Warsaw south-westward through the Moravian Gate, between the Carpathians and the uplands of Bohemia, to Vienna.

(4) **THE CARPATHIANS.**—The north-facing slopes of the Carpathians are for the most part a scantily-populated forested region. There is a small and declining output of oil from the hill slopes in south-eastern Poland.

### **Polish Problems**

The reconstructed Poland is faced by a number of major problems, viz.—

(1) The lack of well-defined natural frontiers and her position on the great east-west highway between the two great powers, Germany and the U.S.S.R.

(2) The presence within her borders of strong minorities of non-Polish peoples.

(3) The difficulties of religious differences due to the variety of peoples, viz. the Poles are Roman Catholics, the German minorities are Protestant, the Russian and Ruthenian minorities belong to the Orthodox Greek Church, and in addition there are large numbers of Jews.

(4) The Polish corridor, the Vilna region and Silesia are still sources of dissatisfaction to the neighbouring states.

(5) The devastation caused by the war was so great that Poland was faced with extreme poverty, and in consequence, reorganisation and development have been difficult, especially in view of the lack of capital. Railways and roads are inadequate; the Vistula, though navigable south of Warsaw is almost neglected as a waterway; in the east extensive marshes await reclamation; the agriculture of the eastern provinces needs complete reorganisation. But, given time, the country which created Gdynia in a sandy waste, may successfully overcome all her difficulties and drawbacks.

## CHAPTER X

### THE COUNTRIES BORDERING THE BALTIC SEA: (4) GERMANY

#### **Development: Agricultural and Industrial**

Although Germany was late in achieving national unity, she has in the last half-century made such rapid strides in development that to-day she ranks as one of the most highly-industrialised countries of the world. Her progress has been in no small measure due to her wealth of mineral deposits, particularly of coal. There are approximately  $6\frac{1}{2}$  million more people engaged in industry in Germany than in France. But, while agriculture has also made great progress, it has not everywhere kept pace with the industrial development. In the western half of the German plain, the adoption of scientific methods and the liberal use of fertilisers has resulted in an intensive type of agriculture with large yields per acre. In Western Germany the average yield per acre of wheat, potatoes, and sugar beet is higher than that of France, which is climatically the more favoured country.

But in the eastern half of the plain, partly as a result of the continued existence of large estates and old-fashioned methods, agriculture is less intensive and yields are lower. Rye, a poor grain for which there is no overseas market, is still extensively produced on lands which, fertilised and cultivated on scientific lines as in Denmark or Belgium, might be made to yield larger and more valuable crops, or dairy produce.

Germany ranks as the first country in Europe for the production of iron and steel (Fig. 50), metal manufactures and chemicals; second as a consumer of raw cotton; and third in respect to the total tonnage of her shipping. On the agricultural side Germany leads the world as a producer of sugar beet and potatoes; ranks second as a producer of rye; but the area devoted to pasture and fodder is lower than might be expected in view of the needs of her large industrial population.

Since this chapter was written the North Slav states have been added to Greater Germany. These states are described on pp. 162-169.

### Relief and Physical Features

Structurally Germany is made up of portions of—

- (a) The European Plain.
- (b) The old mountain system of Central Europe (the Hercynian system).
- (c) The Alpine system.

Germany may therefore be divided into four major physical regions, viz.—

1. In the north extending from Holland to Poland is the North German Plain.
2. Bordering the plain on the south is a region of plateau and block mountains.
3. In the south-west is the Rhine Rift Valley and its associated highlands, and the area of the German scarplands.
4. In the extreme south is the Alpine zone, consisting of the Alpine foreland of Bavaria and of the Austrian lands which became part of Greater Germany in 1938.

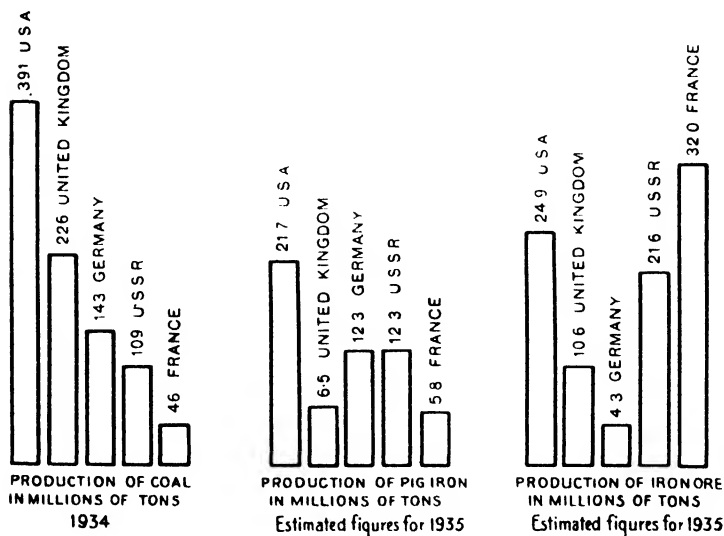


Fig. 50. THE FIGURES SHOW THE OUTPUT OF COAL, PIG IRON, AND IRON ORE IN THE CHIEF PRODUCING COUNTRIES OF EUROPE AND IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.



## (1) THE NORTH GERMAN PLAIN

This extensive plain, which is of an average width of about 150 miles, may be divided into two markedly different regions, both of which owe their characteristic features to the Ice Age.

(A) In the north, in the lands bordering the Baltic Sea, is a region of morainic hills, the Baltic Heights, rising near the Polish corridor to over 1000 feet. It is a region of disordered

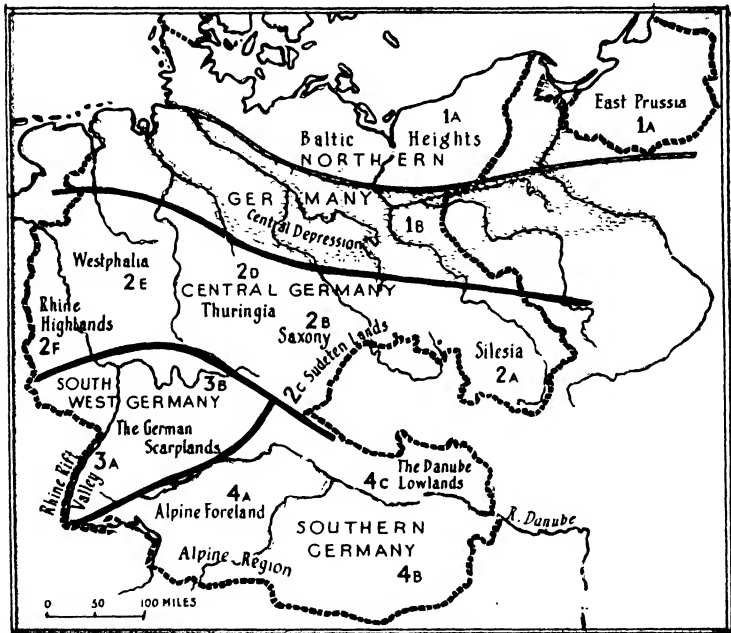


Fig. 51. THE NATURAL DIVISIONS OF GERMANY.

relief, poor drainage, and usually infertile soils. In the hollows of the unevenly-distributed glacial deposits are lakes and marshes. These are particularly evident in East Prussia and in the Pomeranian Hills.

(B) South of the morainic hills is what may be termed the Central Depression. Particularly in the east it is an extremely flat and badly-drained region. In this broad plain are well-marked east to west depressions which once contained the waters of the melting ice sheets to the north (Fig. 51). These

glacial channels are of importance for the way in which they permit east-to-west communication, as well as the easy linking up of rivers by canals (Fig. 52).

The rivers of the North German Plain, the Oder, Elbe and Weser, flow diagonally from south-east to north-west. The

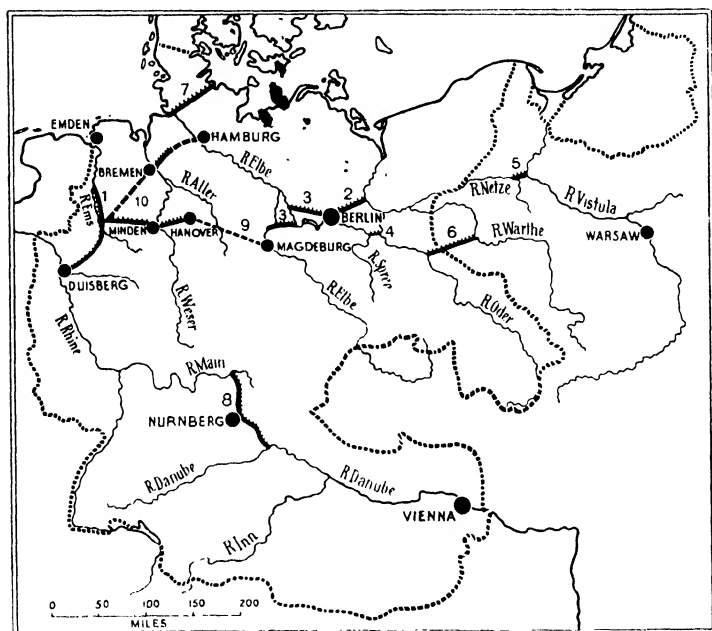


Fig. 52. THE WATERWAYS OF GERMANY.—1. Dortmund Emso Canal. 2. Finow Canal. 3. Havel-Spree canalised rivers. 4. Frederick William Canal. 5. Bromberg Canal (now in Poland). 6. Oder-Warthe Canal. 7. Kiel Canal. 8. Ludwigs Canal. 9. Weser-Elbe Canal which when finished will complete the "Mittelland Kanal" across Germany from west to east. 10. Proposed Hansa Canal to give direct water communication from Ruhr Coalfield to Bremen and Hamburg.

courses of all these rivers are characterised by right-angled bends which with their tributaries give the drainage a "trellised" plan. For instance, the lower valley of the Weser, the valley of its tributary, the Aller, and the upper valley of the Elbe form one long depression. The peculiarities of this drainage system are due to the periodic blocking of the river channels

by the deposition of moraines during the Ice Age and the consequent diversion of the course of the streams.

### **Economic Development of the North German Plain**

(A) The northern morainic region is almost exclusively devoted to agriculture, in spite of the fact that much of the soil is infertile and that the climate, particularly in the east, is one of extremes.

The most productive region is Schleswig-Holstein, which is noted for pig rearing, and which, in its agricultural outlook and development, is very similar to Denmark. The productiveness of the plain decreases eastward. East Prussia, separated from the rest of Germany by the Polish corridor, is the least developed of the agricultural lands of Germany.

The chief crops of the north are potatoes and rye. The former crop is used for feeding pigs, the distillation of alcohol and the manufacture of starch, and the latter is an important item in the diet of the peasant population. At present the number of cattle per square mile is only about 50 per cent. of that of Denmark, and it is possible that this region may have an important future as a dairying region if it is developed along Danish lines.

The chief towns of the north are the seaports. In the west the coast is indented by long narrow openings, known as "förden," which make good harbours. In the east the coast is of the sand dune type, with shallow haffs almost completely cut off from the sea by sand bars or *nehrungs*. Because the Baltic is a partially enclosed sea, and because the harbours are frozen for varying periods during the winter, the ports are of second rate importance. Most of the export trade of their hinterlands finds its way north-westwards to the North Sea outlet at Hamburg. The chief ports are Kiel, a naval station at the eastern end of the Kiel Canal; Lubeck controlling an easy route south-westward to Hamburg, and once the chief port of the Hanseatic League; Stettin, at the mouth of the River Oder, the nearest port to Berlin; and Königsberg, on Frisches Haff at the mouth of the River Pregel, the port of East Prussia.

(B) South of the morainic hills, the central depression is also in part a region of relatively low agricultural value. In the east, in the province of Brandenburg, swamp and forest



*German Rlys.*

THE KURISCHE NEHRUNG, EAST PRUSSIA.

Notice the sweeping curves of the coast; the height of the dunes; the coarse grass which helps to bind the sand and prevent it blowing inland so freely.

occupy much of the surface, and in the west, in Hanover, there are large areas of sandy soil, *e.g.* the Lüneberger Heath is similar to the Dutch geest land. Rye is the chief crop. Much has been done towards the reclamation and fertilisation of the sandy areas on lines similar to those followed in Holland. The most productive region is in East Friesland, where there are fertile polder lands.

The outstanding value of the Central Depression is its importance as a highway. It is the natural line of routes from the south-east to the northern seaports, especially Hamburg. A feature of its communications are canals which, because of

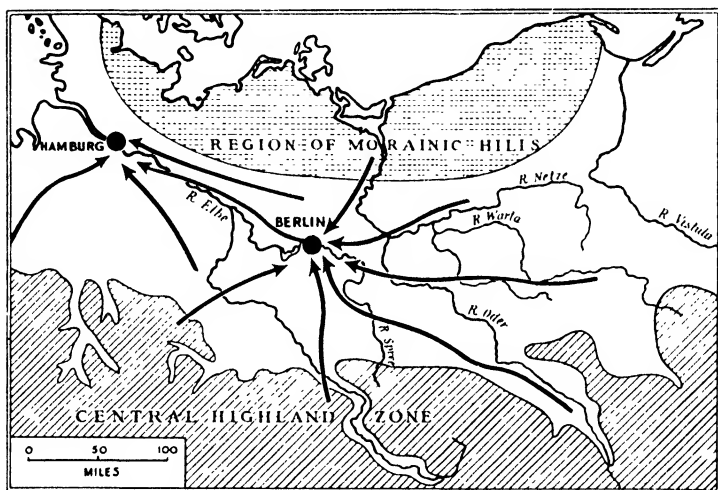


Fig. 53. THE POSITIONS OF BERLIN AND HAMBURG IN RELATION TO THE ROUTES OF CENTRAL GERMANY.

the absence of highland, are easy to construct (Fig. 52). Canals link the Vistula to the Oder, the Oder to the Havel-Spree, and the Havel-Spree to the Elbe. Ultimately a great canal system, the Mittelland Kanal, will give a through water route from the Vistula to the Weser and Rhine. It is proposed, also, to construct a canal, the Hansa Canal, from the Dortmund-Ems Canal to Hamburg. This will give an all-water route between the Westphalian coalfield and Hamburg, thus increasing the importance of Hamburg at the expense of Rotterdam.

*Berlin* (Fig. 53) owes its growth primarily to historical events. The original site of the town was an island in the River Spree, where the waterways and surrounding swamps made it suitable for defence. It was the capital city of the princes of Brandenburg, later the Kings of Prussia. When Prussia took the lead in Germany Berlin was made the capital of the country in spite of the fact that it is not centrally situated, nor in the region of greatest natural wealth. Roads, railways and canals have been built to link Berlin with all parts of the country, so that to-day it is the great route-centre of the country. Like all other capital cities, it has a large number of industries, including printing, the manufacture of clothing and furniture, and electrical trades.

*Hamburg* (Fig. 53), at the lowest bridging point of the Elbe, is the greatest port. Like Rotterdam and Amsterdam it is a great entrepôt, for it serves not only Germany, but many regions beyond. For instance, over 50 per cent. of the overseas trade of the former Czechoslovak lands used to pass through Hamburg. It has direct communication (a) south-east, via the Elbe valley to Eastern Germany and the Danube countries, (b) north-east via a natural depression to Lubeck, (c) water communications via the Kiel Canal to the Baltic Sea, (d) south-westward across the plains to the Westphalian industrial area. Ultimately the Ems-Weser and Hansa Canals will give Hamburg direct water communication with the industrial centre of the Ruhr valley, so that much of the German trade now passing through Rotterdam and Antwerp will be diverted to Hamburg. Cuxhaven, some sixty miles downstream, is the outport of Hamburg.

*Bremen*, the port of the River Weser, is more concerned with the trade of Western Germany, for it has not the same advantages of waterways linking it with eastern Germany.

## (2) CENTRAL GERMANY

Where the northern plains of Germany meet the Central Highlands is the richest and most highly-developed region of the country. This region of dense settlement extends in a line from the Rhine to Silesia. Not only are there large coalfields (see Fig. 21) and extensive mineral deposits, which give rise to manufacturing industries, but agriculturally this

region of the highland border includes some of the most productive regions in the country, where scientific agriculture has resulted in high yields of wheat, oats, barley, sugar beet and dairy produce. One of the most favoured agricultural regions is the area between the Weser and the Elbe in the neighbourhood of Magdeburg. Here are rich loamy soils devoted especially to the cultivation of sugar beet and wheat in rotation with other crops. Two-thirds of the German crop of sugar beet is produced in this region. The principal towns (*e.g.* Magdeburg, on a right-angle bend of the Elbe, Brunswick and Hanover) are engaged in such industries as flour-milling, sugar-refining, brewing and distilling.

### Divisions of Central Germany

The chief subdivisions of Central Germany are—

- (A) Silesia.
- (B) Saxony.
- (C) The Sudeten-lands.
- (D) The mineralised district on the borders of the Harz Mountains.
- (E) Westphalia.
- (F) The Rhine Highlands and the Rhine Gorge.

(A) SILESIA.—Silesia is the south-eastern “tongue” of Germany, and is drained by the upper Oder. On the west it is bounded by the Sudetes, which separate Silesia from the Bohemian section of the North Slav States. The lowlands of the Oder are a fertile agricultural region producing large quantities of wheat, oats, barley and sugar beet. The chief city of this plain is Breslau (600,000) a great route centre, and important for its fairs. The Sudetes are still extensively forested, but to the south west of Breslau is a small coalfield (Lower Silesian), which supplies fuel for a number of small towns engaged in the manufacture of woollen and linen goods.

In the extreme south-east of Silesia Germany still possesses a portion of the Upper Silesian coalfield, which, after the Great War, was divided between Poland, Czechoslovakia and Germany (see Fig. 49). This coalfield produces about 20 per cent. of the coal output of the country. The principal industries are iron smelting and steel-working, but the region is less prosperous

since it lost the associated ore deposits which are now in Polish territory. The chief towns are Ratibor and Gleiwitz.

(B) SAXONY.—The industrial district of Saxony lies on the northern slopes of the Erz Gebirge (Ore Mountains). Because of the mineral ores and sheep pastures of the mountains, this region has been noted for many centuries for its working of metals and weaving of wool. Thus there developed a traditional skill in manufacturing, which is the real basis of the modern industrial development of the region. The coal output is small, less than 4 per cent. of the output for the whole country, but there are large supplies of lignite (brown coal), which are burned in power houses for the generation

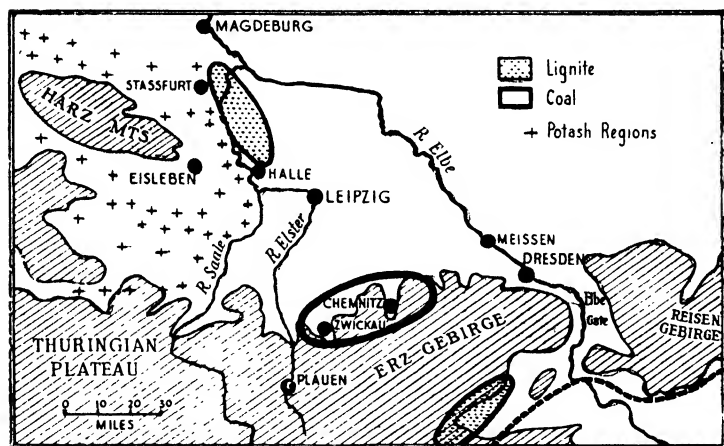


Fig. 54. THE SAXONY COALFIELD AND THE STASSFURT POTASH DISTRICT.

of electricity. To-day the region produces over 50 per cent. of the textile manufactures of Germany, and there are a large variety of other industries, viz. pottery (Meissen), glass, chemicals, leather, clothing, etc. Because it is remote from the sea and the supplies of raw materials there is a tendency to specialise in the manufacture of articles requiring much skill and little raw material, viz. precise scientific and optical instruments, musical instruments (Leipzig), etc. (cf. Switzerland, page 150).

The chief industrial towns of the hill slopes are Chemnitz, Plauen and Zwickau (Fig. 54).



*Dresden*, on the Elbe, controlling the Elbe Gate, a narrow valley leading to Bohemia, is the chief route centre. It is also a tourist centre for the mountain region to the south and is the regional capital of Saxony.

*Leipzig*, like Dresden, has contact both with hill and plain country, and is a great route centre and market town. Its annual fair is visited by business men from all parts of the world. Its chief industries are printing and the manufacture of electrical equipment.

(C) THE SUDETEN LANDS.—The Sudeten lands were acquired by Germany in October 1938. They consist of the border lands of the "Bohemian diamond," and lie along the north and east slopes of the Bohemian Forest, the south and east slopes of the Erz Gebirge, and the south and west slopes of the Sudetes. Formerly part of Czechoslovakia, this fringing territory is peopled largely by Germans, and it was for this reason that the frontiers were re-drawn in 1938, so as to include this territory in Germany. As a result of this re-adjustment Germany has increased her population by over  $3\frac{1}{2}$  millions (of whom over 1 million are not German people), and extended her territory by 11,000 square miles.

The Sudeten lands are rich in economic resources. Along the southern borders of the Erz Gebirge are rich deposits of lignite or brown coal, *e.g.* at Komotau, the total yield being about 18 million tons in 1938. There are also deposits of other minerals including zinc, uranium, iron, and graphite, as well as the china clay deposits which are the basis of the important porcelain industry in the vicinity of Karlsbad. The district around Reichenberg is important for its cotton manufactures, while woollen, silk, and linen goods are made in other parts of the Sudeten lands. Probably the most important industry is glass making. There are over 1000 glass factories, most of which are located in the area near Gablonz (Jablonec), and these manufacture every conceivable type of glass from optical lenses to imitation jewels. Other industries include chemicals in Silesia, paper making in the forested areas, and the manufacture of iron and steel.

The hill slopes of the Sudeten lands are heavily forested, and these forests are a valuable addition to the timber resources of Germany.

(D) THURINGIA.—This region lies to the north-west of Saxony, and comprises the district immediately north of the Harz Mountains and part of the Thuringian plateau (Fig. 54). There are large quantities of lignite found in the neighbourhood of Halle, but the real basis of the industrial development of this district lies in the vast deposits of potash in the



THE THURINGIAN FOREST, CENTRAL GERMANY.

*German Klys.*

This scene is typical of the old highlands of central and southern Germany. Notice the smooth slopes and skyline as compared with the Alps; the forest cover of the steeper hillsides; the cultivated fields on the more gentle slopes and the height to which cultivation is carried; the clearing of the valley bottom. Similar scenery is to be found in the Harz, the Black Forest, the Bohemian Forest, the Swabian and Franconian Jura, etc.

neighbourhood of Stassfurt. These constitute the largest reserves of potash in the world (Fig. 55). Their importance is threefold—

(a) As fertilisers, for which purpose they are almost indispensable to modern intensive agriculture.

(b) As raw material for certain manufacturing industries, viz. soap, glass, explosives and dyes.

(c) As an important source of return cargo for ships which bring in raw materials (cf. coal and salt in England).

(E) WESTPHALIA.—On the northern edge of the Rhine

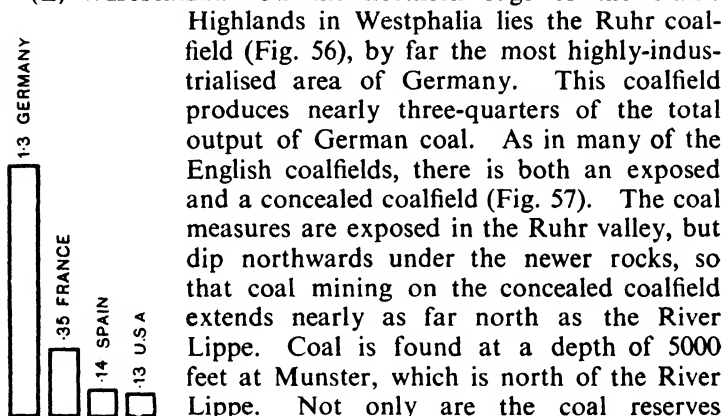


Fig. 55. WORLD PRODUCTION OF POTASH IN MILLIONS OF TONS, 1934.

Highlands in Westphalia lies the Ruhr coalfield (Fig. 56), by far the most highly-industrialised area of Germany. This coalfield produces nearly three-quarters of the total output of German coal. As in many of the English coalfields, there is both an exposed and a concealed coalfield (Fig. 57). The coal measures are exposed in the Ruhr valley, but dip northwards under the newer rocks, so that coal mining on the concealed coalfield extends nearly as far north as the River Lippe. Coal is found at a depth of 5000 feet at Munster, which is north of the River Lippe. Not only are the coal reserves extensive and easy to work, but there is a variety of types of coal, including good coking coal. The annual output is twice as great as that of the York, Derby and Nottingham coalfield, and vast quantities are exported.

The industries of this great region fall into four groups:—

(a) The smelting of iron ore and the manufacture of iron and steel goods. The towns of the Ruhr valley itself (e.g. Essen, Dortmund) are primarily concerned with this industry. Most of the iron ore used is obtained from Lorraine (see page 56). In 1934 the total production of pig-iron and steel in this one industrial area of Germany alone exceeded the total for the whole of Great Britain.

(b) Immediately to the south of the Ruhr, in the valley of the River Wupper, is a great textile manufacturing area.

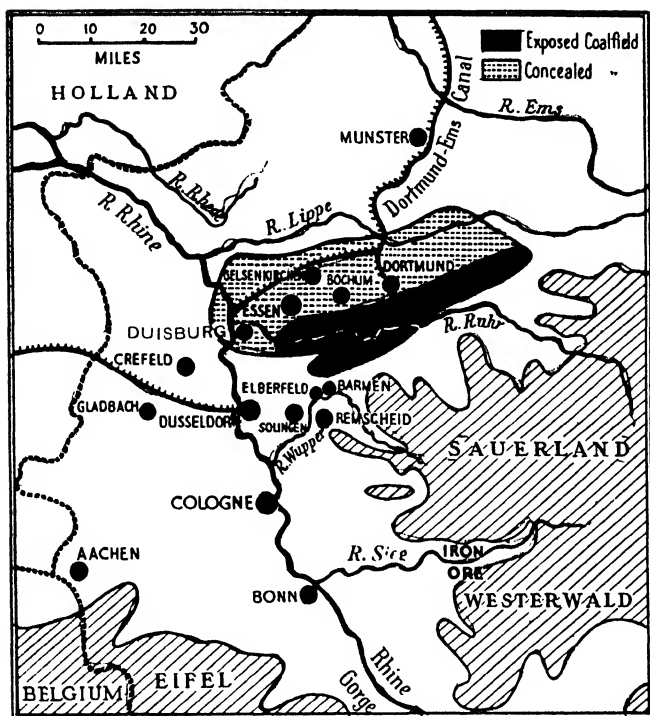


Fig. 56. THE WESTPHALIAN INDUSTRIAL AREA.

The industry dates back to the old woollen industries based on local supplies of wool and water-power. To-day there are manufactures of wool, cotton and rayon. The chief centres are the twin cities of Barmen and Elberfeld now one municipality called Wuppertal.

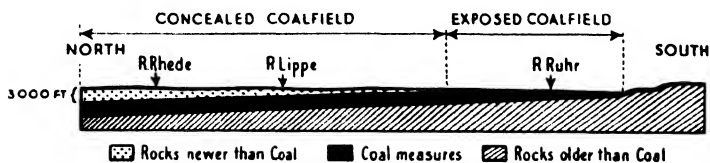


Fig. 57. DIAGRAM TO SHOW THE EXPOSED AND HIDDEN COALFIELD OF WESTPHALIA.

(c) Still further south, at Solingen and Remscheid, is another metal-working region. It is noted for the manufacture of cutlery and is an old-established industry, which owes its origin to the iron ores of the Westerwald Mountains.

(d) To the west of the Rhine are a group of towns engaged in textile manufactures. They include Aachen (woollens), Krefeld, the centre of the German silk manufacturing industry, and München-Gladbach (cotton), sometimes called the "Manchester" of Germany.

As would be expected, there are a number of important towns on the Rhine which act as river ports for this vast industrial area.

*Dusseldorf* (400,000) is the river port for the textile centres of Barmen-Elberfeld to the east, and the cotton manufactures of München-Gladbach to the west. It is also the commercial centre for the whole of the Westphalian industrial zone.

*Duisburg*, at the confluence of the Ruhr and Rhine, is the river port for the Ruhr valley. The volume of its trade, as gauged by the amount of merchandise it handles, is greater than that of Rotterdam or Antwerp.

*Cologne*, situated where the Rhine leaves the hills for the plains is a town of Roman origin (Lat. *Colonia*), and owes its importance to its control of routes, (1) along the Rhine valley, and (2) east and west along the northern edge of the Highlands. It is therefore a natural focus of routes, and is the fourth city in Germany. Its industries are mainly of the "luxury" type, *e.g.* perfumes.

(F) THE RHINE HIGHLANDS AND THE RHINE GORGE.—The remaining section of Central Germany consists of the Highlands immediately to the south of the industrial zone. They include the Rhine Highlands, and also a complicated highland mass which extends eastwards towards Saxony. The Rhine Highlands are a dissected plateau, divided by the valleys of the rivers Rhine, Moselle and Lahn into four blocks, *viz.* the Eifel, Westerwald, Hunsrück and Taunus. These uplands, largely composed of forested and moorland areas, are scantily populated. There is little mineral wealth except the iron ores of Westerwald, and the building stones and road metal from the volcanic areas of the Eifel. The river valleys contrast sharply with the plateau. The Rhine and



*German Rly.*

**THE UNITED STEEL WORKS, DORTMUND.**

This picture shows the industrial development of the Ruhr Valley coalfield. Notice the number of factories and how they are served by railways and sidings.

the Moselle have cut deep valleys, and the mountain slopes drop so steeply to the river that the construction of roads and railways is difficult. The Rhine Gorge, extending from Bingen to Bonn, is one of the most picturesque portions of the Rhine valley. Sheer cliffs are crowned by the famous Rhineland castles, and the hills slopes, where not forested, are terraced with vineyards and orchards of cherry trees. The Rhine itself, dredged and deepened, is a busy thoroughfare

for water traffic. Wherever there is a sufficient width of lowland between the river and the plateau edge, towns have developed. The chief town of the Rhine Gorge is Coblenz (Lat. Confluens) situated at the confluence of the Moselle and the Rhine (Fig. 58). On the opposite bank the Rhine is joined by the River Lahn, so that Coblenz is a great natural "cross roads" in a region of difficult communication.

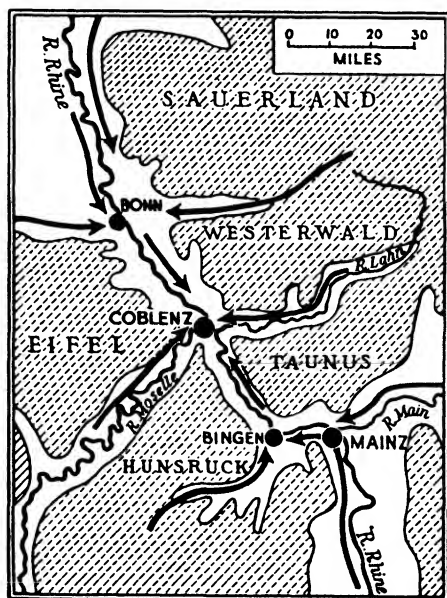


Fig. 58. THE TOWNS OF THE RHINE GORGE.

East of the Rhine Highlands the ancient mountains of the Hercynian system extend towards Saxony, forming a barrier between northern and southern Germany. In general these Highlands, like those of the Rhineland, are regions of forest and moorland separated by fertile cultivated valleys. Of outstanding importance are two well-marked north to south routes which skirt the volcanic mass of the Vogelsberg on the east and west. Throughout history these two routes have linked the plains of Hanover with the middle Rhine. It is

to its position at the south end of these routes, linking the fertile Rhine valley with North Germany, that Frankfurt-on-Main owes both its past and present importance.

### (3) SOUTH-WEST GERMANY

South-West Germany consists of two different areas—

(A) The Rift Valley of the middle Rhine.

(B) The German Scarplands.

(A) **THE RHINE RIFT VALLEY.**—The rift valley of the Rhine extends from Basel to Bingen. In this section of its course the river flows through a deep trough averaging some twenty miles in width (Fig. 59). This is the Rhine rift valley, set between the Vosges and Hardt mountains on the west and the

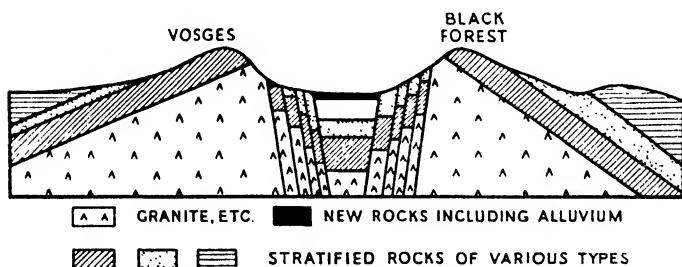


Fig. 59. SECTION OF THE RHINE RIFT VALLEY.

Black Forest and the highlands of Odenwald on the east. Except for the often swampy and forested belt along the river, the soils of the valley are deep and fertile.

The Rhine rift valley is important both for its agriculture and its relation to the main highways of Europe.

Climatically, this region has somewhat less rainfall and higher summer temperatures than the surrounding regions. This is the result of its southerly position, low altitude, and the sheltering effect of the surrounding highlands. The type of agriculture and principal crops, therefore, contrast sharply with those of the other agricultural regions of Germany. Instead of the rye, oats and potatoes of Northern Germany here are rich vineyards and orchards, and productive fields of hops, tobacco, sugar beet and wheat. Without exception it is the richest agricultural region of Germany.



As a natural highway the Rhine rift valley is unparalleled in Europe, and most of the large cities are primarily important as route centres.

The chief natural routes are:—

(a) Southwards via Basel to Switzerland and Italy.

(b) Southwards via the Burgundy Gate between the Vosges and Jura Mountains to the Rhone Valley and Marseilles.

(c) Westwards to Paris via the Saverne Gate, a low pass at the northern end of the Vosges.

(d) Northwards via the Rhine valley to Westphalia and the North Sea.

(e) Northwards via Frankfurt to North Germany and Berlin.

(f) Eastwards round the northern end of the Black Forest via Stuttgart to Vienna and the Danubian lands.

The French city of Strasbourg and the German town of Kehl, on the opposite bank, lie at the crossing of the great north-to-south highway of the Rhone-Rhine valleys, and the great east-to-west route of the Orient Express between Paris and Constantinople.

The Highlands surrounding the Rhine rift valley are still extensively forested. The valleys are cultivated, but the peasants have developed a number of domestic industries, *e.g.* wood carving, watch making and weaving, in addition to their agricultural activities.

Except for the large river ports such as Mannheim (at the Neckar confluence) and Mainz (at the Main confluence) most of the larger towns of the rift valley are situated away from the river flats and lie along the foot of the hills where they act as market centres for both the hill and valley country, *e.g.* Karlsruhe, Heidelberg and Darmstadt.

West of the Rhine rift valley in the basin of the River Saar (a tributary of the Moselle) is an important coalfield. This coalfield, in the possession of France from 1920 to 1935, is once more German territory as a result of the 1935 plebiscite. It has large coal reserves and is near to the iron deposits of Lorraine, hence it is an important industrial region with manufactures of iron and steel, glass and paper. The chief towns are Saarbrücken and Saarlouis.

(B) THE GERMAN SCARPLANDS.—East of the Rhine rift valley is a triangular area of varied relief bounded on the south by the Alps and the Upper Rhine, on the east by the Bohemian and Thuringian Forests, and on the west by the Black Forest. The whole region is bisected by a scarped ridge known as the Swabian and Franconian Jura; which runs from S.W. to N.E. This ridge, steepest on the N.W. side is composed of Jurassic rock (cf. the Cotswolds of England) and varies from 2,000 feet in height in the N.E. to nearly 3,000 feet in the S.W.

The basins of the Neckar and Main consist of forested ridges alternating with fertile vales. The region is rich agriculturally, grapes, hops, fruits and cereals all being cultivated. There are a number of scattered industries such as leather manufactures, wood carving and weaving.

*Nürnberg*, on the upper Main, controlling an easy route across the Franconian Jura to the Danube, is the greatest city of the region. It is famous for its manufacture of toys, watches, and scientific instruments.

*Stuttgart* on the Upper Neckar, controls a route across the Swabian Jura to Ulm on the Upper Danube. Like *Nürnberg* its manufactures are mainly those which require much skill and little raw material, viz. pianos, clocks, watches and scientific instruments.

### The Rhine Basin

It is customary to think of the Rhine as a German river, but, actually, its basin is shared by four countries, viz. Switzerland, France, Germany and Holland. It is therefore impossible to give a complete description of the Rhine basin without much repetition. On the accompanying diagram of the Rhine (Fig. 60) the chief natural divisions are indicated by numbers. In the following lines references are given by which it should be possible to build up a complete description of the Rhine basin.

The Rhine basin may be divided into a number of natural units.

- (1) From the source to Basel (see Switzerland, page 152).
- (2) From Basel to Bingen—the rift valley section (see page 137).
- (3) From Bingen to Bonn—the gorge section (see page 134).

- (4) From Bonn to the Dutch frontier including the Westphalian coalfield (see page 132).  
 (5) The Deltaic area (see Holland, page 73 *et seq.*).  
 (6) The basins of the Neckar and Rhine (see page 139).

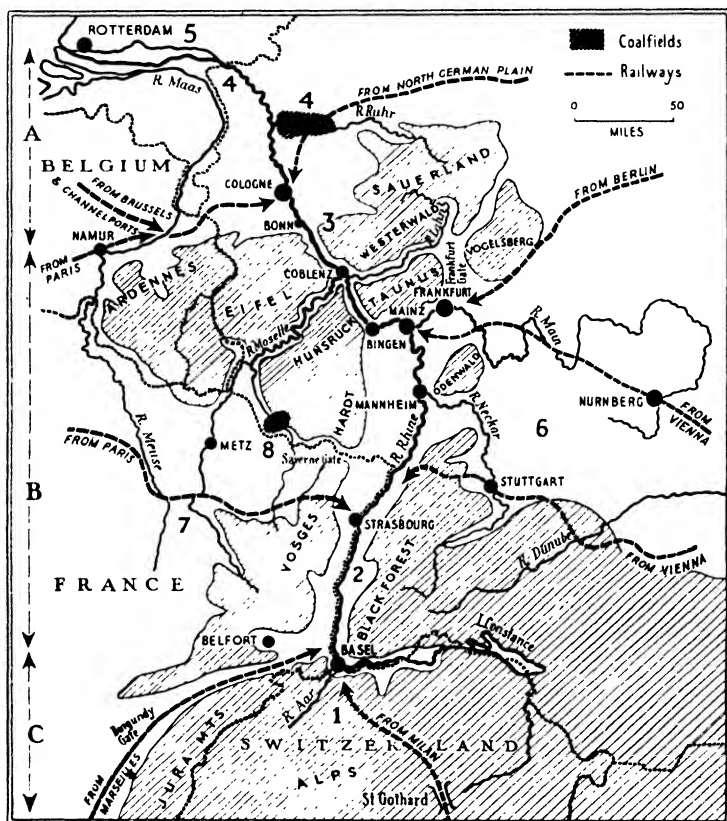


Fig. 60. THE RHINE BASIN.

- A. THE LOWLAND REGION: 4. The German section of the Rhine lowlands.  
 5. The Deltaic area, *i.e.* the Dutch section of the Rhine Basin.  
 B. THE REGION OF BLOCKS AND BASINS: 2. The Rhine Rift Valley and surrounding hills. 3. The Rhine Gorge and surrounding plateaux.  
 6. The Scarpland Regions of the Neckar and Main Valleys.  
 7. The Upper Meuse and Moselle Valleys. 8. The Saar Basin.  
 C. THE ALPINE REGION: 1. The Swiss Alps, and the Swiss plateau and the Jura Mountains.

- (7) The upper Moselle valley and the Vosges (see page 56).  
 (8) The Saar basin coalfield (see page 138).

#### (4) THE ALPINE LANDS OF GERMANY

The Alpine lands of Germany may be sub-divided as follows:—

- (A) The Alpine Foreland.  
 (B) The Alpine Ranges.  
 (C) The Danube Lowlands.

(A) THE ALPINE FORELAND.—This region known as Bavaria, includes the basin of the Upper Danube in the extreme west,

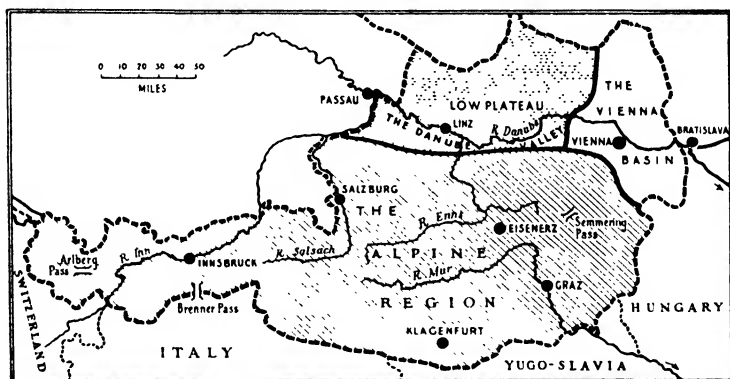


Fig. 61. THE AUSTRIAN LANDS ACQUIRED BY GERMANY IN 1938.\*

in the vicinity of Lake Constance, this southern district of Germany (mainly Bavaria) is a region of poor morainic soils often very pebbly in composition. The climate is severe because of its continental position and so it is not rich agriculturally, and pastoral farming predominates. Rye, oats, barley and hops are grown in the more favoured regions.

The swift flowing tributaries of the Danube, viz. the Isar and Inn, are used for the generation of hydro-electricity, and this is the chief source of power for the industries of *Munich*. This city, situated on the River Isar, is the regional capital of Bavaria and the fifth city in Germany. It is noted for its

\* Slovakia, now an autonomous state within Greater Germany, may also be included in the German lands with "Alpine" characteristics.

brewing industry and for a variety of other manufactures such as pottery and glass. It is the great route centre of southern Germany and lies on the Orient Express route which in this part of Europe links the Middle Rhine lands with Vienna.

*Friedrichshafen*, on the north shore of Lake Constance, is the centre of the Zeppelin industry and the European terminus of the two great air routes between Germany and North and South America. *Ratisbon* (Regensburg) is situated at the northerly bend of the Danube and controls the route northwards across the Franconian Jura to Nürnberg.

(B) THE ALPINE RANGES.—The Austrian Alps extend from the Rhine to Vienna, a distance of 320 miles, and cover over 80 per cent. of the original Austria. In general they are lower, more open and more accessible than the Swiss Alps. East to west communication is facilitated by a depression occupied by the upper course of the Rivers Inn, Salzach and Enns. Communication from north to south is by passes, e.g. the Brenner and Semmering passes.

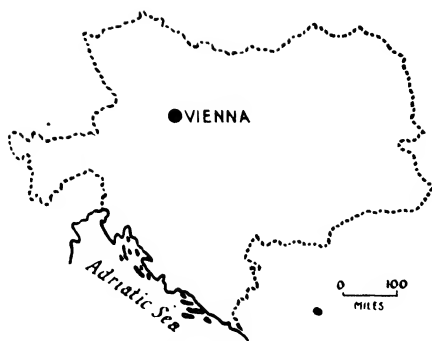
The resources of this region though limited are not fully developed. In the higher mountains of the west less than 5 per cent. of the land is suitable for agriculture, but it is here, in the beautiful Tirolese country that strenuous efforts are being made to establish a prosperous tourist industry and centres for "winter sports."

In the richer valleys to the west cereals and fruits are grown. Efforts are being made to increase the dairying industry on Swiss lines, and for this purpose new breeds of cattle have been imported.

The mountain country is rich in forests. These are being carefully conserved to ensure future supplies of timber and to prevent soil erosion. The forests provide the raw material for wood pulp, paper and timber industries. Wood products form an important item of the export trade of the Alpine region. The swift mountain streams are used to generate electricity. In pre-war days Austria could easily obtain coal from the Bohemian coalfields and so made little progress in the development of her water power resources. Though the output of electrical energy is still small relative to the resources, considerable progress has been made. Over 500 miles of railway



*Austrian State Travel Bureau.*  
INNSBRUCK.— Innsbruck lies in the broad Valley of the River Inn in the Eastern Alps.



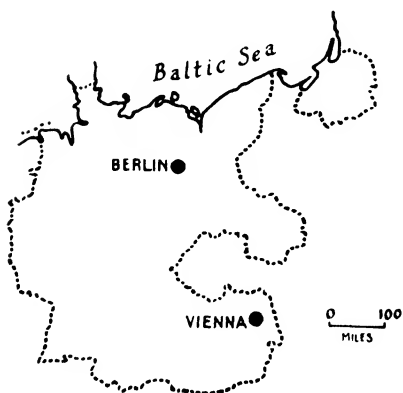
(1) VIENNA 1914

Central position in a large Empire.



(2) VIENNA 1918 - 1938

The capital of a small state



(3) VIENNA 1938

No longer a capital and at the extremity of a large country.

have been electrified, and in the north-west surplus energy is transported by cable to Bavaria.

In the extreme east of the Alpine zone in the province of Styria are deposits of good grade iron ore, and also of iron ore and lignite in the Eastern Alps near Eisenerz and Klagenfurt, and small deposits near Salzburg. There are important iron industries at Graz but progress is hindered by the lack of coal reserves and the high cost of imported coal which was formerly obtained from Czechoslovakia. There are small textile industries, viz. silk manufacture in the Tirol and cotton in Vorarlberg.

Apart from Graz (150,000) the only other large town of the Alpine zone is Innsbruck (60,000), which, situated on the River Inn, controls the route southward via the Brenner pass to Italy.

Fig. 62.

(C) THE DANUBE LOWLANDS.—The Austrian section of the Danube Valley extends from Passau to Pressburg (Bratislava). It is a region of fertile basins alternating with deep gorges whose forested slopes are crowned with castles, reminiscent of the Rhine Gorge. Agriculture is important in this region, wheat and fruit being cultivated, and pastoral farming is increasing.

The region around Vienna is the only large lowland of southern Germany. It is a rich agricultural area with a large acreage devoted to vineyards, cereals and sugar beet. There

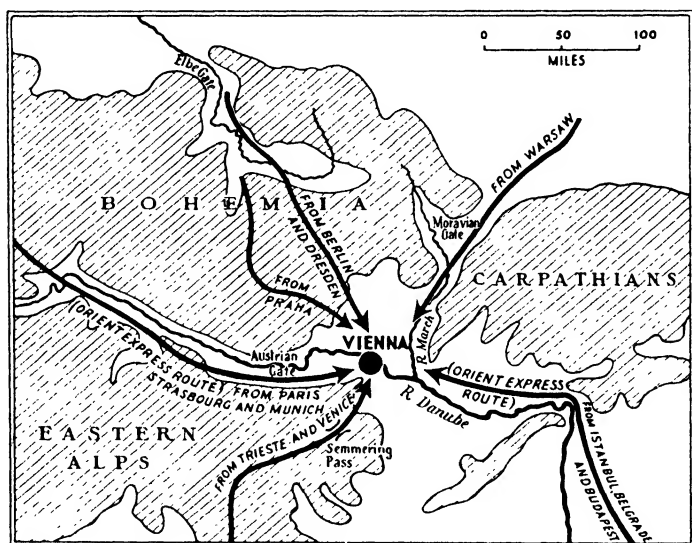


Fig. 63. THE POSITION OF VIENNA.

are a number of industries such as engineering, and the manufacture of textiles and clothing. These are industries usually associated with a capital city, as Vienna was until recently.

Although the Vienna lowland occupies only about one-tenth of the total area of the former Austrian lands it contains over 60 per cent. of the population. This is largely because Vienna alone, with a population of 1,800,000 accounts for 28 per cent. of the population of the Austrian region.



The size of this city is out of all proportion to the extent and resources of the region, but Vienna was once the capital of the Austro-Hungarian Empire. As the leading city of this former empire (of immense resources and 30 million people) Vienna developed on lines similar to London, Paris, and Berlin, and became one of the greatest cultural centres of Europe. Left, in 1914, as the capital of a small country which was merely the poorest remnant of the former Empire, Vienna went through a period of great economic difficulty. Its natural advantages as a route centre remain, and in this respect it is possibly unrivalled in Europe (Fig. 62). Vienna controls:—

(a) The route via the Moravian gate, north-eastward to Poland and the Baltic (Fig. 63).

(b) The route via Bohemia and the Elbe Gate, northward to Berlin and the North Sea.

(c) The route eastward via the upper Danube to South Germany, the Rhine and Paris.

(d) The route South-westward down the Danube Valley to Budapest, Belgrade and the Black and Aegean Seas.

Its position as a route centre of Central Europe must remain unchallenged, but the effect of its present position at one extremity of Germany, and its relation to the other great cities of the Reich, particularly Berlin, has yet to be seen.

## THE TRADE OF GERMANY

Although Germany was somewhat late in her industrial development she quickly rose to be one of the great commercial nations of the world, and in 1914 her foreign trade ranked next to that of the U.S.A. and Britain. Although at present the total foreign trade of Germany is barely half that of 1914, the trade figures for the last few years show that rapid strides are being made towards the recovery of her former position.

As would be expected the chief imports of Germany are food for her large population, raw materials for her industries, and tropical products. The exports are mainly manufactured articles. The following is a list of the principal imports and exports in order of value, for 1934.

IMPORTS		EXPORTS	
Wool	Iron ore	Iron and steel	Glass
Raw cotton	Butter	Chemicals	Cotton goods
Mineral oil	Coal	Coal	Silk and rayon
Coffee	Wheat	Dyes, varni-	goods
Fruit	Timber	shes, etc.	Woollen goods
Copper ore		Paper	Leather
		Copper ware	

The exports of iron and steel were double the value of the next export on the list, viz. chemicals.

The bulk of the imports came from the U.S.A., Netherlands, Britain and Czechoslovakia. Most of the exports are sent to the Netherlands, Britain, and France. The exports to France rank high because they include war reparations. The trade with the Netherlands is largely due to the importance of Rotterdam as a port for the Rhinelands.

#### THE CHANGES OF 1938

	AREA IN SQ. ML.	POPULATION
Germany .. ..	181,699	66,030,491
Austria .. ..	32,369	6,760,233
Sudeten lands ..	11,000 ( <i>circ.</i> )	3,576,719
Total for Greater Germany	225,068	76,367,443

From the above figures it may be seen that in 1938 Germany increased her territory by nearly 25 per cent., and that the area (43,000 sq. miles) of the lands acquired is almost as large as the area of England (50,000 sq. miles). The total increase in population was over 10 millions—approximately 15 per cent. The Sudeten lands now contain a large minority of Czechs, estimated at over 700,000, and of Slovaks, estimated at over 300,000.

In March, 1938, Austria, a country of German-speaking peoples, became part of Germany. The following points should be noted:—

(1) Germany increased her population by over six million, *i.e.* by about 10 per cent.

(2) The actual territory added was 32,000 sq. miles (slightly more than the area of Scotland), *i.e.* an increase of about 16 per cent.

(3) The former Austrian lands, now part of Germany, are no longer devoid of coastline and a direct outlet to the sea.

(4) By the acquisition of Austria, the southern boundary of Germany is within easy reach of (about 60 miles, or the distance from London to Dover), the Adriatic Sea and hence of the Mediterranean and its important trade-routes.

(5) Germany acquired valuable resources of water-power and of timber. The latter is especially important in view of the extensive use that Germany makes of wood-pulp as the basis of a wide range of manufacturing industries.

(6) The Bohemian section of Czechoslovakia, containing more than three millions of German people, is surrounded on three sides by Germany. In other words, the most highly developed and most densely populated portion of Czechoslovakia extends as a promontory into the German lands.

(7) Vienna is now the second city of Germany according to population. The first five cities in order of size being:—Berlin, Vienna, Hamburg, Cologne and Munich.

### MARCH 1939

Since the above points were written other changes have taken place. The state of Czechoslovakia no longer exists on the political map of Europe. Of its component parts (Fig. 70), three, Bohemia, Moravia, and Slovakia, have become autonomous states within the boundary of "Greater Germany." Ruthenia (or Carpatho-Ukraine) has been annexed by Hungary, so that Poland and Hungary have a common frontier. By these changes Germany has command of greatly increased resources both agricultural and industrial, and also of important highways of communication with south-eastern Europe. In view of these changes pages 162 to 169 should be regarded as an integral part of the foregoing chapter.

## CHAPTER XI

### SWITZERLAND

#### General Characteristics

Switzerland, lying athwart the Alpine system is one of the most mountainous countries in Europe. To this fact may be traced some of the essential characteristics of the country.

(1) SWITZERLAND'S INDEPENDENCE.—The keynote of Switzerland is its independence, so often a characteristic of mountain peoples. It is the oldest republic of the modern world and owes its origin to the federation of the four forest cantons (Uri, Schwyz, Lucerne and Unterwalden) in a fight for liberty and for the purpose of the defence of the Alpine passes, especially the St. Gothard.

(2) POSITION AS THE CENTRE OF EUROPE.—In many respects Switzerland is a transitional country. This is evident in a study of the river system. In the south of the country the Rivers Toce and Ticino drain to the River Po and Italy; in the south-west the Rhone drains to France and the Mediterranean at Marseilles; in the north the waters of the Aar and Rhine drain to the North Sea; and in the east the River Inn drains to the Danube and the Black Sea. Thus Switzerland is, as it were, the natural focus of all central Europe and it is partly because of this and partly because of the political neutrality of Switzerland, that Geneva has been chosen as the headquarters of the League of Nations. The transitional character of Switzerland is also shown by its languages and religions. There is no Swiss language and no established state religion. German is spoken by 73 per cent. of the people, French by 21 per cent. Italian by 5 per cent., the remainder of the people speaking dialects such as Romansch and Ladin which are derived from Latin (Fig. 64). In religion 57 per cent. of the people are Protestants and 42 per cent. Roman Catholic. It is thus that Switzerland partakes of the characteristics of the surrounding lands to which her rivers drain.

(3) INDUSTRIES.—In spite of her lack of coal and raw materials and her remoteness from the sea Switzerland is one of the great industrial countries of Europe. The high percentage of mountains and the unproductiveness of large areas have compelled the people to develop occupations other than farming. They have therefore concentrated on the manufacture of articles requiring much skill and relatively little raw material, *e.g.* watch making, embroidery, etc. Many Swiss manufactures have become famous for their high standard

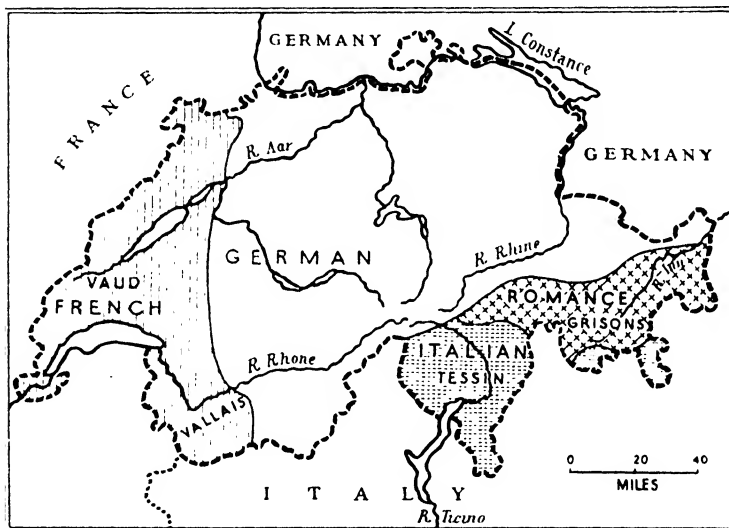
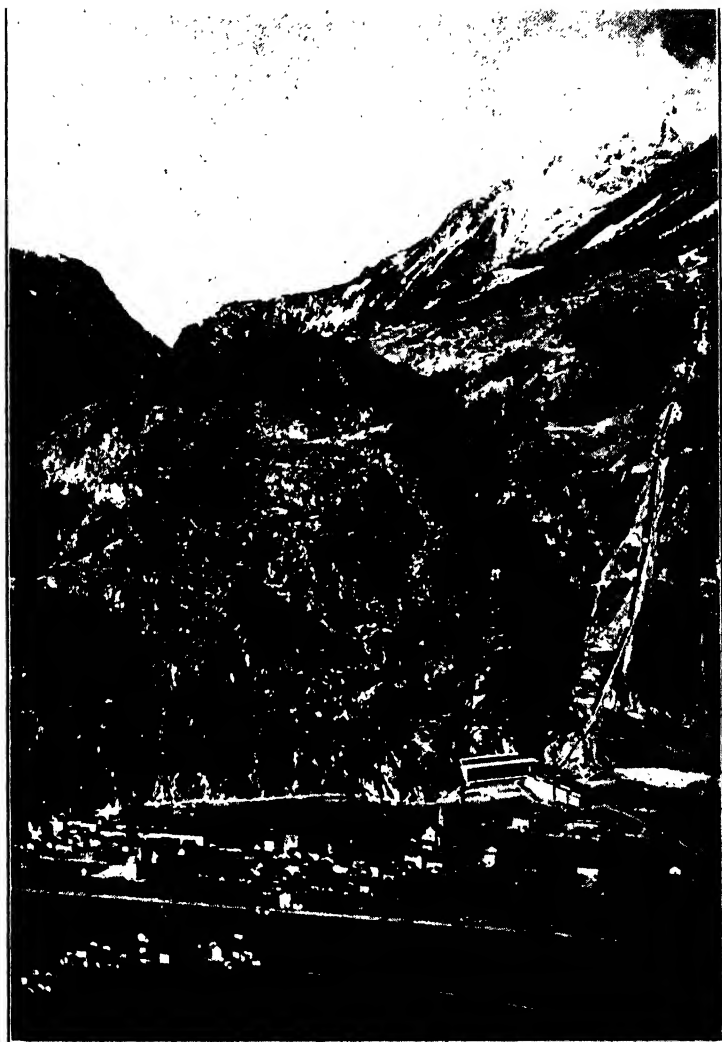


Fig. 64. SWITZERLAND. LANGUAGES.

of workmanship. Another aspect of this same type of industry is in the manufacture of condensed milk, cheese and milk chocolate (*e.g.* at Vevey) which commodities are relatively more valuable, bulk for bulk, than the milk from which they are made. Therefore in spite of long distances these products may be profitably exported.

(4) NATURAL RESOURCES.—Many of the major resources of Switzerland are closely connected with her mountainous build.

(a) The abundant supplies of water power and consequently of hydro-electricity, due to the large number of swift streams.



*Swiss Federal Rlys.*

THE POWER STATION, VERNAYEZ, SWITZERLAND.

The hydro-electric power generated at Vernayez is largely used by the Swiss Federal Railways. Notice the power station at the foot of the hillside; the pipe line which conveys the water from an upland lake or reservoir; the extreme flatness of the Valley bottom; the cultivation of the valley in contrast to the unproductive hillsides.

(b) The mountain and lake scenery which gives rise to a prosperous tourist industry.

(c) The forests of the hill slopes which are being most carefully controlled by the government lest excessive deforestation should result in the rapid denudation of the soil of the mountains.

(d) The rich "alp" pastures above the forests which are so important to the dairying industry. These form a valuable asset of the valley farmer who uses them as summer pastures for his animals, the valley farm being used for the cultivation of crops.

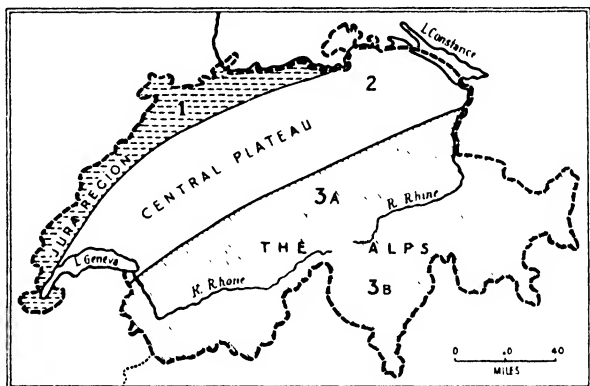


Fig. 65. SWITZERLAND. NATURAL DIVISIONS.

(5) LABOUR.—Switzerland possesses an abundant supply of intelligent and skilled labour.

### Natural Regions and Economic Development

Structurally Switzerland may be divided into three zones all of which run from S.W. to N.E. (Fig. 65).

- (1) The Jura.
- (2) The Central Plateau.
- (3) The Alps.

(1) THE JURA.—Rising to a height of 5,000 feet and extending along the whole length of western Switzerland, the Jura mountains are composed of Jurassic limestone and rocks of

similar age. They consist of a number of parallel folds across which west to east communication is difficult. The ridges are forested but the intervening valleys contain areas of rich meadow land used as summer pastures for cattle. It is in the Jura region that there is the greatest concentration of the watch-making industry, the chief town being La Chaux-de-Fonds. So extensive is this industry that in 1932 nearly 12 million watches and clocks were exported to all parts of the world. Watch making is the traditional industry of the Juras and was originally carried on in the homes of the people to supplement the meagre agricultural resources. To-day, it is a factory industry employing nearly half a million people.

Along the south facing slopes of the Jura are terraced vineyards, and at the foot of the mountains is a line of industrial towns the chief of which are Neuchâtel (on Lake Neuchâtel) and Solothurn.

(2) THE CENTRAL PLATEAU.—The Central Plateau extends from Lake Geneva in the S.W. to Lake Constance in the N.E. Its average elevation is from 1,500 feet to 3,000 feet, so that, although it is the "central depression" of Switzerland, its average altitude is similar to that of the plateau of Wales. Along the southern edge of the plateau and partly in the northern valleys of the Alps are a number of beautiful lakes, viz. Lakes Thun, Brienz, Lucerne and Zurich. These were formed by the deposition of morainic dams across the valleys during the Ice Age, when the Swiss glaciers were more extensive and reached lower levels than at present.

The plateau is covered with a mantle of fertile glacial deposits. Dairy farming is everywhere of great importance, and because of this nearly 50 per cent. of the farmland is permanent pasture, and most of the remainder is used for the production of hay and other grass crops. Few cereals are grown and for this reason grain ranks high on the list of imports (1st in 1933 and 2nd in 1934). The large yield of milk is the basis of the manufacture of cheese, butter, milk chocolate and condensed milk.

The plateau is also the great industrial region of Switzerland. There are four important industrial centres (Fig. 66).

(1) Around Zurich, where there are large manufactures of silk, cotton and electrical machinery.



(2) Around St. Gallen which is noted for cotton manufactures and embroidery.

(3) Around Aargau where there is a variety of industries including straw plaiting, knitting, and the manufacture of ribbons and leather goods.

(4) At Schaffhausen on the Rhine where rapids occur, and where hydro-electric power is used for the smelting of aluminium.

The industrial towns of the Swiss plateau, using electricity for power, and characterised by their cleanliness and absence

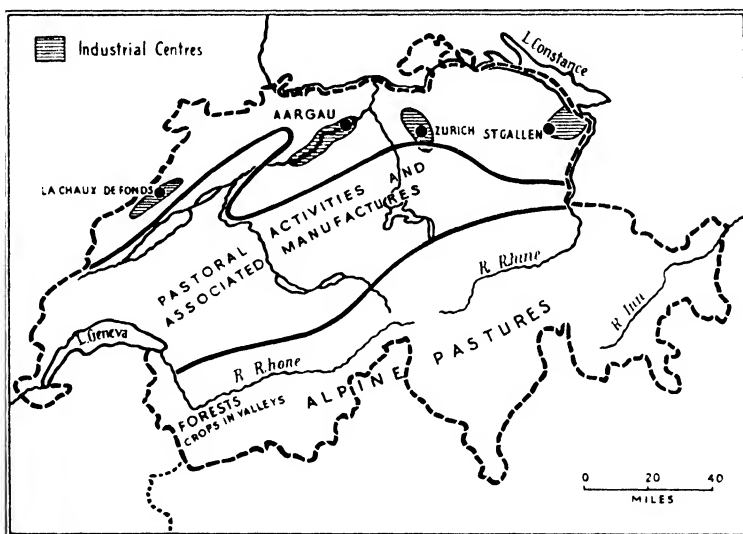


Fig. 66. SWITZERLAND. ECONOMIC REGIONS.

of smoke, are a strong contrast to the smoky and often ugly industrial towns of the British and German coalfields.

Although the Swiss plateau comprises less than one-quarter of the total area of Switzerland it supports nearly three-quarters of the total population. This is due both to intensive agriculture and the high degree of industrial development.

Berne (100,000) on the River Aar, is the capital of Switzerland, though only the fourth town in size. It controls routes



*Swiss Federal Rlys.*

THE GRIMSEL ROAD, SWITZERLAND.

This picture shows the steepness of the approach to many of the Swiss mountain passes. Notice the number of hairpin bends; the Rhone Glacier whose melting waters are the source of the river.

(a) southward via the Gemmi and Simplon passes to northern Italy (b) south-westward to Geneva, (c) northwards to Basel and (d) north-eastward to Zurich.

*Basel* (Fig. 67) is situated at the great bend of the Rhine, and controls routes (a) down the Rhine to the North Sea, (b) south westwards via the Burgundy Gate to the Rhone valley and Marseilles and (c) southward to the Swiss plateau and via the Alpine passes to Italy. It is one of the great route centres of Central Europe.

(3) THE ALPS.—The Alpine section of Switzerland occupies

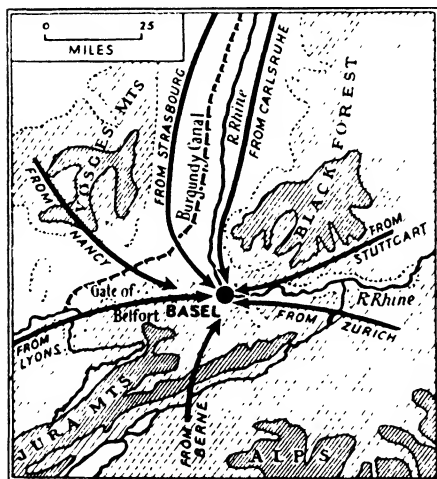


Fig. 67. THE POSITION OF BASEL.

nearly three-quarters of the total area of the country. Because of its high altitude, low temperatures, heavy snowfall, and difficult communications it is the most scantily populated and least developed section of the country. The Swiss Alps fall into two divisions:—

(a) The Limestone Alps (e.g. the Bernese Oberland) a region of bold and majestic mountains (including the Jungfrau) and

extensive glaciers. This region is drained northward by tributaries of the Rhine, e.g. River Aar, River Reuss.

(b) The mountains composed of ancient rocks further south, e.g. the Pennine Alps containing such peaks as Mt. Blanc (15,000), Mte. Rosa (15,000), and the Matterhorn (14,000). The drainage of this area is principally southwards to the River Po in North Italy. These two widely differing mountain zones are separated by a deep S.W.-N.E. depression about 125 miles long which contains the upper streams of the Rhone and Rhine, both of which rise in the St. Gothard mass.

In Eastern Switzerland is the upper valley of the River Inn, known as the Engadine. Owing to its easterly position and high altitude (over 5,000 feet) winter temperatures are low and the snow does not melt quickly. This fact, coupled with its sunny skies, has made the Engadine famous for winter sports, St. Moritz being the chief centre. The economic development of the Alpine region is mainly concerned with the tourist industry, forestry and farming.

The scenery of the Alps with their high peaks, deep glaciated valleys, forested slopes, gorges, waterfalls, glaciers and lakes, attracts large numbers of visitors each year. This is one of the most important "Playgrounds of Europe."

Agriculture is the principal occupation in the Alpine valleys. In the sunnier and more favoured valleys, particularly those draining to Italy, cereals, grapes and other fruits are cultivated. On the whole, however, dairying is the most important type of farming. Each valley farm has its section of "alp" above the tree line, which is used as summer pasture (*e.g.* the saeters of Norway, page 92). The villages of the Alpine valleys are situated on the sunny south facing side, *i.e.* the north side of an east to west trending valley.

### Alpine Routes

The high Alpine region forms a barrier to communication between Northern Europe and the Mediterranean. Hence, throughout history, the Alpine passes have been of great importance. The chief north to south routes are:—

(1) The St. Bernard pass which links the Rhone valley with the Dora Baltea valley.

(2) The railway route from Berne through the Bernese Oberland via the Lotschberg tunnel to the Rhone valley and thence via the Simplon Tunnel to the valley of the River Toce, and Milan.

(3) The railway route from Zurich along the Reuss valley and via the St. Gothard tunnel to the valley of the River Ticino, and Milan.

(4) The Splügen pass between the valley of the Hinter Rhine and the valley containing Lake Como.

(5) The Maloja pass which links the Upper Engadine with the Lake Como valley.

### The Trade of Switzerland

The foreign trade of Switzerland is large in relation to its size. This is due to its need for foodstuffs, raw materials and coal. Because of its specialised form of industrial development the exports are of high value.

Imports exceed exports by a large margin, but the adverse trade balance is partly compensated for by the "invisible imports" of money due to the tourist industry.



*Swiss Federal Rlys.*

#### WOODWORK SCHOOL AT BRIENZ, SWITZERLAND.

Wood carving is one of the outstanding peasant industries of Switzerland.

The principal imports and exports for 1934 were in order of value:—

#### IMPORTS.

Minerals  
Cereals  
Iron  
Cotton goods  
Woollen goods.

#### EXPORTS.

Clocks and Watches  
Cotton goods  
Silk goods  
Machinery  
Dyes.

## CHAPTER XII

### THE DANUBE LANDS: THE NORTH SLAV STATES OF GREATER GERMANY

#### The Course of the Danube

The Danube is the great west to east waterway of Europe. It is navigable by river steamers to Ratisbon in Germany, and by smaller boats to Ulm. It rises in the Black Forest and flows for 1700 miles eastward to the Black Sea through regions of structural, climatic and racial diversity. The Danube

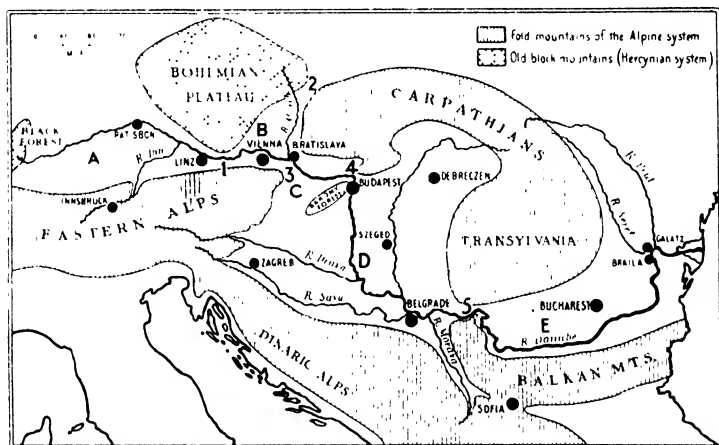


Fig. 68. DIAGRAMMATIC MAP OF DANUBE BASIN.

- A, South Germany. B, Vienna lowlands. C, Upper Hungarian Plain.  
D, Great Hungarian Plain. E, Wallachian plains (Romania).  
1. Austrian Gate (Linz Gate). 2. Moravian Gate. 3. Pressburg or  
Bratislava Gate. 4. Hungarian Gate. 5. Iron Gates.

Basin is shared by six countries, viz. Germany (including Bohemia and Moravia), Switzerland, Hungary, Yugoslavia, Romania, and Bulgaria, and because of the problems of navigation that may arise it has been inter-nationalised, being controlled by Britain, France, Italy, and Romania.

In its course the river flows through several large basins linked by narrow valleys or "gates" (Fig. 68). The first

part of the course of the Danube lies in South Germany (A). It flows first north-east to Ratisbon and thence south-east, its direction being diverted by the Bohemian block. At Linz it enters the narrow Austrian gate (1) formed by the approach of the Alps from the south and the Bohemian block from the north. Leaving the Austrian Gate the river flows across the plains of Vienna (B) to Bratislava (Pressburg) where the river after receiving a small but important tributary, the March, crosses the Alpine system by a narrow gap (3). Beyond Bratislava the Danube crosses the Little Hungarian plain (C) and turning sharply south crosses the Bakony Forest by the Hungarian Gate (4) at the southern end of which is Budapest. South of Budapest the river meanders over an extensive and very flat plain, the Hungarian Plain (D). A series of right angled bends occur in its course, as at each of the confluences of the Drava, Sava and Tisa (Theiss). At these junctions the main stream takes the direction of the tributary stream. Beyond Belgrade, at the confluence of the Sava, the Danube flows eastward and once more crosses the main Alpine system, this time by the Iron Gates (5) between the Transylvanian Alps and the Balkan Mountains. The river now enters the Romanian plain of Walachia (E) but before reaching the Black Sea its course is diverted northwards by the low plateau of the Dobruja. At its right-angled bend near Galatz it receives the Seret and Prut and thence flows eastward to the Black Sea.

### **The People of the Danube Lands**

The present political boundaries of the Danube lands were fixed after the Great War. As far as possible the new boundaries were determined by ethnic (*i.e.* racial) considerations. The new countries were made to include, as far as was practicable, all territory in which the population consisted of 50 per cent. or more of its own "nationals." It was inevitable that there should be left in each country groups of other peoples (see Figs. 69, 72, 75) and it is these minorities which to-day constitute the great political problem of Central and South-Eastern Europe.

Some of the major problems connected with these minorities came to a head in 1938. As a result new frontier lines were drawn. The lands occupied by the German, Polish, and

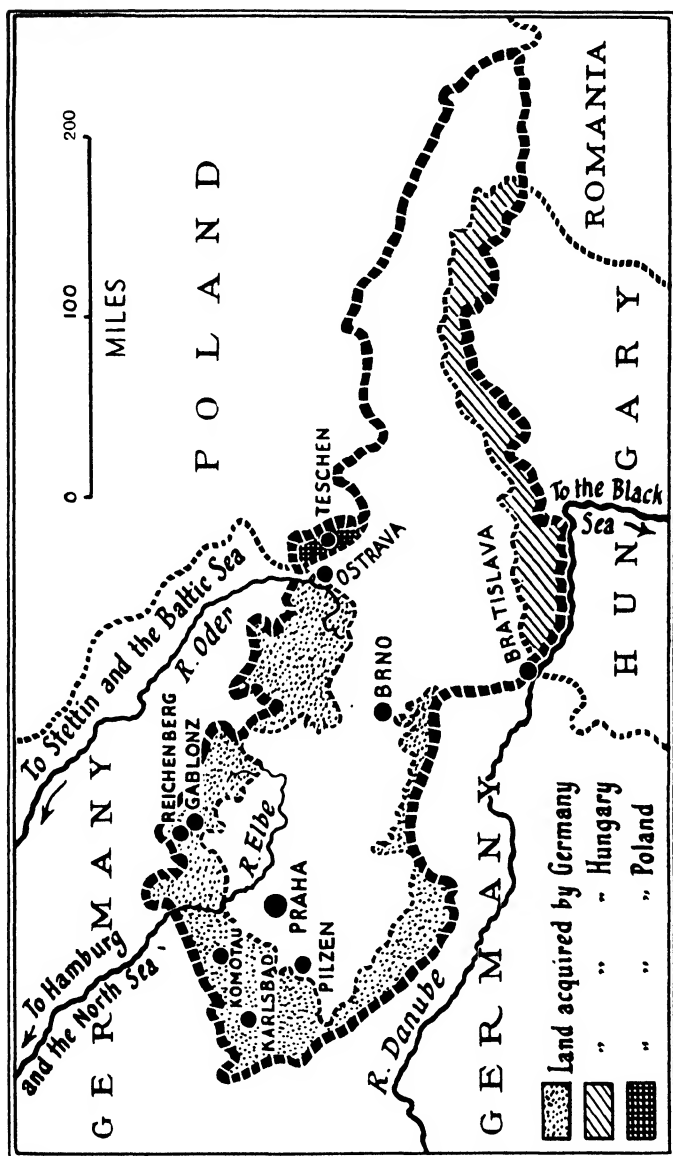


Fig. 69. THE CHANGES IN THE BOUNDARIES OF CZECHOSLOVAKIA IN 1938, PRIOR TO THE INCORPORATION OF BOHEMIA, MORAVIA AND SLOVAKIA INTO GREATER GERMANY IN MARCH 1939.



Hungarian minorities of Czechoslovakia became parts of Germany, Poland, and Hungary respectively (see Fig. 69).

The distribution of races in the Danube lands has been dependent upon a number of factors. During historic time Eastern Europe has been open to migrations of peoples from the steppes of Russia and Asia. To these peoples the forested Carpathians were a barrier which obstructed their westward advance. In particular, the Slav migrations followed two routes, (1) along the northern edge of the Carpathians as far as Bohemia and (2) via the lower Danube as far west as the Adriatic. Thus the Slavs of the Danube lands fall into two groups, (1) the northern Slavs who comprise the population of Bohemia, Moravia, and Slovakia, and (2) the southern Slavs who make up the population of Yugoslavia.

Between the North and South Slavs live the Hungarians, descendants of the Magyars who also originated from the Steppes. They entered the plains of Hungary by the Carpathian Gate, a low pass between the headwaters of the Dniester and Tisa. The Austrians are a Germanic race, and the Romanians a race akin to the Romance peoples (*i.e.* Italians, Spanish, etc.) for Romania was originally a province of the Eastern Roman Empire.

The Bulgarians are a Slavonic type but their settlement in south-east Europe is of a later date than that of the rest of the South Slavs.

### THE NORTH SLAV STATES BOHEMIA, MORAVIA, AND SLOVAKIA (Autonomous States within Greater Germany)

From 1918 to 1939 the states of Bohemia, Moravia, and Slovakia (together with Ruthenia which is now incorporated in Hungary) formed the Republic of Czechoslovakia. The great majority of the peoples of this republic were Slavs, but there was a great difference between the advanced and industrialised Czechs of the west and the backward Ruthenians of the east, fifty per cent. of whom were illiterate. In addition to the Slav population, there were, in Czechoslovakia, strong minorities of other peoples, viz. over 3,000,000 Germans who lived chiefly on the north-west borders; over half a million Hungarians in the south; over half a million Russians in the

eastern regions; many thousands of Poles in the Silesian region; and a high percentage of Jews in the cities.

In the summer and autumn of 1938 these minorities presented such serious difficulties that the frontiers of Czechoslovakia were re-drawn as shown on Fig. 69. By these re-adjustments of frontiers the lands occupied by the German, Hungarian, and Polish minorities became parts of Germany, Hungary, and Poland respectively.

But the partition of 1938 was short-lived. In March 1939, partly as a result of internal difficulties arising from racial

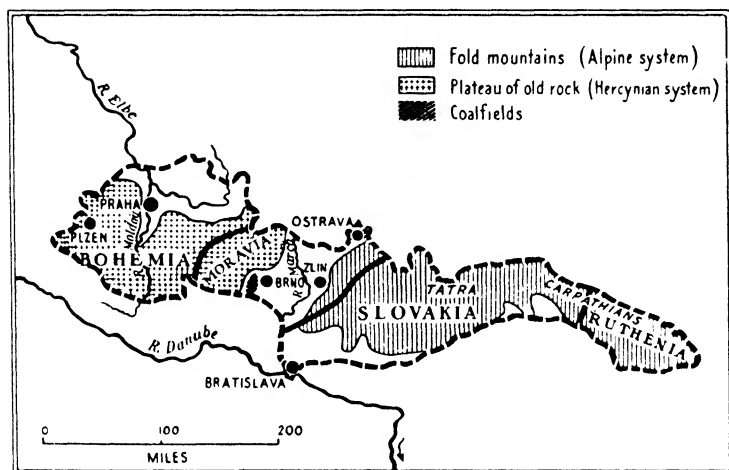


Fig. 70. THE NORTH SLAV STATES.

Bohemia, Moravia, and Slovakia are part of Greater Germany, and Ruthenia has been annexed by Hungary.

differences, and partly as a result of Germany's policy of territorial expansion, the greater part of Czechoslovakia (e.g. Bohemia, Moravia, and Slovakia) was incorporated in the German Reich. At the same time the eastern province of Ruthenia was annexed by Hungary. At the time of writing it would appear that Bohemia, Moravia, and Slovakia are to be granted certain measures of self-government, electing their own Presidents and controlling their internal affairs, but that such matters as their foreign policy will be controlled by Germany.

The life of Czechoslovakia since its creation by the Treaty of Versailles has been short, but it should be remembered that from the first the country was faced by a number of difficult problems. These problems were all of such a nature as would militate against the stability and unification of the country. The new country was long and narrow in shape. The distance between the capital, Prague, and the eastern frontier was nearly as great as the distance from Prague to the Straits of Dover. Czechoslovakia had no coastline, a great economic disadvantage, even though as partial compensation she was given navigation rights on the Oder, Elbe, and Danube, and also special privileges in the ports of Hamburg and Trieste. The country was split up into sharply contrasting regions of relief, and these regions differed in their economic needs. Finally the difficulties arising from the variety of peoples were intensified by the religious differences of the racial groups, *e.g.* the Czechs are for the most part Roman Catholics, the majority of the Slovaks are Protestants, while the Ruthenians adhere to the Orthodox Greek Church.

In spite of the above difficulties Czechoslovakia became one of the most advanced countries of Europe. Agriculture was developed to such a high standard that the country was almost self-supporting in regard to food supplies. Her reserves of coal and other minerals became the basis of a large number of manufacturing industries including engineering, textiles, glass, leather, and chemicals. Her forests, too, were an important source of wealth and were utilised for paper-making and the manufacture of furniture.

It will be realised, therefore, that by the acquisition of Bohemia, Moravia, and Slovakia, Germany has gained not merely a large territory but also a vast range of agricultural and industrial resources.

#### BOHEMIA

Bohemia consists almost entirely of one of the ancient blocks of highland which form part of the old mountain system of Central Europe (Fig. 4). It is a basin-shaped plateau surrounded on all sides by higher land which rises to the Bohemian Forest in the south-west; to the Erz Gebirge in the north-west; to the Sudetes in the north-east; and to

the Moravian Heights in the south-east. The plateau is drained by the upper course of the River Elbe which flows northward through the Elbe Gate to Germany. The fertile

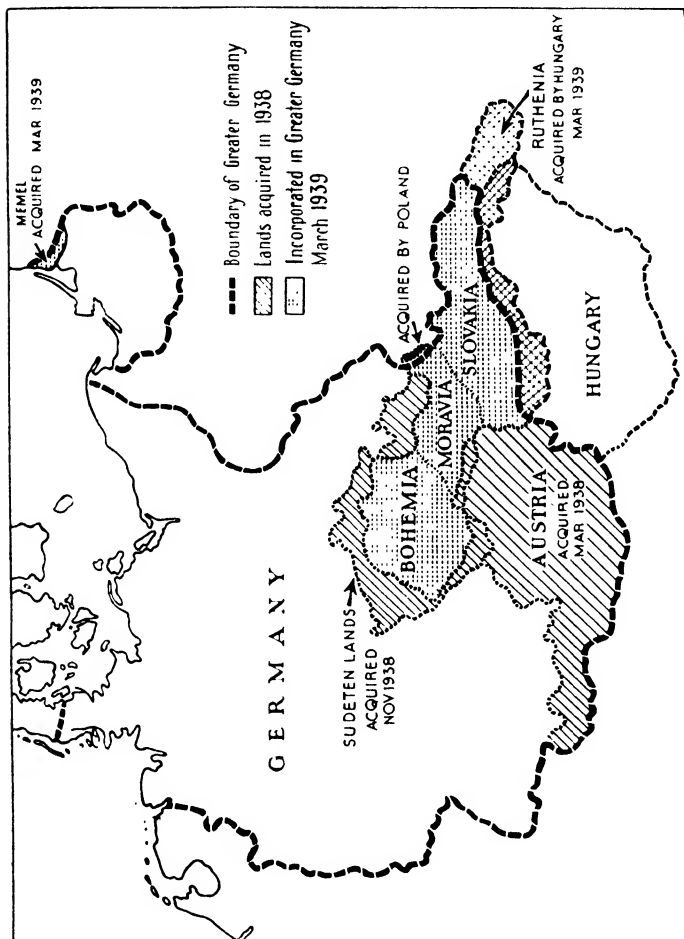


Fig. 70a. GREATER GERMANY.  
Recent Political Changes in Central Europe and the Baltic.

basin surrounding the upper Elbe is a rich agricultural region where wheat, barley, rye, sugar beet, and hops are extensively cultivated. The production of sugar beet ranks next to that of Germany, and the refining of sugar is one of the important

industries. Most of the hops are used in the breweries of Pilsen (Plzen), but considerable quantities are also exported. As in other countries of Central Europe potatoes are used for the manufacture of starch and the distillation of alcohol. There are small reserves of lignite (brown coal) in the north. The lignite is used for the manufacture of ammonia and fertilisers, and is burned to provide power for the generation of electricity.

Engineering and metallurgical works are important, especially near Pilsen where the world-famous Skoda works are situated. Although Bohemia has very little coal of good quality to provide power for her manufacturing industries, there are ample supplies near the southern boundary of Germany. Since these coalfields are at no great distance away transport costs will not be high. A characteristic industry of Bohemia is glass-making. The chief centres are in the Jizera valley in the north-east of the state. Other industries include tanning; the manufacture of leather goods, especially gloves and velour hats; paper-making; and the manufacture of toys and furniture. Because of its variety of resources and its high degree of industrialisation, Bohemia is more densely populated than either Moravia or Slovakia.

*Prague* (Praha), the capital, situated on the River Moldau, stands almost at the centre of Bohemia. It commands routes *via* the Elbe valley to Germany, and along the Moldau valley to Vienna, and is the great industrial centre of the state.

### **Economic Losses of 1938**

The Bohemian territory annexed by Germany in 1938 was important for its minerals, forests, and its industrial development. Bohemia lost about five-sixths of her reserves of lignite; these were situated in the north and are now on the German side of the frontier. The china clay deposits of the Karlsbad region together with the associated porcelain industry are no longer in Bohemia. The flourishing textile industries of the Reichenberg (Liberec) region are now in Germany. Probably the greatest loss has been felt in the glass industry. The chief centre, Gablonz (Jablonec), is no longer in Bohemia. It should be noted that as Bohemia is within Greater Germany the loss of these economic resources

may not be as far-reaching as when Bohemia was part of Czechoslovakia.

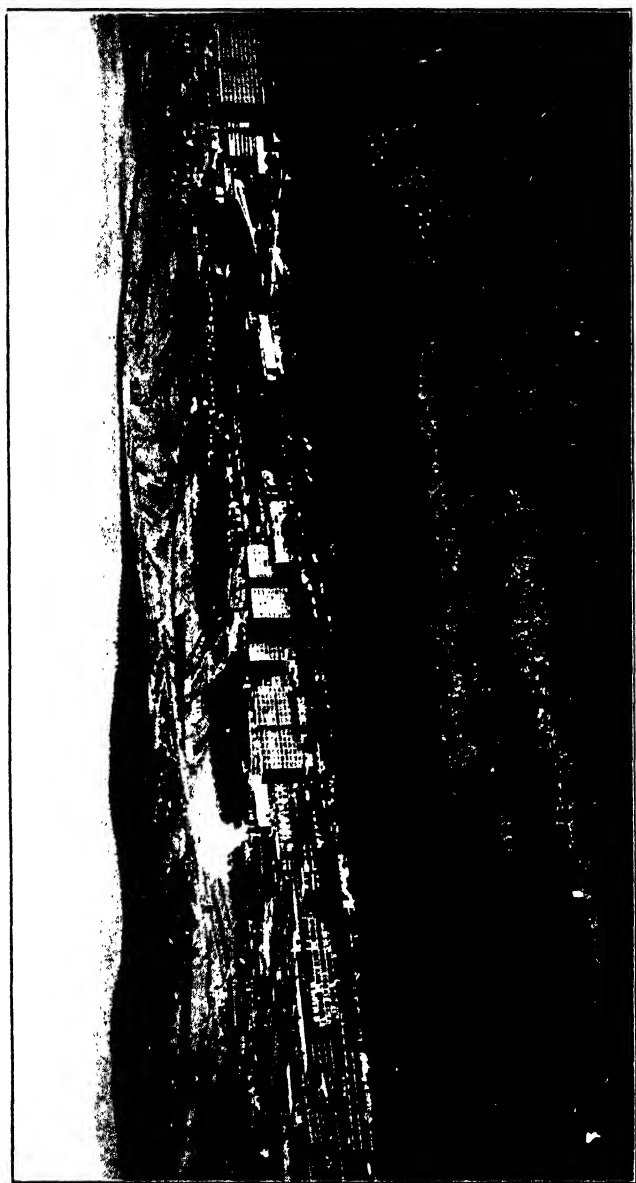
### MORAVIA

Moravia lies between Bohemia and Slovakia. For the most part it consists of a broad lowland which rises gently to the Moravian Heights on the west, and to the Carpathians on the east (Fig. 70). Structurally, therefore, Moravia is composed of old rocks in the west; of recent rocks forming lowlands in the centre; and of part of the Fold Mountain system of Southern Europe in the east. The central lowland is drained by the River March, a tributary of the Danube, to which it flows southward. The lowland forms a natural highway between Germany and Poland in the north and the Danube lands to the south (see Figs. 63 and 68). So low is the divide between the Oder and the March that a canal has been constructed to join them.

The Moravian lowland is a rich agricultural region, where large crops of barley, wheat, and sugar beet are cultivated. Though not so highly industrialised as Bohemia, Moravia has a number of notable manufacturing centres. *Brno* (Brunn), the capital, is the chief centre of the textile industries, manufacturing both cotton and woollen goods. At *Zlin* are immense leather works and boot and shoe industries. In the extreme north of the lowland is a small portion of the Silesian coalfield (Fig. 49). As the coal is excellent for coking there are large metal-working centres especially at *Ostrava* and *Vitkovice*. The loss of a portion of this coalfield to Poland in 1938 deprived Moravia of about two-thirds of her supplies of high grade coal (Fig. 69).

### SLOVAKIA

Slovakia lies to the east of Moravia. It consists mainly of highland, and in this respect offers a strong contrast to Moravia. The wide western portion of the Carpathians occupies the greater part of the state, and except for the river valleys, the only lowland of any extent lies in the south. This lowland is a northern extension of the Hungarian plains, and a considerable portion of it (4,500 square miles with a population of nearly a million) was lost to Hungary in 1938. With



THE BOOT FACTORY AT ZLIN, MORAVIA.

Bohemia and Moravia are highly industrialised and have many large modern factories such as is shown in this picture. Zlin is situated in Moravia, in the lowlands of the March valley.

*Czechoslovak Legation.*

the loss of this territory Slovakia also lost nearly a hundred miles of frontage on the Danube east of Bratislava. As a large portion of the highland is forested, lumbering is one of the most important occupations. Except for the manufacture of wood-pulp and paper there are few industries in Slovakia. Agricultural activities reach their best development on the southern plains, for the mountain valleys are only of moderate fertility. Wheat, sugar beet, and maize are the principal crops. On south-facing slopes, sheltered from the cold north winds, vines are successfully grown.

*Bratislava* (Pressburg or Pozsony), the capital, is situated on the Danube and is an important river port. It commands routes (*a*) westward up the Danube valley to south Germany and Western Europe, (*b*) northward across the Moravian lowlands to Poland, (*c*) southward across the Hungarian plains to Budapest, Belgrade, and the Mediterranean.



## CHAPTER XIII

### THE DANUBE LANDS: (2) HUNGARY

#### Physical Features

Modern Hungary is a great inland basin surrounded on all sides by mountains of the Alpine system. This basin is a region of subsidence and in recent geological times was an inland sea. Parts of this depression still contain shallow lakes, viz. Lake Balaton, whose average depth is ten feet. The only highland in the country is the ridge (Bakony Forest) which strikes south-westward from the Carpathians, and through which the Danube flows at the Hungarian Gate (4, Fig. 65). This ridge divides the plains into two parts, (*a*) the little Alfold to the north-west and (*b*) the Great Alfold to the south-east. Across this flat plain meander the Danube and its chief tributaries, the Tisa (Theiss) and Drava, which provide important means of transport. Regions near the rivers are liable to extensive floods. The soils of the plain are mostly extremely fertile, except the sandy regions between the Danube and the Tisa where trees and special grasses have been planted to prevent the sand spreading over the cultivated areas.

Except for a very small coalfield near Pecs and building stones in the Bakony Forest Hungary has no mineral wealth, and her forests are small in area. Hence there is little industrial development and agriculture is the chief resource.

#### Climate and Agriculture

The climate, which is very similar to that of the Steppe lands of the world, is favourable to the growth of cereals. Shut off from sea influences by the encircling mountains (Fig. 71) Hungary has a climate which is typically continental, with hot summers, cold winters and light rainfall (20 inches to 25 inches) much of which falls during the summer half-year. Debreczen has an average July temperature of 71°F., a January temperature of 25°F., and 25 inches of rain of which 15 inches falls in the summer months. This type of climate is so similar to that of the Steppe regions that Hungary is

a grassland region particularly suited to the growing of cereals and the rearing of animals. Cereals, principally wheat and maize are grown extensively in the cultivated areas which are always within easy reach of the villages and towns. The yields of grain are not as high as in Western Europe, *i.e.* usually less than 20 bushels per acre as compared with 40 in Belgium. In spite of the relatively low yields, Hungary is one of the "granaries" of Europe. Over 80 per cent. of the cultivated

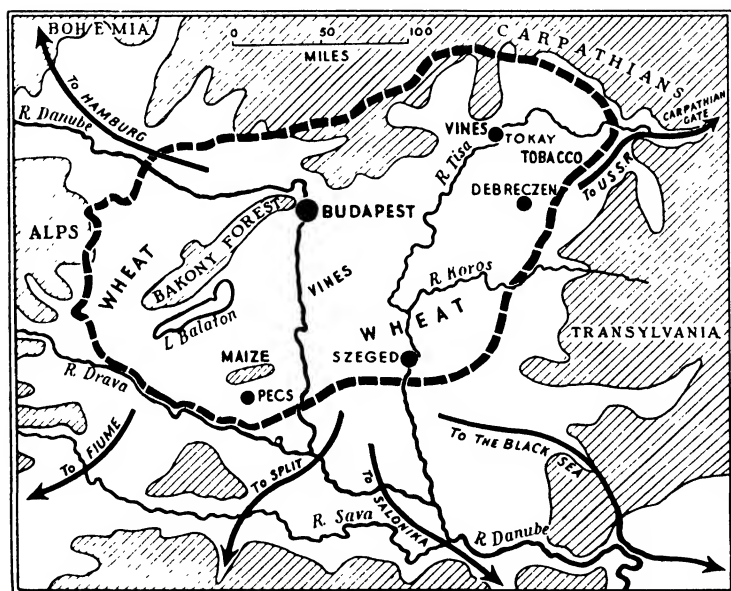
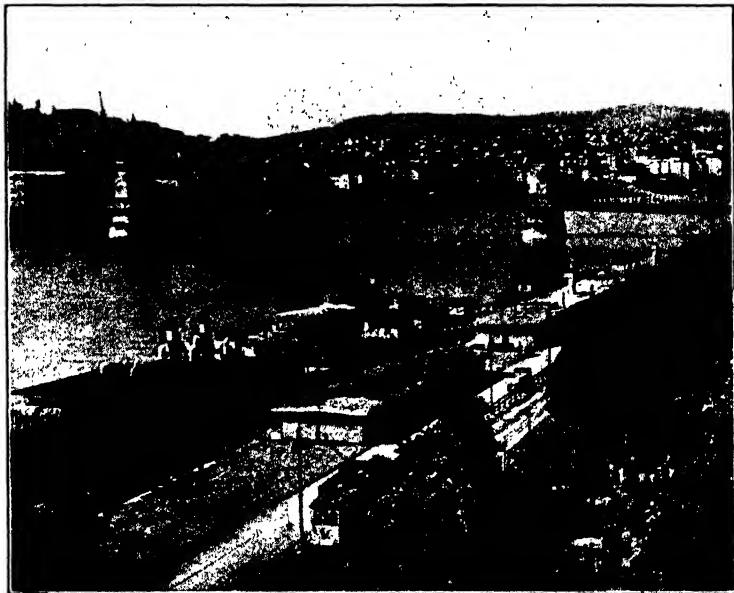


Fig. 71. HUNGARY. TO SHOW ITS POSITION IN RELATION TO THE SURROUNDING HIGHLANDS.—The crops named are especially important in the regions indicated.\*

land is devoted to grain, and the area is steadily increasing at the expense of the pasture lands. This contrasts with the farming of north-western Europe where pasture land is increasing and cereal cultivation decreasing. Near the villages fruit and grapes are also cultivated and there is a considerable manufacture of wine, the best known of which is that of Tokay.

\* Since this map was drawn Hungary has annexed Ruthenia (Carpatho Ukraine) which was formerly part of Czechoslovakia, and thus extended her territory in the north-east (see Fig. 70a).

Away from the villages is the *puszta*. Puszta is a Slavonic word meaning "solitude." The pusztas are vast monotonous, treeless plains where large herds of cattle, horses and sheep are reared. This occupation dates back to the settlement of the Hungarian plains by the nomadic Magyars over a thousand years ago.



*Hungarian National Office for Tourism.*

#### THE DANUBE AT BUDAPEST.

On the far side of the river is the higher land on which Buda stands: in the foreground is the lower town of Pest. Notice the width of the river and the size of the steamers.

#### Villages and Towns

The Hungarians of the plains live in villages. Even such a large centre as Szeged (137,000) is one large village or, rather an agglomeration of villages, for over half its inhabitants are peasant farmers. These straggling towns and villages usually lack all the amenities and social services of the cities of Western Europe. The roads, full of holes, are quagmires of mud when it rains, and of little use for modern transport.

This type of town probably arose from the need for security, particularly during the period of the Turkish invasions. Many of these towns are of large area, *e.g.* Debreczen (120,000) covers an area of about 350 square miles, *i.e.* nearly half the size of Greater London whose population exceeds eight millions.

While Hungary is essentially an agricultural country, efforts have been made since 1920 to organise industries, principally those based on agricultural products, such as sugar refining, distilling, brewing and flour milling. Budapest is the greatest flour milling centre in Europe. Iron ore and coal are imported for the engineering works of Budapest while imported cotton is the basis of a recently established textile industry.

*Budapest* (1,000,000), the capital of Hungary, is situated at the southern end of the Hungarian Gate, where the Danube flows through the Bakony Forest. The city consists of two parts. Buda, with its ancient fortifications and government buildings is on the high ground on the right bank. Pest is the industrial and commercial half of the city and is situated on the lowland on the opposite banks of the river. It is the chief industrial centre of Hungary and from it railways radiate to Vienna, Fiume, Belgrade and Transylvania.

### The Trade of Hungary

The following were the more important items of the trade of Hungary in 1934:—

IMPORTS.	EXPORTS.
Timber and paper	Wheat and flour
Raw Cotton	Animals
Coal	Poultry
Textiles	Lard
Metal	Electrical machinery
Metal ores	

Of the exports wheat and flour account for over a quarter of the total, and the remainder of the important exports are nearly all related to agricultural development. The large imports of wood are due to the smallness of the forested

areas within the country. The imports of ores, coal and raw cotton reflect the attempt to develop industry, and the high value of the imports of manufactured goods emphasises the low level of industrial development.

### **Problems of Modern Hungary**

The main problems of modern Hungary are:—

(1) Her one-sided economy, *i.e.* the preponderance of agricultural development and her lack of industries. Even so, her future success, in view of her lack of minerals, would seem to be in the intensification of her agriculture and the further development of agricultural industries.

(2) The difficulty of outlet to the sea. Although Hamburg provides special facilities for Hungarian trade, the use of this port entails crossing other countries, *e.g.* Bohemia and Germany, and the distance is great. The outlet via the lower Danube, although the river is internationalised, necessitates passage through Rumania, and the use of Black Sea ports entails a long detour for west European trade. The most important outlet for trade is, at present, Fiume, though Yugoslavia by offering low railway rates is encouraging Hungary to use Split (Spalato), a port south of Fiume which the former country is developing.

(3) The detachment from Hungary, after the Great War, of bordering plains containing a large percentage of Magyars. This causes a feeling of bitter dissatisfaction with regard to her present frontiers, a feeling not conducive to peace or stability. This problem was partially settled in November 1938 when Hungary acquired from Czechoslovakia 4,500 sq. miles of territory along the northern borders (see Fig. 69). By this frontier change over half a million Magyars were brought within the Hungarian state.

## CHAPTER XIV

### THE DANUBE LANDS: (3) YUGOSLAVIA

#### Racial and Transport Problems

As Czechoslovakia was the country of the North Slavs so Yugoslavia is the country of the South Slavs. Before 1914 much of the territory viz. Croatia, Slavonia and Bosnia, which is now included in Yugoslavia, was part of the Austro-Hungarian Empire. In addition, the formerly independent

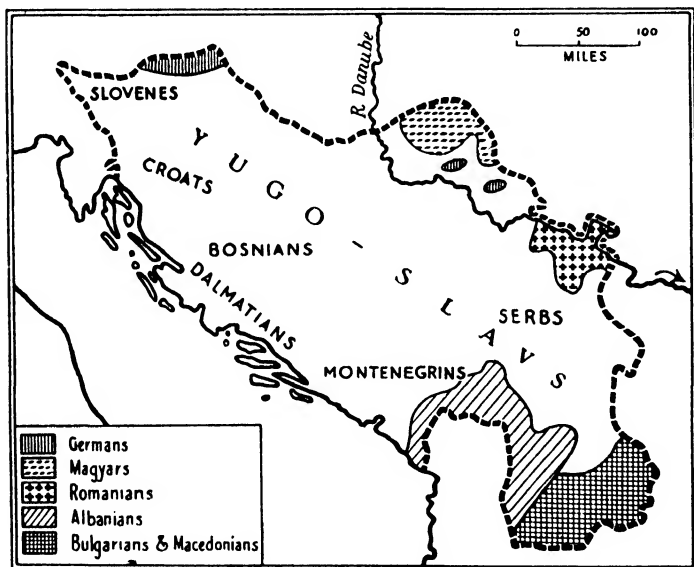


Fig. 72. THE PEOPLES OF YUGOSLAVIA.

Slav states of Serbia and Montenegro are incorporated in the new political unit. For many centuries these groups of South Slavs of which the chief are Serbs, Croats and Slovenes have developed along different lines (Fig. 72). The lack of co-operation between these groups and their struggles to dominate the government is one of the greatest problems of the country. The second great problem is that of transport, for the Dinaric

Alps form a barrier between the most productive areas and the sea. The sea coast is of the Dalmatian type and has excellent harbours, but the narrowness of the coastal plain, the high mountain ranges running parallel with it and the steep gradients behind it, make communication inland difficult.

### Industries

Although Yugoslavia is primarily a country of agricultural activities it has considerable mineral resources, but they are not fully exploited. These include iron, copper, lead and chrome-ores.

The industries of the country are primarily those directly connected with agriculture, *e.g.* flour milling, brewing, tanning, etc., but there are also some small manufactures of textiles, leather goods and pottery. Many of the industries are of the domestic type. A characteristic occupation is the carpet making of south-east Serbia around Pirot. The carpets are made of pure wool and the secret of dying and colour mixing is handed down from father to son.

### Natural Divisions

Yugoslavia falls into three natural divisions (Fig. 73):—

- (I) The coastal plains and islands along the Adriatic Sea.
- (II) The mountain region, known by various names, but most commonly called the Dinaric Alps.
- (III) The interior plains which are structurally an extension of the plains of Hungary.

(I) THE ADRIATIC COASTLANDS.—The coastline of Yugoslavia is one of subsidence. Since the mountain ranges are parallel to the coast their partial submergence has produced long, narrow, hilly islands running parallel to the coast, and large harbours with narrow entrances.

Climatically this part of Yugoslavia belongs to the Mediterranean type with hot summers, warm winters and most of the rain during the winter half-year. Sometimes in the winter the region experiences an unpleasant cold wind called the “bora” which is similar in type and origin to the Mistral of the lower Rhone valley. Since the mountains approach so closely to the sea there is relatively little cultivatable land,

but typical Mediterranean products are grown, viz. grapes, olives and figs as well as wheat. Because of the limited land available for agriculture many of the inhabitants are fishermen and sailors.

One of the most important aspects of the modern development of Yugoslavia is the attention which is being given to the development of ports and of communication between these ports and the interior. Fiume, the natural outlet for

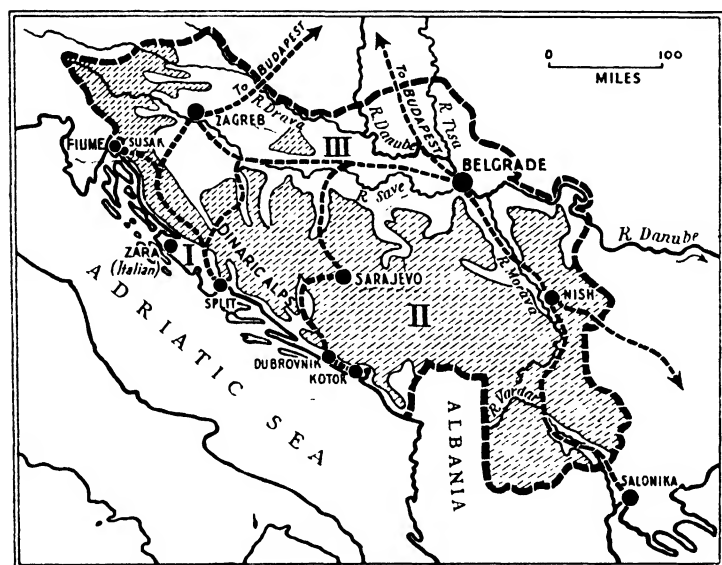


Fig. 73. YUGOSLAVIA, SHOWING NATURAL DIVISIONS AND ROUTES LINKING THE INTERIOR WITH THE MEDITERRANEAN SEA.—I. The Coastal Plains. II. The Mountain Region. III. The Interior Plains.

the north-west of Yugoslavia, belongs to Italy. Like Poland, Yugoslavia prefers to create and use her own ports rather than be dependent on those outside her own territory. Split (Spalato) is now connected by rail with the interior plains and is the leading port.

The port of Kotor (Cattaro) is also being modernised and its railway inland widened and improved. Susak, a suburb of Fiume, in Yugoslav territory, is mainly used as a lumber port.



(II) THE MOUNTAIN ZONE.—The mountains of Yugoslavia are narrow in the north-west of the country behind Fiume, but they widen rapidly eastwards and occupy the whole of the southern portion of the country, rising in places to 8,000 feet.

This mountain zone consists of a number of parallel north-west to south-east ridges which make communication from

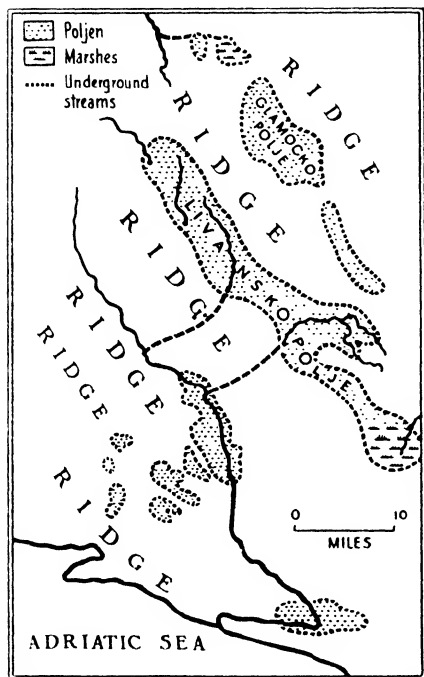


Fig. 74. A PORTION OF THE LIMESTONE REGION OF YUGOSLAVIA.

the interior to the Adriatic a matter of difficulty. The Dinaric Alps are composed of limestone and the characteristic scenery is that of the karst type with deep, steep sided gorges, underground drainage, etc. This region, known as the Karst, has given its name to all other regions of similar structure and scenery. The villages are situated in depressions, called poljes or dolines, where accumulations of fertile soil make agriculture possible (Fig. 74).

Further east where the hillslope towards the river Save, are extensive forests of

beech and oak, in which large numbers of pigs are fed on the beech-mast and acorns. The forests constitute one of the most important timber reserves of southern Europe. In recent times these forests have been increasingly exploited and timber ranks as the first export of the country.

The extreme eastern section of the mountains is crossed by a well-marked north to south route, that of the Rivers Morava



THE BAY OF KOTOR, YUGOSLAVIA.

This bay is typical of the many fine natural harbours to be found along the coast of Yugoslavia. There is only a narrow strip of coastal lowland and the mountains make communication inland a matter of considerable difficulty.

*Mondiale.*

and Vardar. This route, which has been of great importance throughout history links the plains of the middle Danube with the Aegean Sea at Salonika. In the Morava valley is Nish, an important railway junction on the Orient Express route, the point where the Belgrade-Salonika and the Belgrade-Constantinople routes diverge.

The south-facing valley of the Vardar, experiences a Mediterranean climate, and tobacco, mulberry, grapes, etc., are cultivated.

(III) THE INTERIOR PLAINS.—North of the mountains, Yugoslavia consists of a lowland drained by the Rivers Drava, Save, Tisa and Danube. Structurally this is a continuation of the Hungarian Plain, and the climate, in contrast to that of the Adriatic coastlands, is of the continental type with extremes of temperature and summer rain. (Belgrade: July 72°F; January 29°F and annual rainfall 24 inches, of which 15 inches falls in the summer half-year.) This is the richest agricultural region of the country and the crops are similar to those of Hungary, *i.e.* cereals, particularly wheat and maize. Because of the high summer temperatures and the large supply of water from the rivers, rice can be grown. Maize is of greater importance than wheat and is used both for human consumption and for the feeding of pigs. Maize and pigs are two of the most important items on the export list. On the higher lands bordering the plains to the south are extensive orchards of plum trees, the plums being dried and exported as prunes. In spite of the large number of swift streams little hydro-electric power is generated except in the forested areas of the north-west where it is utilised in saw mills.

*Belgrade* (230,000), the capital, is situated in the fertile interior plains at the confluence of the Drava and Danube. It was originally the capital of Serbia. It controls the following routes:—

(a) Southward, via the Morava-Vardar valleys to Salonika and the Aegean Sea.

(b) South-east, via the Morava valley, Sofia and the Maritza valley to Constantinople (the Orient Express Route).

(c) Eastward, down the Danube to the Black Sea.

(d) Northwards, via the Danube valley to Budapest and Central Europe.

(e) Westward, over the mountains to Fiume and Split.

*Zagreb* (185,000), on the Save, is the second city of importance. It is an important route having direct rail communication with Budapest, Belgrade, Split, Fiume and Vienna.

### The Trade of Yugoslavia

In 1933 the leading imports of Yugoslavia were in order of value:—

IMPORTS.	EXPORTS.
Cotton goods	Timber
Iron goods	Maize
Woollen goods	Pigs
Foodstuffs	Eggs
Silk goods	Meat
Machinery	Cattle

The predominance of manufactured goods in the import list emphasises the absence of manufacturing activities and the nature of the principal exports, likewise lays stress on the agricultural economy of the country.

## CHAPTER XV

### THE DANUBE LANDS: (4) ROMANIA, BULGARIA, ALBANIA, AND TURKEY

#### ROMANIA

##### The Country: Agriculture and Climate

The modern state of Romania corresponds very closely in extent with the limits of the old Roman province of Dacia. The name of the country and the language of the people are heritages of the Roman occupation. The pre-war Romania

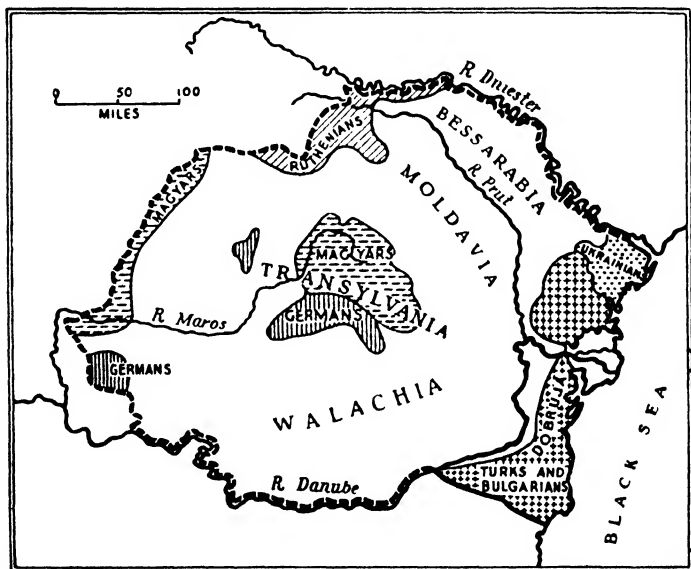


Fig. 75. THE PEOPLES OF ROMANIA.

consisted of the two lowland provinces of Walachia and Moldavia and of the Dobruja which was annexed in 1878. To these were added in 1918 the provinces of Transylvania, Bessarabia and Bukovina. As a result there are large

minorities of non-Romanian peoples (c.f. Yugoslavia and the former Czechoslovakia) (Fig. 75).

Romania is a country rich in resources but backward in development. Agriculture is the chief means of livelihood, but the yields of grain are very low (18 bushels per acre in Walachia and 12 in Bessarabia). The low agricultural yields are largely the result of the primitive methods of farming. Many of the fields are still sown and harvested by hand. Over 80 per cent. of the population is engaged in agriculture

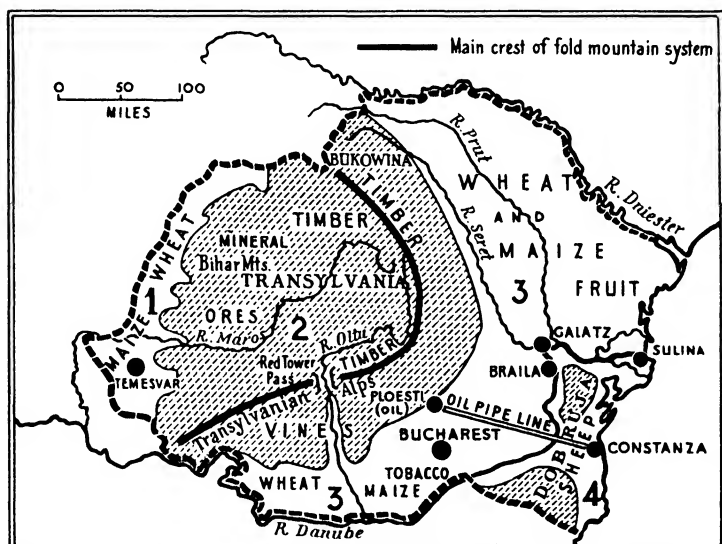


Fig. 76. ROMANIA. NATURAL DIVISIONS.—1. Danubian Plains. 2. Highland region. 3. Eastern and Southern Plains. 4. Dobruja.

and more than 85 per cent. of the cultivated land is used for the production of maize and wheat. In spite of the low yields, Romania, like Hungary, is one of the important granaries of Europe.

Romania has a continental climate. The average temperatures of Bucharest range from 75°F. in July to 25°F. in January, though the actual temperatures may rise to 100°F. in summer and fall below zero in winter. The average rainfall, like that of the plains of Hungary and Yugoslavia is about 25 inches, of which 15 inches fall in the summer half-year.

### Natural Divisions

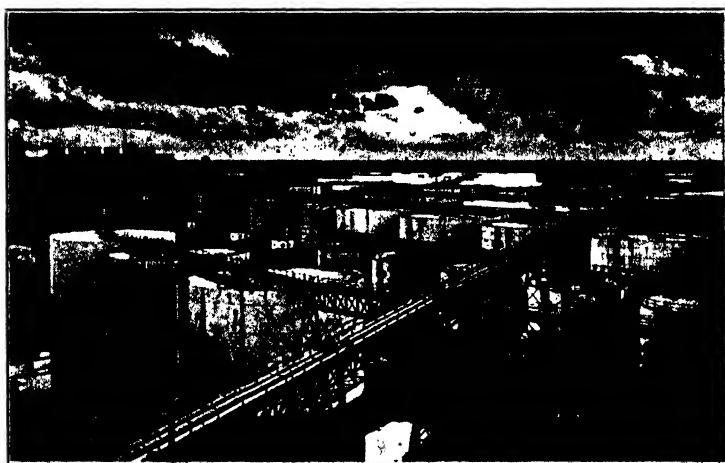
Romania (Fig. 76) consists of—

(1) A small section of the Hungarian plains to the west of Transylvania.

(2) Transylvania—part of the great Alpine system of Europe.

(3) The low plains to the east of Transylvania, which extend to the River Danube in the south and to the River Dniester in the east.

(4) The low plateau of the Dobruja.



*Romanian Legation.*

#### A VIEW OF THE PORT OF CONSTANZA, ROMANIA.

Constanza is a port on the Black Sea. A pipe line carries oil from Ploesti to this port, and in this picture the oil storage tanks are shown.

(1) THE WESTERN PLAINS.—In this region, which is structurally and climatically part of the Hungarian Alföld, are the most productive agricultural lands of Romania. Here are obtained the highest yields of wheat and maize and in addition rice, tobacco and grapes are cultivated. The chief town, Temesvar, has small metal industries.

(2) TRANSYLVANIA.—Transylvania consists of a plateau basin surrounded by the Carpathian arc and the Bihar Mountains. Within its borders rise the River Maros which drains

westward to the Danube, and the River Oltu which flows southward through a deep gorge (the Red Tower Pass) in the Transylvanian Alps, so linking the plateau with the plains of Walachia.

Much of Transylvania is rich in forests of beech and oak, with conifers at higher altitudes. The wood is floated down the rivers to the saw-milling centres of the plains, the chief being Galatz. Much of the wood is exported to neighbouring countries which lack good timber supplies, and if properly exploited the Transylvanian forests would be of great economic value. The mountains are known to be rich in minerals such as iron, copper, lead, zinc, etc., but the output is small. In the river valleys wheat, corn and other crops are grown, and on the south facing slopes there are vineyards and orchards. The pasture lands (*plaiuri*) above the tree line of the Carpathians are used for the grazing of animals in the summer (cf. the alps of Switzerland and the saeters of Norway).

(3) THE EASTERN PLAINS.—On the south and east the Carpathians drop gently to extensive plains. Walachia is the region to the south of Transylvania and drained by numerous streams tributary to the Danube. Moldavia and Bessarabia lie to the east of the Carpathians and are drained by the Prut and the Seret.

Structurally these regions are a westward extension of the plains of south Russia and are composed of fertile black earth or covered with rich deposits of loess. These are the great grain-growing regions. In addition to wheat and maize, barley is extensively cultivated in Bessarabia, and throughout the plain, tobacco, sugar beet and grapes are grown in relatively small quantities. Because of the overwhelming importance of cereal production stock rearing is almost neglected.

At Ploesti, on the northern edge of Walachia there are oil deposits. Romania ranks as fourth world producer of petroleum, and an oil pipe line connects Ploesti with Constantza on the Black Sea, a port primarily concerned with the export of oil to Britain, France, Germany and Italy.

*Bucharest* (630,000), situated near the centre of the Walachian plain is the capital of Romania. Railways connect it with other parts of the country, but it is not a natural route centre comparable to many of the other Danubian capitals.



*Braila* and *Galatz* are river ports situated at the right angled bend of the Danube and are engaged in the export of grain via the River Sulina, the only distributary of the Danube delta navigable for large ships.

(4) THE DOBRUJA.—The Dobruja is a low limestone plateau covered in part with fertile deposits of loess. For many years a poor and scantily populated steppe region, devoted to the rearing of sheep, it is now being settled and cultivated. To the west of the Dobruja are the wide swamps of the lower Danube. In order to cross these swamps the railway bridge at Cernavoda on the Bucharest-Constanza railway is ten miles long.

### **Trade and Transport**

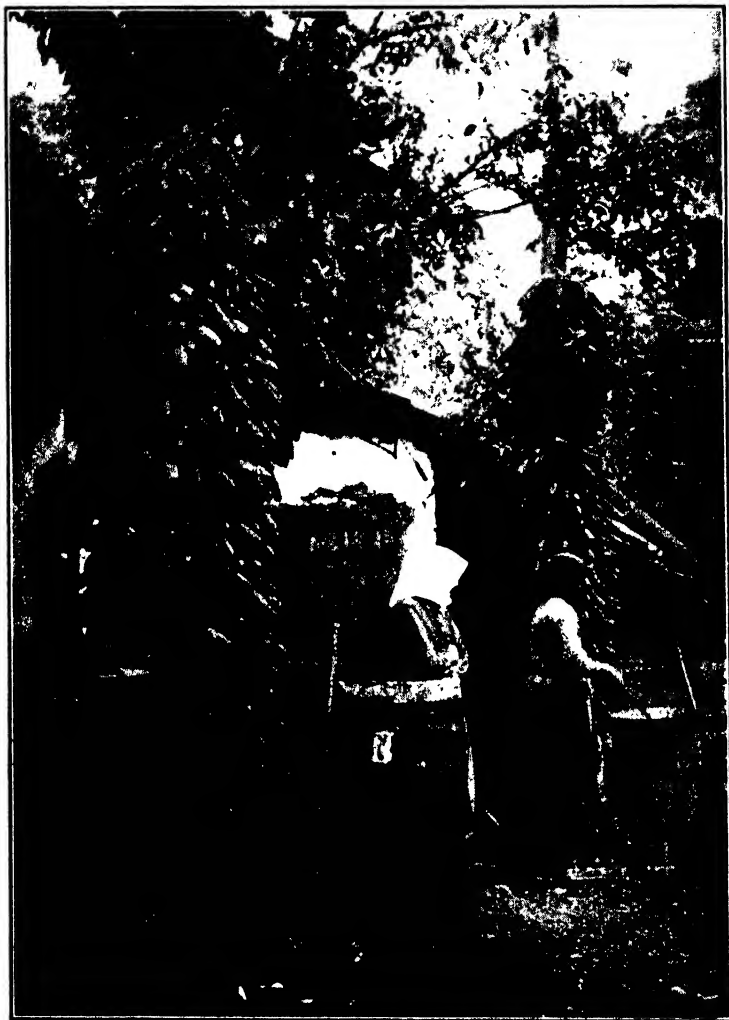
Cereals (maize, wheat and barley), oil and timber together account for more than 90 per cent. of the exports of Romania. Most of the trade is with Germany, Austria and the north Slav states to which grain is exported north-westwards along the Danube. Grain is also sent via the Black Sea to Western Europe, *e.g.* France and Britain. Practically the whole of the import list consists of various types of manufactured articles, viz. textiles, machinery, motor cars, leather goods, etc. Because of the lack of industrial development, few raw materials for manufacture are imported.

The Danube is an important trading highway especially in relation to the wheat trade. But navigation on the Danube is restricted owing to the river being ice bound for three months each year. On the Romanian side the banks of the river are low and bordered by extensive swamps so that ports are difficult to construct and there are consequently few towns.

## **BULGARIA**

### **Position and Climate**

Bulgaria lies to the south of the lower Danube, and is one of the poorest countries of south-eastern Europe. In area it is nearly half the size of Great Britain but the total population is only about six millions (compare London with over eight million people). As a result of the Great War Bulgaria was deprived of much of her former territory. The loss of the



*E.N.A.*

**MAIZE DRYING ON A ROMANIAN FARM.**

Note the cobs of maize which are fastened to long poles. When dry the maize is stored both for human consumption and for the feeding of animals.

Aegean coastlands with their direct outlet to the Mediterranean was, and still is, bitterly resented. Special facilities have been granted for trade through Dedeagach, the port at the mouth of the River Maritza (Fig. 77).

Climatically Bulgaria is transitional between the Mediterranean and continental types. In the south of the country especially, modified Mediterranean conditions prevail as is shown by the winter temperatures (40°F. as compared with 15°F. in Romania) and by the large percentage of winter rainfall (20 inches in winter out of an annual total of 28 inches). The southern valleys of Bulgaria are sheltered from the continental influence of Russia by the Balkan Mountains. In contrast, Sofia in the north-west of Bulgaria, has more continental conditions with a summer maximum of rainfall and much colder winters.

### Natural Divisions

Bulgaria falls into three distinct regions (Fig. 77)—

- (1) The Balkan Mountains.
- (2) Central Lowland.
- (3) The Rhodope Mountains.

(1) **THE BALKAN MOUNTAINS.**—This highland region is a broad limestone plateau rising to over 8,000 feet and extending west to east through the northern half of the country. Structurally it is part of the Alpine system of south Europe. It is crossed by deep gorge like valleys such as the Shipka Pass and the Isker Defile which is followed by a railway linking Sofia with the Danube at Nikopoli.

In the valleys of the northern slopes agriculture is the chief occupation and, as in the neighbouring country of Romania, the chief crops are wheat, maize and barley. On the grasslands of the plateau sheep are reared. On the Bulgarian side of the Danube the highland often approaches closely to the river so that there are excellent sites both for the development of river ports and for defence. This is a strong contrast to the low and swampy river banks of Romania.

(2) **THE CENTRAL LOWLAND.**—South of the Balkan Mountains is a lowland area occupied in its western half by the upper valley of the River Maritza. This lowland is the most fertile

and productive area in Bulgaria. Because of its favourable climatic conditions the agriculture of this lowland is very different from that of northern Bulgaria. Here are grown fruits, vines, tobacco, sugar beet, roses, and mulberry trees for feeding silkworms. The cultivation of roses in the vale of

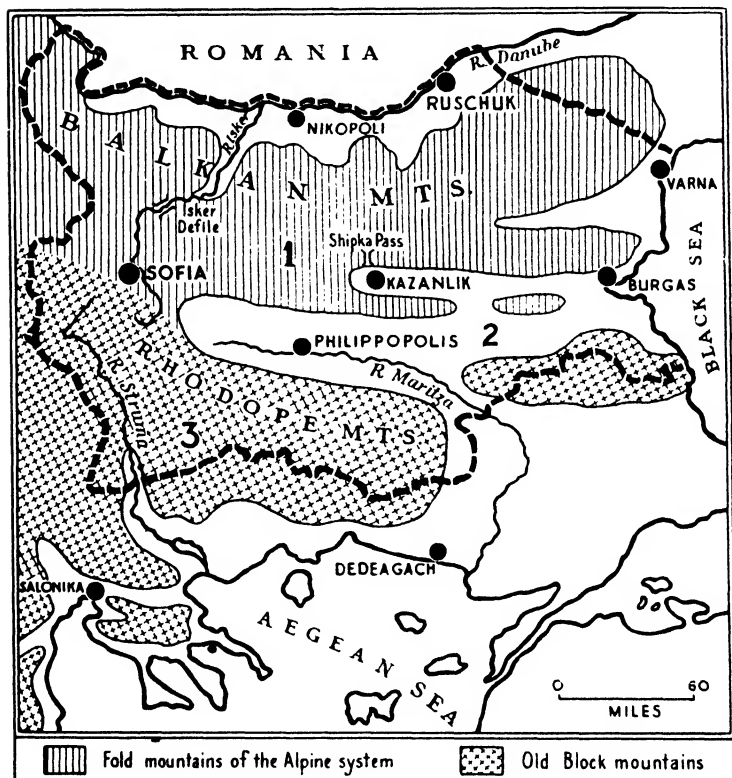


Fig. 77. BULGARIA.—1. The Balkan Mountains and the northern lowlands bordering the Danube. 2. The Central Lowlands. 3. South-Western Highlands.

Kazanlik is one of the most interesting features of Bulgarian agriculture. Attar of roses is distilled from the blooms and forms an important and valuable article of export.

*Burgas* on the Black Sea at the eastern end of the central lowland is the chief port of Bulgaria, though the Greek port

of Dedeagach, at the mouth of the Maritza, is the more natural outlet.

(3) THE RHODOPE MOUNTAINS.—In the south and west of Bulgaria is a mountainous area composed of ancient rocks and similar in structure to the highlands of Central Europe, e.g. the Bohemian plateau. This is the Macedonian Block or Rhodope Mountains. It rises to nearly 10,000 feet and is the most undeveloped and backward part of Bulgaria. This region was once well wooded but the timber reserves have been depleted by ruthless cutting. Agriculture is the chief occupation, but the methods are primitive. The people are a hardy mountaineer type and have little contact with the outside world.

*Sofia* (280,000), and *Philippopolis* (100,000) are the only large towns in Bulgaria. The capital, *Sofia*, is situated on the highland between the Morava and Maritza valleys, and controls routes (a) north-westward to Nish and Belgrade, (b) south-eastward along the Maritza valley to Constantinople, (c) north via the Isker Defile to the Danube and (d) south-westward over a pass in the Rhodope Mountains to the Struma valley and the Mediterranean.

### Transport and Trade

There is relatively little foreign trade. The chief exports are tobacco (which accounts for nearly half the total), eggs, maize, wheat, attar of roses and silk cocoons. The imports, as in other countries which are almost exclusively agricultural, consist of manufactured goods such as textiles and machinery and very few raw materials. The wheat and maize of the north of Bulgaria are exported chiefly via the river port, Ruschuk. The Danube, however, is frozen for three months so that Varna and Burgas on the Black Sea have considerable grain trade. One of the disadvantages of Varna and Burgas is that they are situated on a sea (the Black Sea) which is nearly landlocked. The outlet from this sea to the Mediterranean is controlled by another country, Turkey. In spite of this disadvantage Bulgaria makes little use of the facilities provided at the port of Dedeagach, which gives direct access to the Mediterranean.



*Bulgarian Legation.*

ROSE GARDENS IN BULGARIA.

In the Vale of Kazanlik there are extensive rose gardens. The blooms are collected for the distillation of attar of roses.

## ALBANIA

**General Characteristics**

Albania is a small state about one-third the size of Scotland. It is situated on the east side of the Adriatic between Yugoslavia and Greece. It is one of the most backward and undeveloped regions of Europe, and it is inhabited by a virile and somewhat pugnacious people.

The coastal plains have a Mediterranean climate, and olives, vines, mulberries and cereals are grown. Parts of the plains are unhealthy swamps similar in type to those of Italy. The interior is a region of wild, inaccessible mountains where communication is extremely difficult. The country contains no railways and the roads are generally poor. Tirana (30,000), the capital, is about as big as an English market town. Other towns of relative importance are Scutari, Durazzo, and Valona, but they all resemble straggling villages rather than urban centres.

**Italian Influence in Albania**

Albania, for many centuries under the nominal control of Turkey, regained its independence after the Balkan Wars of 1913. In 1918 the territory was claimed both by Yugoslavia and Greece, but its independence was maintained. By the raising of loans in Rome for the organisation and development of Albania, Italy acquired so much influence that the country was virtually an Italian protectorate. In April 1939, Italy invaded Albania, proclaimed her king the ruler of the country, and appointed a Lieutenant Governor, thereby acquiring complete control of the Adriatic Sea, and a possible base for further political and economic penetration into the Balkan peninsula.

## EUROPEAN TURKEY

**Turkish Power in Europe**

During the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries Turkish power was so great in south-eastern Europe that the Turkish Empire included all the Balkan peninsula, Romania and Hungary. In 1683 the northward advance of the Turks was checked near Vienna and from that date Turkish power in Europe began to wane. Throughout the nineteenth century

their European territory dwindled, and still more was lost as a result of the Balkan Wars of the early twentieth century. Lastly, as a result of the Great War, Turkey in Europe was limited to a small area (about half the size of Scotland) in the immediate hinterland of Constantinople (Istanbul). The importance of the territory lies in its strategic significance rather than in its economic value.

### Position and Strategic Importance

European Turkey lies between the River Maritza and the Black Sea. It is separated from Asiatic Turkey by the narrow straits called the Bosphorus, the Sea of Marmora, and the narrow Dardanelles. This narrow sea passage links the Mediterranean with the Black Sea.

*Istanbul* (700,000) on the north shore of the Bosphorus, has a unique position at the intersection of two great world routes:—

- (a) The sea route from Russia to the Mediterranean, and
- (b) The great overland route from north-west Europe to the Persian Gulf, (coincident in Europe with the Orient Express route, see Fig. 23). Once it was the capital of the Eastern Roman Empire, and later the capital of the Ottoman (Turkish) Empire, and the centre of the Mohammedan religion. It has been replaced by *Angora* (Ankara) as the capital of Turkey, and its commercial importance is much less than formerly, since much of the Turkish trade is now handled by Smyrna.

The European mainland of Turkey has been seriously depopulated by the emigration of Greek subjects to Macedonia. Adrianople (35,000) is much less important than formerly because of the poor development of the surrounding land. The European plains of Turkey are rather dry and largely composed of steppe-like country used for sheep and goat pasture. Agriculture is backward but small quantities of cereals and fruits are grown.



## CHAPTER XVI

### THE MEDITERRANEAN REGION

#### **Routes from the Mediterranean Sea**

The Mediterranean Sea, the largest inland sea in the world, extends for over 2,000 miles from the Straits of Gibraltar eastward to Palestine. It falls naturally into two basins separated by a submarine ridge joining southern Italy and Tunisia. From this ridge rise the islands of Sicily and Malta, occupying an important strategic position between the two Mediterranean basins.

The western basin is surrounded on all sides by high mountains of the Alpine system and within it lie the Balearic Islands, Corsica and Sardinia. Routes from this basin occur where there are breaks in the mountain girdle, viz. (Fig. 78).

(1) The Straits of Gibraltar which link the Mediterranean with the Atlantic.

(2) The Gate of Carcassonne between the Pyrenees and the Central Plateau of France.

(3) The Rhone corridor from Marseilles to Northern Europe.

(4) The Bochetta pass behind Genoa leading to the northern plain of Italy and via the Alpine passes to northern and central Europe.

(5) The Straits of Messina and the Straits of Sicily leading to the eastern Mediterranean basin.

(6) The Alpine passes.

The eastern basin is bordered by mountains on all its sides except the south between Suez and Tunisia. The routes from this basin are—

(1) The Straits of Messina and the Straits of Sicily leading to the western basin.

(2) The Vardar-Morava valleys from Salonika to Belgrade.

(3) The Dardanelles, Sea of Marmora and Bosphorus linking the Mediterranean with the Black Sea.

(4) The Aleppo-Antioch route of northern Syria leading to Iraq and the Persian Gulf.

(5) The Suez Canal linking the Mediterranean with the Red Sea and Indian Ocean.

The latter is the most important outlet and forms part of one of the greatest trading routes of the world. Gibraltar, Malta and Port Said are the three "key" positions of the Mediterranean. The first two are strongly fortified British naval bases and all three are important coaling stations.

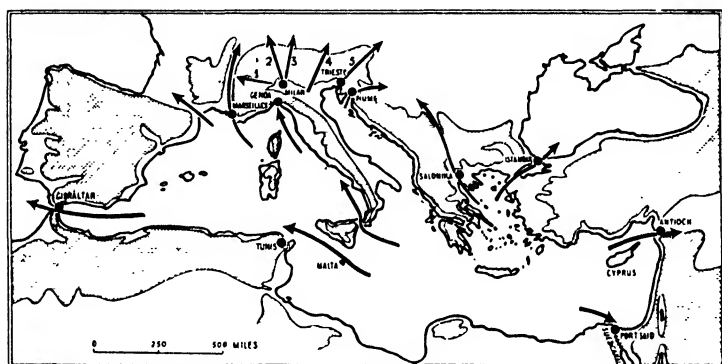


Fig. 78. THE PRINCIPAL NATURAL ROUTES FROM THE MEDITERRANEAN SEA.—1. Mount Cenis. 2. Simplon. 3. St. Gothard. 4. Brenner. 5. Semmering. Note the importance of the position of Cyprus in relation to the routes to the Indian Ocean: (a) via Antioch and Iraq, (b) via Port Said and the Red Sea.

### Historical Significance of the Mediterranean

The Mediterranean has played an important part in history, for around its shores the first great empires were established each in turn, playing its part in the cultural development of the world. Some of the great empires which at various periods dominated lands bordering the Mediterranean were the Egyptian, Phoenician, Persian, Assyrian, Greek and Roman empires. The Roman Empire at one time ruled all the lands bordering both the eastern and western Mediterranean which virtually became a "Roman Sea."

In the Middle Ages, the Mediterranean was the scene of the struggle between Christianity and Mohammedanism and

though the Moors were ultimately driven from Spain, Mohammedanism still flourishes along the southern and eastern shores. Immediately following the period of the Crusades the Mediterranean was the highway for trade with the East, spices, silks, etc., being brought overland from the Indian Ocean to the eastern Mediterranean. It was during this period that Venice and Genoa became great trading cities. From these ports Eastern merchandise was distributed to the lands of northern Europe. The coming of the Turks and consequent closing of the land routes to the Indian Ocean led to the voyages of the "Period of Discovery." The use of the Cape route was a severe blow to Mediterranean trade and for some centuries the Mediterranean was relatively unimportant as a trade route. The cutting of the Suez Canal in 1869 once more made the Mediterranean a great trade highway.

### **Mediterranean Sea compared with the Baltic Sea**

The Mediterranean Sea differs in many ways from the other great inland sea of Europe, viz. the Baltic.

(1) While both seas extend eastward along the margins of peninsular Europe, the Baltic Sea being further north is subject to much lower temperatures.

(2) Both seas have a very low tidal range due to their narrow connections with the open ocean. The tidal range of the Mediterranean is often less than one foot. The absence of tides and tidal currents to carry away silt results in the formation of deltas, viz. Ebro, Rhone, Po and Nile. There are, therefore, no important ports at the mouths of the rivers flowing into the Mediterranean Sea.

(3) Both seas have been important as trading centres (e.g. the Hansa trading towns of the Baltic). The Baltic Sea, however, is a cul-de-sac and the Mediterranean is a trading thoroughfare. The chief commodities of Baltic trade are flax, dairy produce, timber and wood products, but the trade of the Mediterranean is concerned with fruits, wine, grain and a great variety of products from the East, viz. tea, rice, silk, rubber, vegetable oils, etc.

(4) The Baltic Sea is fed by a larger number of rivers of constant flow. Thus the supply of fresh water is greater.

The Baltic, therefore, has a low salinity while the Mediterranean Sea is very salty. The relative freshness of the Baltic waters, coupled with its low winter temperatures, causes the Baltic to be icebound during the winter months (see page 97).

(5) Owing also, to the variations in salinity, surface currents of relatively fresh water (less dense) flow *out* of the Baltic to the more saline Atlantic. On the other hand surface currents flow *into* the Mediterranean from the Atlantic and the Black Sea because the water of the Atlantic Ocean and Black Sea are less salty than those of the Mediterranean.

(6) Whereas the Mediterranean is nearly encircled by high mountains the Baltic Sea is bordered by wide, low plains.

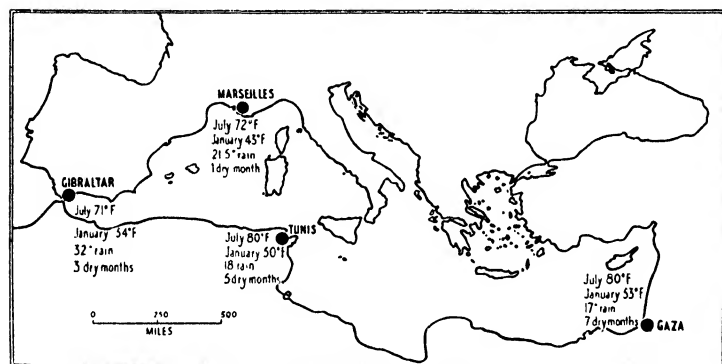


Fig. 79. CLIMATIC VARIATIONS IN THE MEDITERRANEAN BASIN.--In the figures given a dry month denotes one with less than one inch of rain.

## Climate

The lands surrounding the Mediterranean Sea all have such a characteristic climate that lands in other parts of the world with similar climatic conditions are said to have a Mediterranean climate. In general, the climatic conditions are hot summers (70°F. to 80°F.), warm winters (45°F., to 55°F.), sunny skies and about 25 inches of rain falling mainly in winter, Owing to the large extent of the Mediterranean Sea, however, there are many variations from the mean conditions, viz:—

(1) Temperatures increase from the northern shores southwards (e.g. Marseilles to Tunis).

(2) Summer temperatures increase and winter temperatures decrease with distance from the open Atlantic, *i.e.* from Gibraltar to Palestine.

(3) Annual rainfall decreases and the number of dry summer months increase from north to south and from west to east. Figures indicating these variations are shown in Fig. 79.

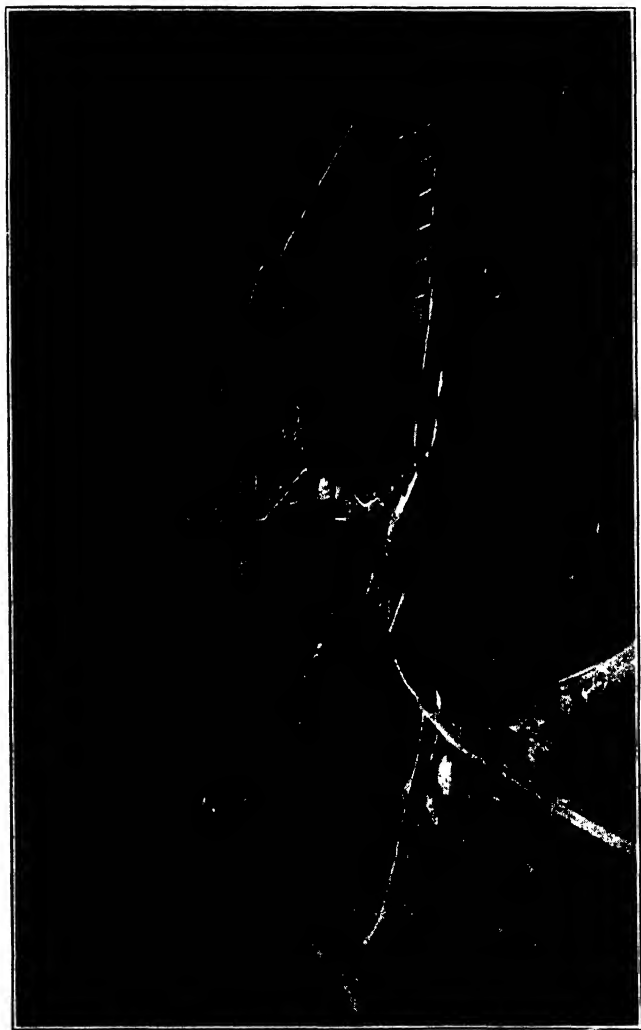
### British Interests in the Mediterranean Sea

The Mediterranean-Suez route is of fundamental importance as a link between Britain and the East, and especially as a sea route to India, East Africa and Australia. For this reason the British possessions of Gibraltar, Malta and Cyprus have great strategic significance (see Fig. 78).

Gibraltar in the extreme south of Iberia is a rocky peninsula separated from Spain by an uninhabited neutral zone. It is a strong naval base guarding the entrance to the Mediterranean from the Atlantic.

Malta, a small island situated between Sicily and Tunis guards the route between the western and eastern basins of the Mediterranean. Its chief town, Valletta, is situated on a ridge between two large natural harbours, and is an important naval base and coaling station.

Cyprus, in the eastern Mediterranean is within easy reach of Suez and is of special importance because of its relation to air routes to the East (*a*) via Antioch, Baghdad and Basra, and (*b*) via Cairo and Damascus. Although it has never been important as a naval base plans have been formulated for the establishment of a large air base on the island. The chief town is Nicosia.



E.N.A.

AERIAL VIEW OF GIBRALTAR.

Note the low land, the "Neutral" ground, in the foreground of the picture. The limestone rock rises steeply on the east to a typical "sierra crest." The western slope is more gentle and at its foot lies the town and the naval harbour, cut off from the Bay of Algeiras by breakwaters.

## CHAPTER XVII

### THE MEDITERRANEAN LANDS: (1) GREECE

#### **General Characteristics**

Greece is a country of mountains, peninsulas and islands. These islands, numbering some hundreds, are the tops of submerged mountain ranges which formerly linked Greece with Asia Minor. No part of the country is more than 80 miles from the sea so that from the earliest days of history Greece has been associated with the sea and with maritime activity. Even to-day the Greeks are sailors and traders rather than farmers, and nearly half the population live in cities.

Though the Greek empire was so illustrious in the past the political unit of modern Greece dates only from 1829 when the Turkish domination was overthrown. In early times Greek peoples and Greek culture spread to all the islands and shores of the Aegean Sea, and this distribution of the Greeks is still shown on an ethnographical map of Europe. As a result of the Great War, Greece regained the Macedonian coastlands of the north of the Aegean as far east as the River Maritza. The western coastlands of Asia Minor also became part of Greece, but as a result of a conflict between Turkey and Greece in 1922 the former country regained her lost territory and the Greek population was expelled.

#### **Natural Divisions**

Modern Greece comprises (Fig. 80)—

- (1) The peninsula.
- (2) The Macedonian coastlands.
- (3) The islands.

(1) **THE PENINSULA.**—In the northern half the Greek peninsula consists of high ranges which are structurally a continuation of the Alpine folds bordering the east of the Adriatic Sea. Like the mountains of Yugoslavia they are largely composed of limestone. The chief range is

known as the Pindus Mountains which form a central backbone rising to over 8,000 feet. On either side of the Pindus Mountains lesser ranges branch out to the east and west enclosing small river valleys and lowland areas,

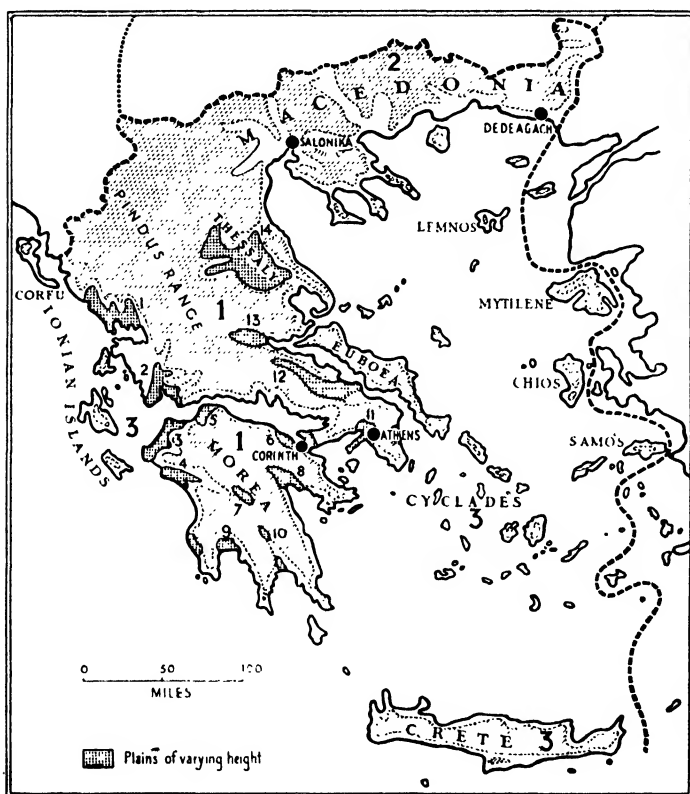


Fig. 80. NATURAL REGIONS OF GREECE.—1. The Peninsula. 2. Macedonia. 3. The Islands. PLAINS (of varying height): 1. Arta. 2. Aspropotamus. 3. Elis. 4. Olympia. 5. Achaea. 6. Corinth. 7. Arcadia. 8. Argos. 9. Messenia. 10. Sparta. 11. Athens. 12. Boeotia. 13. Thermopylae. 14. Thessaly.

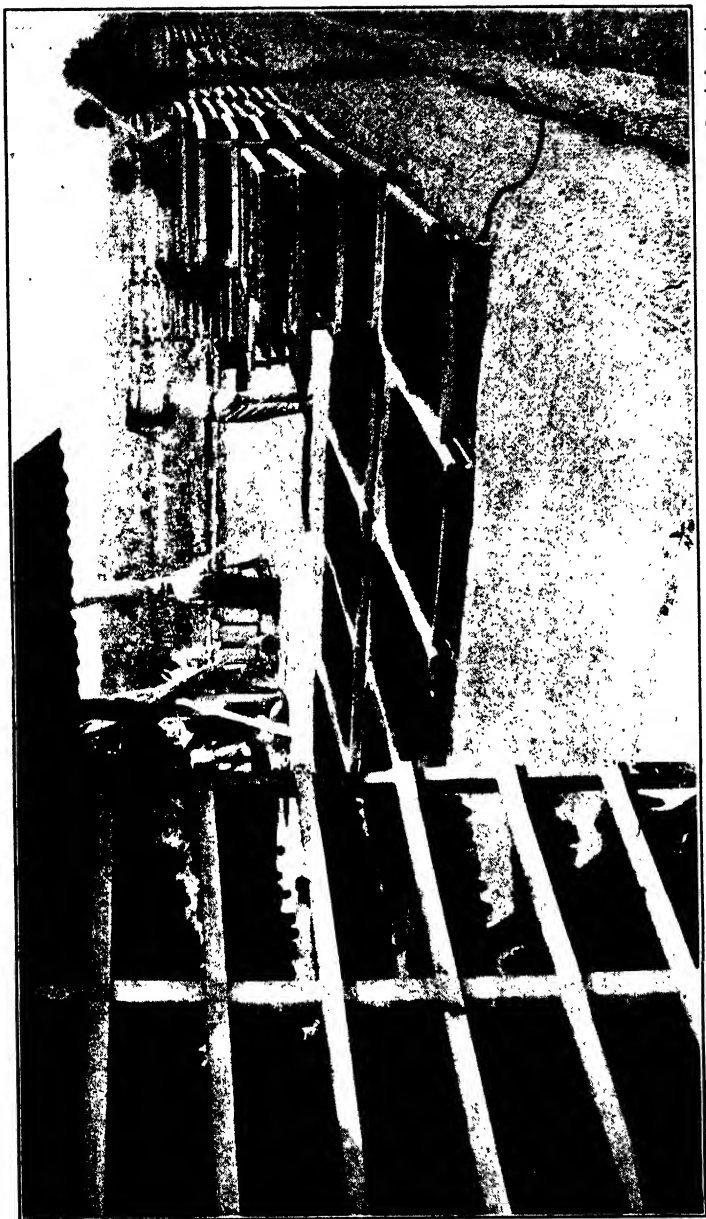
*e.g.* the plains of Thessaly. The southern half of the peninsula consists of other long peninsulas separated by deep gulfs and is bordered by elongated islands such as Euboea. Morea is almost separated from the mainland by the Gulf of



Corinth for the isthmus is only four miles wide. The Isthmus of Corinth is cut by the Corinth Canal which because of its narrowness (about 50 feet) can only be used by small vessels. The highlands of Greece were once heavily wooded, but extensive deforestation has resulted in rapid soil erosion and the formation of malarial swamps in the lowlands. The uplands are scantily peopled and used mainly for the grazing of herds of sheep and goats. Greece has more goats per square mile than any other country in the world. Where the small lowland valleys are cultivated the principal crops are vine, olives, tobacco, and oranges. Small seedless grapes are grown, dried and exported as currants. Up to 1914 Greece had a virtual monopoly of the world's currant trade, but large quantities are now exported from California and Australia. Wine and olive oil are exported, but owing to the somewhat careless methods of preparation, do not always find a quick market. Thessaly, on the sheltered eastern side of the peninsula is the principal grain growing area. As in other Balkan countries yields are poor and methods of cultivation primitive. Even before the great influx of Greek refugees (about 1,500,000) from Turkish and Bulgarian lands, Greece had to import about half the cereals she used. The chief towns are situated in the lowland valleys, separated from one another by mountain barriers. Many of these towns, such as Sparta, Argos and Larissa were the leading cities of ancient Greece. They are rarely situated on the coast but like Athens, the capital, stand some few miles inland, out of danger of attack from the sea and away from the unhealthy swamps of the river mouths.

Piraeus is the port of Athens, and Patras on the Gulf of Corinth is largely concerned with the currant trade.

(2) THE MACEDONIAN COASTLANDS.—The Macedonian section of Greece consists of a number of small coastal plains backed by highlands composed of ancient rocks. The highlands are used for the grazing of sheep and goats, while the lowlands, though formerly marshy and unhealthy, are now drained and cultivated. This region, until recently, was in a very backward state, chiefly because of its political vicissitudes, and the uncertainty as to its future. Since the Great War many Greek refugees from Turkey and Bulgaria have settled



*Greek Legation.*

SHADE AND SUN DRYING OF CURRANTS, PYRGOS, GREECE.

here, and it is now the most densely populated area in Greece. Grapes, olives, wheat and even cotton and rice are grown, but the chief crop is tobacco which is to-day the most important article of export. The region is also of great importance in relation to routes, Salonika, a free port, controls the Vardar-Maritza route to Belgrade and the Danube lands. Dedeagach, near the mouth of the river Maritza, is the natural outlet for Bulgaria.

(3) THE ISLANDS.—The islands of Greece include the Ionian Islands off the west coast; Crete; and most of the islands of the Aegean Sea, except the Sporades, which are Italian, and Imbros, which is Turkish.

Crete, a long narrow mountainous island, is part of the Alpine fold which links Greece and Asia Minor. The products are typically those of a Mediterranean area, viz. olives, vine, etc. The chief towns, Candia and Canea, are on the more indented northern coast. The regular south coast provides few good harbours though it is more sheltered from the north winds.

The Cyclades, in contrast to the limestone formation of many of the other islands, are composed of ancient crystalline rock, (cf. Corsica and Sardinia in the Western Mediterranean). The soil is poor and thin but wherever possible crops are raised on the terraced south-facing slopes.

The Ionian islands, part of a submerged outer range of limestone mountains, include Corfu, Cephalonia and Zante. Many of the people are fishermen, but as on the other islands, vines, olives and oranges are cultivated on south-facing slopes.

Although Greece has not yet developed a tourist industry comparable with that of Switzerland, her wealth of historic remains and associations is attracting an increasing number of tourists annually.

## CHAPTER XVIII

### THE MEDITERRANEAN LANDS: (2) ITALY

#### **Late Development of Italy**

From the point of view of historical development Italy is an old country, illustrious as the central realm of the Roman Empire. But after the fall of Rome, the Italian peninsula was for many centuries divided into a number of small states. It was not until the latter half of the nineteenth century that the political unit now known as Italy came into being.

To this late start Italy owes many of her present difficulties. Other European powers, first in the field, colonised the most valuable portions of the "new lands." Italy had, perforce, to be contented with the semi-arid and relatively unproductive lands of Eritrea, Somaliland and Tripoli, which were acquired early this century. But during the last decade the population of Italy has been increasing at the rate of nearly half a million per annum. In view of the large percentage of mountain land and unhealthy swamp in Italy, the country is overpopulated (344 per square mile). Lacking suitable colonial areas for expansion the Italian peoples have been emigrating in large numbers to most of the countries of South America, especially south Brazil and Argentina, and to Tunis, Egypt, and California. In late years, however, Italy has adopted a bold foreign policy in an attempt to gain overseas territory for colonisation, for the supply of raw materials and food, and as a market for surplus manufactures.

#### **Natural Divisions**

Italy may be considered as consisting of three major divisions viz: (Fig. 81)—

(I) The Northern Plains and the mountains which encircle them on all sides except the east where the plain is open to the Adriatic Sea.

(II) The long narrow peninsula which extends far southward into the Mediterranean. The Apennines, which form the backbone of this peninsula are part of the Alpine mountain

system of Southern Europe, and link the Alps with the mountains of Sicily and the Atlas mountains of North Africa.

(III) The islands, the chief of which are Sicily and Sardinia.

### Climate

The peninsular and insular sections of Italy have a climate which is typical of all Mediterranean lands, viz. very hot



Fig. 81. THE NATURAL DIVISIONS OF ITALY.—I. Northern Italy. II. Peninsular Italy. III. Insular Italy.

summers, warm winters, sunny skies, and moderate rainfall, the greater part of which falls in the winter months, the summer often being a period of drought.

The northern plains, shut off from sea influences by the encircling mountains have a climate which is not Mediterranean in type, but which has many continental characteristics, viz.

colder winters, greater extremes of temperature and a far greater proportion of the annual rainfall during the summer months (Fig. 82). The following figures show the salient climatic differences between continental and peninsular Italy.

	July	Jan.	Annual Range.	Total Rainfall.	Winter Rainfall.	Summer Rainfall.
Naples ..	76°F.	47°F.	29°F.	33"	23"	10"
Milan ..	75°F.	32°F.	43°F.	40"	19"	21"



Fig. 82. ITALY. CLIMATIC REGIONS.

Milan some 300 miles further north has a July temperature nearly as high as that of Naples, while the winters are 15°F. colder. Less than one-third of the total rainfall of Naples falls in the six summer months, while at Milan more rain falls during the six summer months than during the six winter months. One of the direct results of the heavier summer rainfall of the northern plains is the occurrence of rich pasture land, suitable

for the rearing of cattle. Typical Mediterranean areas, owing to the dry summer conditions, are characterised by an absence of good cattle pasture and are therefore generally more important for the rearing of sheep and goats.

### **The Northern Plains: Physical Features**

The northern lowland of Italy is an alluvial plain, drained by the river Po, and its tributaries. Originally this region was a continuation of the Adriatic Sea, and the plain was formed by the deposition of sediment brought down by the swift Alpine streams. This great lowland is still being extended eastward, for it has been estimated that new land is being added at the seaward end of the Po delta at the rate of nearly 400 acres per annum. Adria, now some twelve miles inland, was a seaport in Roman times. In its lower course the river has raised its bed above the level of the surrounding plain. This facilitates irrigation but the banks of the river have had to be strengthened to prevent flooding. The river Po lies in the southern half of the plain nearer to the Apennines than to the Alps. This is because the Alpine tributaries such as the Ticino, Adda and Mincio, are of greater volume and more swiftly flowing than the tributaries from the Apennines.

On the west and the north of the plain the Alps rise very steeply but on the south the Apennines have a more gentle gradient. In the northern mountains are a number of beautiful lakes, viz. Maggiore, Lugano, Como and Garda, some of which, like the lakes on the northern side of the Alps in Switzerland were formed by glacial action. Immediately to the south of the Alps are extensive areas of morainic hills which in places rise to nearly 2,000 feet (*e.g.* near Ivrea). Between these morainic heights and the River Po stretches a flat alluvial lowland.

### **Reasons for the High Development of Northern Plains**

The northern plains are the most highly developed and most densely peopled section of Italy. This is due to a number of factors, viz:—

(1) The fertility of the alluvial soil.

(2) The climatic conditions which are favourable for the cultivation of a large variety of crops.

(3) The ease of irrigation especially in the eastern half of the plain where the rainfall is least.

(4) The accessibility of the plain in spite of the mountain girdle, because of the number of passes through the mountains.

(5) The swift streams which have facilitated the development of abundant supplies of cheap electric power.

(6) The large supplies of cheap and efficient labour. ✓

### Agriculture in the Northern Plains

The first three factors enumerated above have helped to make the northern plains the richest agricultural region of the country. Agriculture is of the intensive type and land is often used for production of three crops side by side, viz. fruit trees, vines and vegetables, *i.e.* "three tier" culture. Several crops per year are obtained from much of the cultivated land.

This region produces all the rice grown in the country and nearly all the hemp (Fig. 83), over three-quarters of the silk, nearly three-quarters of the maize, almost half the wheat and wine and three-quarters of the cattle. Rice can be grown because of the hot summers and the abundant supplies of river water for irrigation. The rice crop is large enough to allow a surplus for export. Much of the maize is used as human food, and it also forms the basis of an extensive poultry rearing industry.

Because butter is little used in Mediterranean lands, the dairying industry is mainly concerned with the manufacture of cheese, viz., Gorgonzola and Parmesan. Wheat, used both for bread and macaroni, is a very important crop. Owing to more careful cultivation the yields per acre (22 bushels) in the northern plains are much higher than those (12 bushels) of Southern Italy. Though Italy devotes a greater proportion of land to wheat cultivation than any other

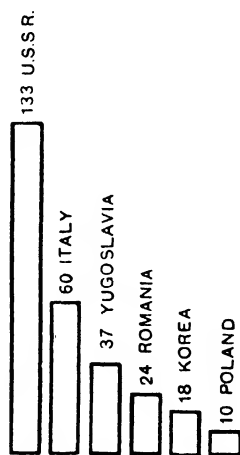


Fig. 83. WORLD PRODUCTION OF HEMP IN THOUSANDS OF TONS.





*Photo, E.N.I.T., London.*

#### RICE CULTIVATION IN NORTHERN ITALY.

The summer temperatures of Northern Italy are high enough to allow the cultivation of rice. Notice the flatness of the land; the water lying on the field; the use of bullocks as draught animals.

country (even including France) she only produces about three-quarters of her needs. The most important crop of Northern Italy is the vine (see Fig. 33). The vineyards are principally to the north of the River Po and on the sunny south-facing slopes of the northern mountains. Some wine is exported to France, but in general the quality of Italian wines is not sufficiently high to enable them to compete with



Fig. 84. DISTRIBUTION OF PRINCIPAL AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTS.

the French wines in the world markets. Mulberry trees, the leaves of which are used for feeding silkworms, are also grown most extensively on the south-facing hill slopes, especially in the region between Lakes Maggiore and Garda. Italy produces 90 per cent. of the silk of Europe, and this is due not only to the suitability of the climate for mulberry production, but largely to the abundance of cheap labour needed for the reeling and throwing of the silk.

It should be particularly noted that olives are not cultivated in the northern plains. The olive is the most typical of all Mediterranean products, and, as already noted, the climate of the northern plains is not Mediterranean in type, having winters too cold and summers too wet for olive cultivation. (Fig. 84.)

### Industry in the Northern Plains

Not only are the northern plains a region of intensive agricultural development but they are the most highly indus-

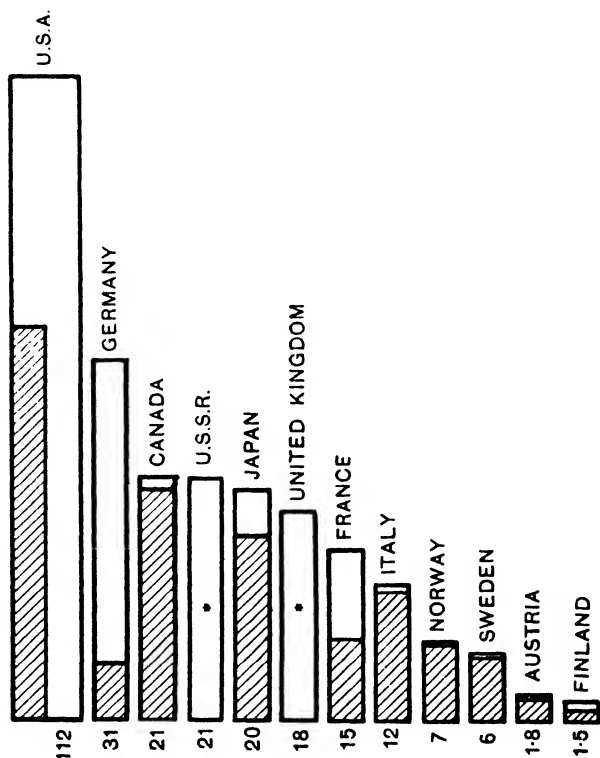


Fig. 85. PRODUCTION ELECTRICITY, 1934.—The height of the columns and figures represents the total amount of electricity produced (in thousands of millions of kilowatt hours). The shaded portions denote the proportion of hydro-electricity to the total output. It should be noted that Italy is the greatest producer of hydro-electricity in Europe.

\*Figures for hydro-electricity not available.

trialised region of Italy. Italy is poor in minerals, with little coal or iron. Her chief coal deposits are in Istria, a province acquired from Austria after the Great War. This coal is not good coking coal and of little value for metallurgical industries. There are small deposits of iron-ore in Tuscany and Elba but the total output is only  $\frac{1}{10}$  of that of France, and  $\frac{1}{15}$  of that of Britain. Italy, then, is without adequate supplies of the two basic fundamentals of industrial development, and her progress in this direction has been in the face of formidable obstacles. Her manufactures must be based on imported raw materials (except for hemp and silk) but she has the two great advantages of an abundance of cheap and highly skilled labour, and unique facilities for the generation of hydro-electric power (Fig. 85).

Her exceptional advantages with regard to the generation of electricity are due to:—

- (1) The steep gradient and swift flowing streams of the Alps.
- (2) The evenly distributed and heavy rainfall of the Alpine zone, which maintains the volume and steady flow of the streams.

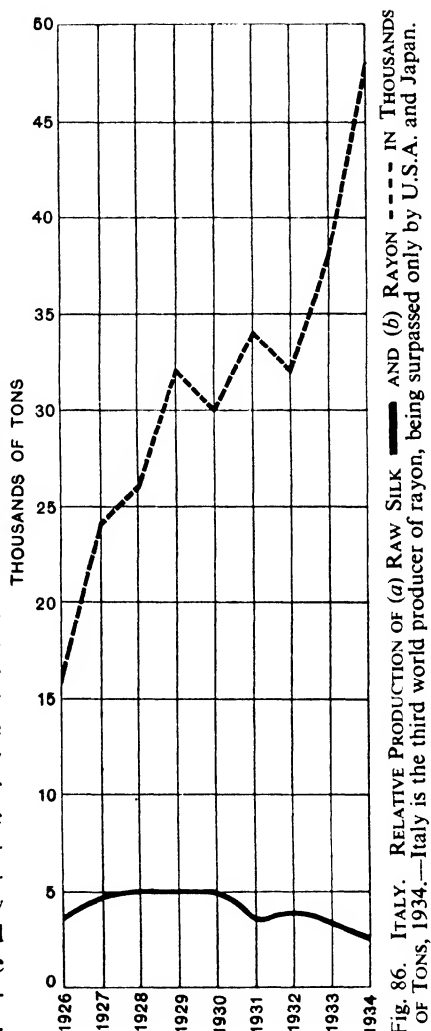


Fig. 86. ITALY. RELATIVE PRODUCTION OF (a) RAW SILK AND (b) RAYON. — IN THOUSANDS OF TONS, 1934. — Italy is the third world producer of rayon, being surpassed only by U.S.A. and Japan.

(3) The lakes which act as reservoirs and also help to regulate the flow.

Italy has the largest output of hydro-electric power in Europe and eighty per cent. of this power is developed in the northern plains, especially to the north of Milan and the west of Turin.

Of the industries of the northern plain the manufacture of textiles ranks first and engineering second. The silk industry, for which Italy ranks first in Europe, is centred principally around Milan; Turin, Como, Bergamo and Verona are other centres. In recent years the manufacture of rayon has increased with phenomenal rapidity and the output is now nine times as great as that of pure silk, Italy ranking first in Europe, and third in the world for rayon manufacture (Fig. 86). Whereas the pure silk industry is based on Italian supplies of silk, the rayon industry necessitates the importation of raw materials from Scandinavia and the countries of Central Europe. One type of rayon manufacture entails the use of sulphuric acid and for this the Sicilian supplies of sulphur are important. Other branches of the textile industry are the manufacture of cotton goods (Briella) and woollen goods (Brescia) for both of which the bulk of the raw materials must be imported. The cultivation of hemp on the northern plains has given rise to a hemp industry and also to associated jute manufactures.

Metallurgical industries and engineering are also important in the cities of the northern plain. Turin, world famed for the manufacture of motor cars, is an Italian "Detroit."

### **Towns of the Northern Plain**

The great towns of the northern plain were important long before the period of industrial development, and grew up primarily as trading centres. Thus they are situated where they can control routes across the mountains to northern Europe. Because of its liability to floods the lower course of the Po offered few attractive sites for settlement in the past, hence the largest cities are situated away from the river and are generally situated where plain and mountain meet, e.g. Turin, Milan, Brescia, Verona, Bologna, and Parma.

*Milan* (1,000,000) is the greatest city of the northern plain and the second city of Italy (Fig. 87). It has important textile and engineering industries. As the "middle city of the plain" (*Mediolaneum*) it commands routes:—

(a) Northwards across the Alps, via (1) the Toce valley and the St. Gothard route, (2) The Ticino valley and the Simplon route.

(b) Eastwards along the northern edge of the plain via Verona and Padua to Venice.

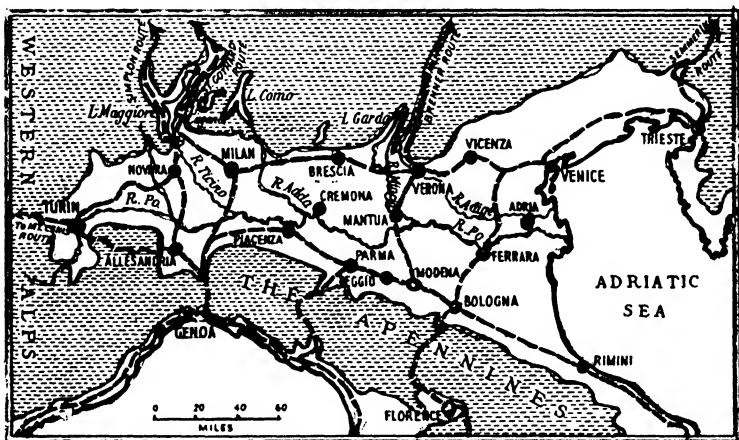


Fig. 87. THE CHIEF TOWNS AND ROUTES OF NORTHERN ITALY.—Note the three lines of towns: (a) Turin to Trieste along the north of the plain. (b) Turin to Rimini along the south of the plain. (c) The towns near the R. Po. Special attention should be paid to the positions of Milan, Turin, Genoa, Verona, and Bologna as route centres.

(c) Southward across the plains and via the Col del Altare to Genoa and the Mediterranean.

(d) Westward via Turin and the Mt. Cenis route to Southern France.

*Turin* (600,000) is the western gateway of the plain. Situated on the River Dora Riparia, it controls the Mt. Cenis route across the Western Alps (Fig. 87). From it diverge two great east trending routes:—

(1) The route along the northern edge of the plain via Milan and Verona to Venice.

(2) The route along the southern edge of the plain parallel to the Apennines. This railway route is parallel to the route of the Roman road known as the Aemilian way and passes through Parma and Bologna. The two latter towns are situated where they command easy passes southwards across the Apennines.

*Venice* (260,000), was formerly one of the most important trading cities of the world. It lies to the north of the Po delta and occupies over 100 islands linked by 350 bridges. The original site was well suited for defence, and there, nearly a thousand years ago, at the time of the Hun invasions, a group of refugees settled. They became fishermen and traders. For many centuries Venice was a great entrepôt. Here were assembled the rich products of the East brought overland from the Indian Ocean to the Eastern Mediterranean. From Venice these goods were distributed to Northern Europe, via Verona, the valley of the River Adige, and the Brenner Pass. The importance of Venice declined with the discovery of the "Cape" route, and the opening of the Suez Canal failed to restore it because of the high costs of overland transport. To-day Venice is a commercial backwater, but ranks high as a city of great beauty and historic interest.

*Trieste*, (250,000) is situated at the extreme eastern end of the plain. Until 1914 it was an Austrian port (Fig. 87). It controls the important route across the eastern Alps:—

(a) To Villach and thence (1) northwards to South Germany and (2) north-eastwards via the Semmering Pass to Vienna.

(b) Eastwards to the Save valley and the plains of the Middle Danube, *i.e.* to Budapest and Belgrade.

*Fiume*, on the eastern side of the Istrian peninsula was, before the War, the chief port of Hungary, but it is now suffering from the competition of Split (Spalato), the port which Yugoslavia is rapidly developing further south. Both Trieste and Fiume, in accordance with the Peace Treaties, provide special facilities for the overseas trade of the "succession" countries of Central Europe. They are ports for Southern Germany, Hungary, and Yugoslavia rather than for Italy.

*Genoa*, (600,000) is not situated on the northern plain, but it is, more than Venice, Trieste, or Fiume, the great port of,

and natural overseas gateway to, the plain (Fig. 87). It is situated on the narrow coastal plain between the Ligurian Apennines and the sea. Behind it the Apennines are not only lower, and narrower than elsewhere but are broken by two easy passes, the Col del Altare, and the Bochetta Pass. Like Venice it was a great trading city and entrepôt of the Middle Ages, and declined in importance when trade to the East was diverted via the Cape route. But unlike Venice, it enjoyed a great revival of prosperity with the opening of the Suez Canal. All the raw materials and fuel (cotton, wool, timber, ores, coal and oil) for the industries of the northern plains are imported through Genoa. The export of manufactured goods, however, is largely northwards via the Alpine passes, so that the import trade of Genoa is nearly six times as large as the export trade, which consists of articles of relatively small bulk, viz., fruit, wine, etc.

### **Peninsular Italy: Contrasted with Northern Italy**

In very many ways Peninsular Italy contrasts sharply with Northern Italy.

(1) Northern Italy consists of an extensive plain, nearly surrounded by high mountains, but Peninsular Italy consists of high mountains with fringing plains.

(2) Southern Italy has a climate which is Mediterranean in type while in Northern Italy the climate is more continental in type (see page 207).

(3) Southern Italy is far less productive. Until the recent reclamation schemes were put into operation much of the lowland was unhealthy malarial swamp. Yields per acre are less than in the northern plains for the methods of farming are often extremely primitive, wooden ploughs, and yokes of oxen still being used.

Whereas the farms of the north are small and intensively cultivated by peasant proprietors, much of Southern Italy is still in large estates on which the peasants work as labourers.

(4) In addition to cereals and vine, which are also extensively cultivated in the north, the peninsula of Italy grows large quantities of olives, oranges, and lemons, fruits which are typical of Mediterranean conditions and which are adapted



to withstand the dry heat of summer. Because of the summer drought pastures are brown and parched during the hot season. Cattle rearing is therefore of less importance than in Northern Italy, and the rearing of sheep and goats is a characteristic occupation of the southern upland areas.

(5) Southern Italy lies outside the industrial development of Northern Italy. Such industries as do exist are those based on agricultural products such as the manufacture of olive oil, wine, macaroni, and the drying of fruits. In Southern Italy there has been far less progress in the generation of hydro-electricity for the demand has not been so great as in the north. Also the mountains are lower, the streams less swift and less constant in volume, owing to the summer drought and the absence of lakes. In spite of these difficulties many schemes are now in operation especially in the regions round Rome and Naples, and it is hoped that electricity will be used more extensively in agricultural industries and in the work of draining the swampy lowlands.

(6) Though Southern Italy is much less densely populated than Northern Italy (see Fig. 23) it is because of its lack of resources, less able to support its inhabitants. Hence the peasants of Southern Italy are generally poorer and more backward and illiterate than the people of the north. Thirty years ago, before the industrialisation of the northern plains the majority of Italian emigrants were from that region, but to-day most Italian emigrants are natives of Southern Italy.

### **Divisions of Peninsular Italy**

Peninsular Italy may be divided into three sections:—(see Fig. 81)—

- (1) The Apennines.
- (2) The western lowlands extending from the River Arno to Naples.
- (3) The south-eastern lowlands of the “heel” of Italy, viz. Apulia.

### **The Apennines**

The Apennines are part of the Alpine system of fold mountains. They extend throughout the whole length of the peninsula, swinging in a great arc from Genoa to the

“toe” of Italy. The lowlands of the peninsula fall into two groups, viz. :—

(1) The lowlands and river valleys (*e.g.* Arno, Tiber) within the mountain arc and on its western side.

(2) The Apulian lowlands on the south-eastern side of the mountains.

The Northern Apennines, extending from the longitude of Genoa to the latitude of Ancona, and known as the Ligurian and Etruscan Apennines, are composed of recent rocks, and are an example of “very young” fold mountains, where earthquakes are of common occurrence. Small explosive eruptions, the emission of gases, and the prevalence of landslides owing to the instability of the rock structure make these mountains in places difficult to cross. The inhabitants generally avoid the valleys and live on higher land which is a region of rolling hills covered with forests and pasture.

The Central Apennines are a region of steep picturesque limestone heights dissected by steep sided gorges. Here is the highest and widest portion of the Apennines, the Gran Sasso d'Italia, rising to over 9,000 feet. It is a poor region, inhabited by peasant farmers and shepherds. The region forms a difficult barrier between the Tiber lowlands and the east coast.

The Southern Apennines are more broken and less difficult to cross. The first great Roman Road, the Appian Way, crossed the peninsula in this region from Rome to Taranto by means of the pass of Benevento. In the “toe” of Italy the mountains of Calabria are composed of ancient rocks and granites, but the district is very much faulted and particularly liable to earthquakes. Much of the Southern Apennines are covered with forests of beech and chestnut, but in the valleys, olives, oranges and lemons, are grown.

The Apennines are not rich in minerals. In the north near Carrara are marble quarries. This marble, because of its purity is highly prized for sculptural work.

### **The Western Lowlands**

To the west of the Apennines lies a region of varied relief which includes:—

(a) The Italian Riviera.

(b) The Arno plains.

(c) The Tiber plains.

(d) The plains around Naples.

(a) THE ITALIAN RIVIERA.—Extending from the French frontier to Spezia is a narrow coastal plain backed by beautiful mountains, a region of holiday resorts known as the Italian Riviera.

(b) THE ARNO PLAINS.—South of Spezia the western coastal plains of Italy have for many centuries been unhealthy



*E.N.I.T.*

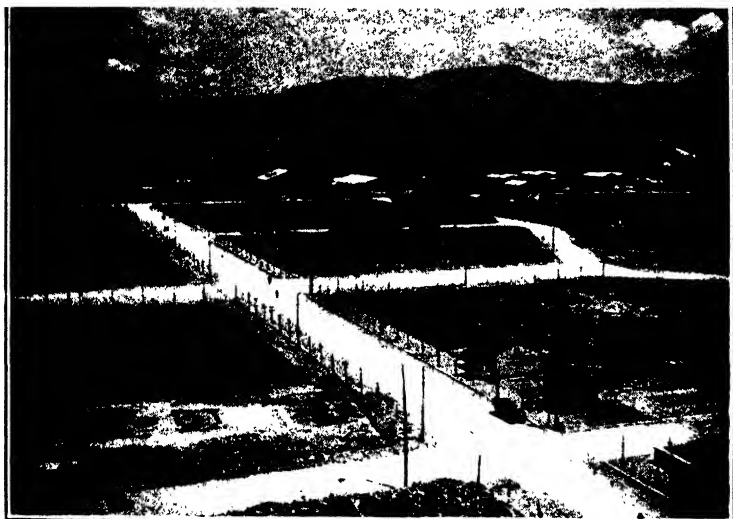
A PORTION OF THE PONTINE MARSHES BEFORE RECLAMATION.

Such marshes were not only useless for agricultural production, but were also the breeding grounds of the malarial mosquito.

malarial swamps, unfit for agriculture or settlement. They were the result of extensive deforestation in the mountains, rapid soil erosion and the consequent accumulation of silt at the mouths of the rivers. Modern schemes of development are concerned with the conservation and replanting of forests and the draining of the marshes. Thus large areas of valuable agricultural land will be reclaimed for the production of food for the rapidly increasing population. Except for the unhealthy coastal margins known as the Maremma, the valley of

the River Arno is one of the richest agricultural regions of peninsular Italy. It is especially important for olives, Lucca oil being world famous. In addition vines, cereals and vegetables are grown and the farms are extensively cultivated. The vines are used for the production of Chianti wines and the wheat straw is the basis of the straw plaiting industry of Leghorn.

Pisa, near the mouth of the Arno, was the original port but the mouth of the river has been choked with silt and Leghorn is now the chief port for the plain.



*E.N.I.T.*

**A PORTION OF THE PONTINE MARSHES AFTER RECLAMATION.**

In recent years the Italian Government has organised the draining of much of the useless marshland. This new agricultural land is a valuable resource to the rapidly increasing population of Italy.

*Florence* (Fig. 88) is the chief city of the Arno basin. Like the cities of the northern plain it originally developed as a route centre at a point where upland and lowland meet. Florence controls routes:—

(1) Northward across the Apennines via the La Futa pass to Bologna and the northern plains.

(2) Southward via the valleys of the Upper Arno and Tiber to Rome.

(3) Westward along the Arno plains to the sea.

Florence has important woollen industries based on the supply of wool from the flocks of the Apennines, but it is most famous as an intellectual centre and for the manufacture of "objets d'art." South of the Arno basin are the hills of Tuscany, one of the few districts in Italy with mineral wealth. Lignite is found near Florence, mercury near Mount Amiata, copper and manganese ores near Siena, and iron-ore near Terni. At Terni there are steel works and small engineering industries.

In these hills are many extinct volcanic cones, the craters of which are filled with deep lakes, e.g. Lake Bracciano.



Fig. 88. To show the relation of Rome, Naples, and Florence (a) to the lowland areas, (b) to natural routes.

(c) THE TIBER PLAIN.—The basin of the Tiber is much less productive than the Arno basin. Until recently few crops were grown and much of the land was only used as winter pasture for the sheep of the Apennines. In the dry summer the region was virtually an unproductive desert. Along the coastal fringe the malarial swamps

extend south-eastward to the Pontine marshes. Like the mouth of the Arno the mouth of the Tiber is silted up, the original port, Ostia, now being some five miles inland. That the coastal area is very scantily peopled is shown by the fact that there are only six villages in over a hundred miles along the coast to the south of Civita Vecchia.

In the centre of this relatively unproductive plain, known as the Campania, is Rome (1,100,000), the capital of modern Italy (Fig. 88) and one of the oldest cities in the world. Rome grew up around seven low hills in the Tiber plain. These

hills rose above the flood level, and so were suitable for defence. They were, moreover, healthier than the surrounding plains. Situated centrally in the peninsula and at the original limit of navigation of the Tiber, Rome was the natural focus of routes and from it, by virtue of the Roman system of road-building, the entire peninsula was dominated. Modern Rome is not an industrial nor commercial city, but essentially the political capital. Within Rome is the Vatican City, the centre of the Roman Catholic faith. For this latter reason Rome is not merely the capital of Italy and the Italian Empire, but is the "religious capital" of all Roman Catholic countries.

(d) THE PLAIN AROUND NAPLES.—The remaining plain of the western side of the peninsula is that around Naples, above which rises the well-known volcano, Vesuvius. To the north of Naples are the Phlegrean Fields, also a region of active vulcanism. The volcanic soils of the Neapolitan plains are famous for their fertility. Wheat, vines, oranges, and olives are cultivated, the fields and orchards even extending up the slopes of Vesuvius itself. In early times it was thought that Vesuvius was extinct, but in 79 A.D. it erupted and the Roman cities of Pompeii and Herculaneum were destroyed. Pompeii was buried under thick layers of volcanic ash and Herculaneum was overwhelmed by streams of hot mud about sixty feet deep. Vesuvius has erupted frequently since, but in spite of the danger of such eruptions and the repeated destruction of orchards and fields by streams of lava, this region, because of its fertility, is very densely populated (over 1,000 per square mile).

*Naples*, (870,000) on a beautiful bay, is the natural outlet of this productive region (Fig. 88). Because of the recent development of hydro-electricity and the abundant supplies of cheap labour, Naples is the chief industrial centre of peninsular Italy. In addition to engineering and shipbuilding, it has a number of industries based on agricultural products, viz. the manufacture of spaghetti and macaroni, wine and olive oil, and the canning and drying of fruit. Because there is no other good natural site for a port between Leghorn and Naples the latter city has become especially prosperous and ranks as the third city and second port of the country.

### The Eastern Plains

For a distance of over 150 miles south of Ancona, the eastern coastal plain of Italy is very narrow and contains few natural harbours. Numerous parallel streams drain the eastern slopes of the Apennines but they contain little water during the summer months. The whole region is relatively backward and undeveloped.

In the "heel" of Italy the lowland widens and agriculture is more important. Apulia is a low limestone plateau with a very porous soil except where clayey soils have accumulated in depressions. As it lies on the lee side of the Apennines the rainfall is less than on the western side of the peninsula. Owing to the uncertainty of the rainfall and the porous nature of the soil, the yields of the crops vary considerably from year to year. This drawback to agriculture is now being overcome by irrigation. More than 100 miles of aqueducts and over 1,000 miles of irrigation canals have been constructed to distribute water from the Apennines. Wheat is extensively cultivated and is of a particularly "hard" type, very suitable for the manufacture of macaroni. The yield per acre (12 bushels) is only half that of the northern plains.

Apulia produces more olives than any other district in the world, but the quality of the oil is not so high as that of the Arno basin. Vines, figs and almonds are also important crops. Because of the uncertain harvests the peasants are generally poor.

Brindisi, a port originally used by the Romans, is to-day the terminus of the overland route from Northern Europe and a port of embarkation for the East.

### The Islands

SICILY.—This, the largest island in the Mediterranean, occupies an important position between the eastern basins of that Sea. Structurally, it is a link between the Apennines of Italy and the Atlas Mountains of North Africa. Climatically too, it is a link between Italy and Africa for the northern portion of the island has a Mediterranean climate while the south experiences drier conditions typical of North Africa.

On the northern side of the island, facing Italy across the Tyrrhenian Sea, is a narrow coastal plain backed by

mountains. It is a region of fertile well-drained soils and has a genial climate. Olives, oranges, lemons and vines are extensively cultivated. This is the richest region of Sicily, both agriculturally and commercially. Palermo is the largest town and has considerable trade with the mainland.

In the north-east Sicily is separated from Italy by the narrow ( $2\frac{1}{2}$  miles) Straits of Messina. The straits were formed by faulting and the region is one especially liable to destructive earthquakes, such as that of 1908, when over 200,000 people perished, and Messina was destroyed. Dominating the eastern side of Sicily are the two volcanic masses of Mt. Lauro and Mt. Etna. The latter, (10,740 feet), is one of the largest active volcanoes of the world, and is the most southerly of a belt of active volcanoes extending northward through Stromboli and Vesuvius to Elba. Because of the great fertility of the soil the slopes of Etna are cultivated (cf. Vesuvius) up to the spring line at about 2,000 feet. Cereals and vines are grown and there are extensive orchards of orange, lemon, olive and almond trees. This is the most important area in Italy for the production of citrus fruits.

In sharp contrast to the productiveness of the slopes of Etna is the infertility of the marshy and malarial plain of Catania, which is comparable to the Roman Campania.

The chief town of the east coast is Syracuse, originally a Greek settlement. In early history when most of Sicily was a Greek colony the east side of the island was the most prosperous, but its importance has declined, while that of the north coast facing Italy has increased.

The south part of Sicily is a region of new rocks and unstable conditions and is similar to the Northern Apennines. Streams have cut deep gorges, landslides are frequent, and communications are consequently difficult.

Though fruits and cereals are cultivated in the more favoured areas, the general infertility of the soil and the low rainfall make this one of the poorest regions of Sicily. The small coastal towns are mainly engaged on the export of sulphur, of which Italy produces about 13 per cent. of the world's supply. Until the discovery of the rich sulphur deposits of Louisiana, which produce nearly 80 per cent. of the world's output, Italy was the leading country for the production of sulphur.



At one time Sicily cultivated considerable quantities of cotton and sugar cane but these crops have been unable to survive American competition.

An island of mountains, volcanoes, earthquakes, malarial swamps, and frequent drought, Sicily is, on the whole, one of the poorest parts of Italy, and it is overpopulated in relation to the present development of its resources.

**SARDINIA.**—Approximately the same size as Sicily, Sardinia has only about one-fifth of its population. It differs from the rest of Italy in that it is not part of the Alpine system, but is composed of blocks of ancient rocks similar to those of Corsica. Highest on the east side and sloping more gently to the west, Sardinia, as it were, turns its back on Italy.

Nine-tenths of Sardinia is mountainous and the plains, like those of Sicily, are infested with malaria, barren in summer and used as pasture in the winter. Throughout the island agricultural methods are primitive. The mountains are known to be highly mineralised, but except for small quantities of zinc and lead few minerals are worked. The forests and fisheries have not been exploited. In recent years a beginning has been made in the draining and reclamation of the marshes, the irrigation of areas liable to drought, and the generation of electricity. For this purpose a great reservoir has been constructed on the Terso River in the south-east of the island. The chief port of Sardinia is Cagliari on the south-west.

### **The Trade of Italy**

In view of the phenomenal increase in manufacturing industries especially in Northern Italy, and the shortage of coal, minerals, and raw materials, it is not surprising to find that the leading imports are cotton, ores, wool, mineral oil, coal and timber. In addition, food stuffs are imported to supplement home supplies. These include cereals and fish as well as tropical produce (*e.g.* sugar, coffee, tea, etc.) which cannot be grown in Italy.

The most important exports are:—

- (1) Fruit and vegetables.
- (2) Manufactured goods (cotton, silk and rayon, and motor cars).

(3) Goods derived from agriculture such as wine, olive oil, cheese, fruit essences.

(4) Minerals such as sulphur and marble.

The seven most important articles sent to Britain in order of value (1933) were lemons, artificial silk, canned vegetables, cheese, silk goods, almonds and raw silk. In return Britain sent to Italy, coal, machinery, woollen goods, motor cars, and coke.

## CHAPTER XIX

### THE MEDITERRANEAN LANDS: (3) SPAIN AND PORTUGAL

#### **Decline in Importance**

The Iberian peninsula comprises two political divisions, viz. Spain and Portugal.

In the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries Spain and Portugal were two of the most powerful states in Europe and were famous for their explorations, conquests and trade. To-day they rank as second-rate powers and while they both have a number of colonial areas in Africa they have lost their vast American possessions.

The decrease in importance may be due to a number of causes, viz:—

(a) In olden days Iberia was one of the chief sources of minerals in the known world. To-day these supplies are insignificant in relation to the modern demands of industry. Many of the richest mines are nearly exhausted and the same minerals can be obtained more cheaply elsewhere.

(b) While other powers were becoming industrialised, Spain, poor in coal resources, lacked the fuel to establish metallurgical industries. Even the iron deposits of the Cantabrians have rapidly diminished and the annual production is now less than two million tons.

(c) Small ships were adequate for the trade of the mediaeval period. The commodities (silk, spices, etc.) were not bulky and the total volume of trade was small compared with that of modern times. Many of the famous harbours of Spain have been silted up and harbour accommodation, is, with few exceptions, inadequate for modern shipping.

(d) The mountainous character of Spain makes internal communication difficult. In olden days when transport everywhere was slow, the natural disadvantages of Iberia were not so obvious. The difficulty of building modern roads and railways have been a drawback to the internal development of the country.

(e) Agriculturally, Iberia has suffered through the competition of other lands. At one time large quantities of wool and wheat were exported, but these commodities can now be obtained more cheaply from the Americas and Australasia. Spain still ranks first in the world for the production of cork, olive oil (Fig. 89) and oranges, but these commodities are insignificant in world commerce when compared with the immense volume of trade in such articles as wheat, wool, cotton, rubber, sugar, etc.

(f) Iberia was once the European terminal of the great world trading routes, but to-day sea traffic converges on north-west Europe. The Transatlantic routes to North America lie to the north of Iberia, the routes to South America pass well to the west and few of the large ships using the Suez route call at Iberian ports.

(g) In addition, human and social factors may be taken into account. The climate, generally, is not conducive to the maximum output of energy. Natural disadvantages and difficulties have not been faced and surmounted with that zeal and determination which is characteristic of the Dutch and the Danes. Much of the richest agricultural land was acquired by the Church and the aristocracy. The breaking up of large estates into small farms was one of the first aims of the Republican government.

The result of the Spanish Civil War (1936-39) and its effect on the future policy and development of the country yet remains to be seen.

### The Relief and Structure of Iberia

Structurally Iberia (Fig. 90) consists of:—

(1) A large plateau known as the Meseta which occupies most of the centre of the peninsula. Like the Central Plateau

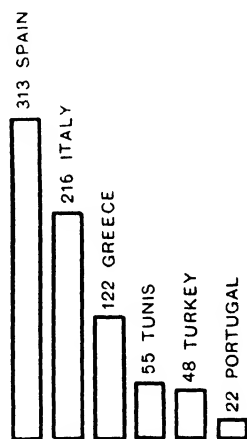


Fig. 89. WORLD PRODUCTION OF OLIVE OIL IN THOUSANDS OF TONS, 1934.

of France, it consists of ancient rocks and is part of the Hercynian mountain system of Central Europe. It is drained westward by four parallel streams, viz. Minho, Douro, Tagus, and Guadiana.

(2) To the north of the Meseta are the fold mountain ranges known as the Pyrenees and Cantabrians. These are part of the great Alpine mountain system of Southern Europe.

(3) In the south of Spain is another region of high fold

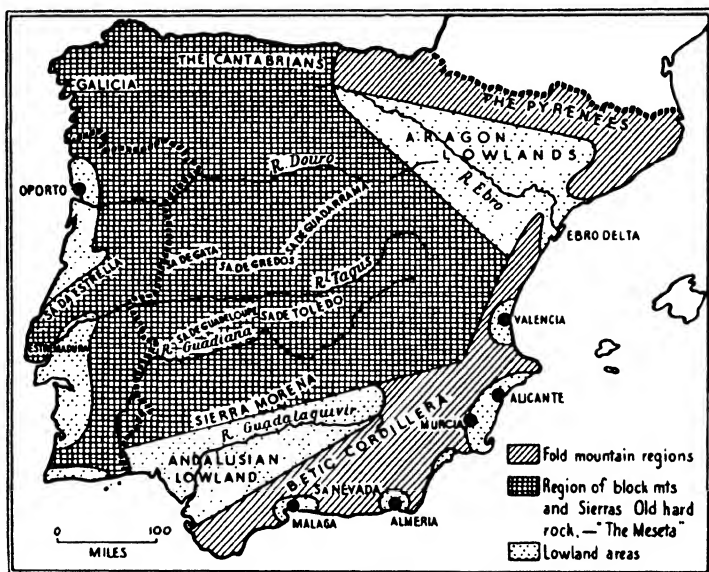


Fig. 90. SPAIN. STRUCTURAL DIVISIONS.

mountains which are also part of the Alpine system. These mountain ranges, which include the Sierra Nevada, extend from Gibraltar to Cape Nao and reappear again in the Balearic Islands.

(4) The lowlands which include:—

(a) The lowlands of Portugal lying to the west of the Meseta.

(b) The plains of Andalusia, lying between the southern fold mountains and the edge of the Meseta, and drained by the River Guadalquivir.

(c) The plains of Aragon, drained by the River Ebro, situated between the northern fold Mts. (the Pyrenees) and the eastern edge of the Meseta.

(d) The narrow coastal plains bordering the Mediterranean.

### The Climate of Iberia

Though Iberia is classified as a Mediterranean country there are parts of it, as in Italy, where the climatic conditions do not conform to the Mediterranean type.

It is possible to distinguish three major climatic provinces:— (Fig. 91).

(A) The northern mountains and coastal plain bordering the Bay of Biscay, which have a climate of the North-West European type.

(B) The Portuguese lowlands and the Mediterranean coastlands which have a climate of the Mediterranean type.

(C) The remainder of the peninsula, *i.e.* the interior, the climate of which has many continental characteristics. The chief climatic features of these three regions are illustrated by the following figures:—

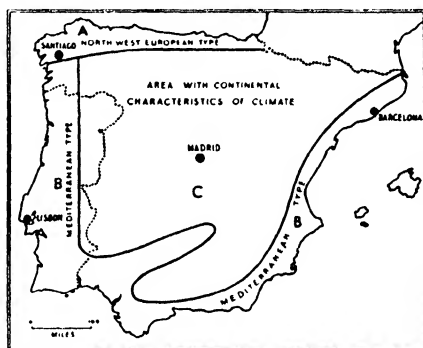


Fig. 91. IBERIAN PENINSULA. SIMPLE CLIMATIC DIVISIONS.

	July	Jan.	Range	Total Rain. ins.	Winter Rain. ins.	Summer Rain. ins.
(a) Santiago ...	66° F.	45° F.	21° F.	65	42	23
(b) Lisbon ...	70° F.	50° F.	20° F.	29	21	7
Barcelona	74° F.	46° F.	28° F.	21	11	10
(c) Madrid* ...	76° F.	40° F.	34° F.	17	9	8

\*(2149 ft. above sea level.)

(A) Santiago in north-west Spain lies in the track of the westerly winds from the Atlantic all the year round. Therefore its summers are cool, its winters mild, and the annual range of temperature is low (21°F.). The total rainfall is heavy (65 inches) and the rain falls throughout the year with most during the winter. The driest month, (July) has two inches of rain. Except for the slightly higher summer temperatures these climatic conditions correspond very closely to those of Brittany (page 43) or S.W. Ireland.

(B) The Mediterranean conditions are illustrated by Lisbon on the west, and Barcelona on the Mediterranean coast. Owing to maritime influence the annual range of temperature is still low but both summer and winter temperatures are higher than those of the northern region. In winter Lisbon is under the influence of the westerlies from the Atlantic and in that season the bulk of the rain (21 inches) falls. During the summer when winds blow from the east, Lisbon is on the lee side of the peninsula and has less rain. Barcelona, on the east coast, further from the Atlantic influences, has hotter summers and colder winters than Lisbon and the annual range of temperature is 28°F. as compared with 20°F. for Lisbon. During the winter, when the westerlies prevail, Barcelona is on the lee side of the peninsula and has less rainfall than Lisbon. While Barcelona has the winter maximum of rainfall typical of Mediterranean regions, a greater percentage of the annual rainfall occurs during the summer months, when easterly winds bring rain from the Mediterranean. The total rainfall of the Mediterranean coastal plains is everywhere much less than that of the Portuguese plains.

(C) The figures for Madrid illustrate the conditions for Central Iberia. Summer temperatures in spite of altitude (2,149 feet) are very high and winter temperatures are low. This is due to distance from the sea, and the compact nature of the peninsula. The rainfall is light, as throughout the plateau region. The percentage of the annual rainfall falling in the summer months is higher than in other parts of Iberia. The extremes of temperature and the large proportion of summer rain are due to continental influences (*e.g.* Northern Italy, page 206).

**Natural Divisions of Spain and Portugal**

From the considerations of relief and climate Iberia can be divided into the following natural divisions:—

**SPAIN**

1. The northern mountains.
2. The plateau.
3. The Andalusian plains.
4. The Aragon plains.
5. The Mediterranean borderlands.

**PORTUGAL—**

6. The Atlantic lowlands.

**The Northern Mountains**

The northern mountains fall into three groups, viz.: (a) the highlands of Galicia in the north-west, (b) the Cantabrians, (c) the Pyrenees.

(a) **GALICIA.**—Galicia is a region of ancient rocks comparable to those of Brittany and Cornwall. On the north the “grain” of the land is parallel to the coast and there are few good harbours. This, and the whole Biscayan coast of Spain, is an example of the Pacific type of coastline. On the west where the grain of the land is perpendicular to the coast are deep indentations. These drowned valleys are known as “rias” and this section of the coast is an example of the Atlantic type of coastline. The good harbours have helped to foster a love of the sea and the fishing industry is important. Large quantities of sardines are caught and fish canning is a thriving industry. Because of the mild climate and heavy rainfall the mountains are forested, and agriculture is centred in the valleys.

(b) **THE CANTABRIANS.**—The Cantabrians extend from Galicia to the French frontier. These mountains are high (6,000 feet) and are so difficult to cross that only two railways, one from Gijon and the other from Santander, have been constructed to link the coast with the interior. The narrow coastal plain, known as the Rasa, is important for cattle rearing, apple orchards and temperate cereals such as oats,



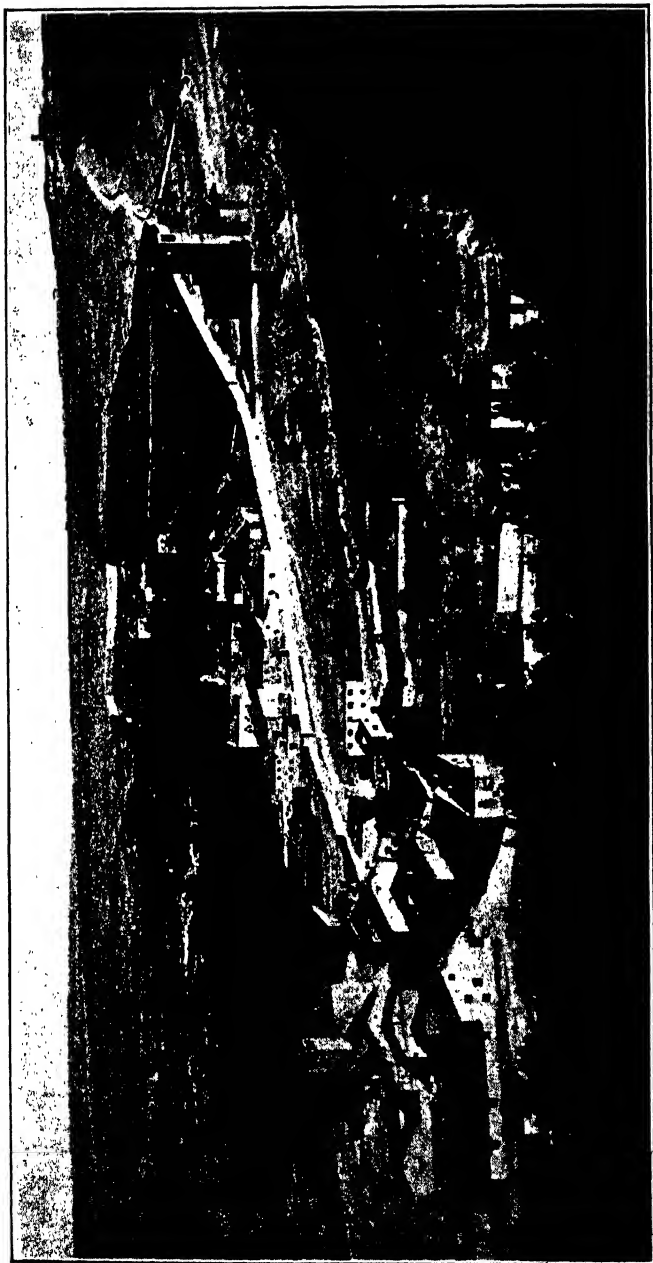
barley and wheat. The mountains are heavily forested with oak and beech and are an important source of timber and of cork. There are a variety of minerals which include coal, iron, manganese and cobalt in the district around Oviedo, and iron and zinc near Santander and Bilbao. The bulk of the iron-ore is exported to Britain, *e.g.* to Middlesbrough and South Wales, but the supplies are rapidly diminishing. Welsh coal, the return cargo of the ore-carrying steamers, has been used for the establishment of blast furnaces and metallurgical works at Bilbao.

At their eastern end the Cantabrians are lower and here are the Basque provinces. Because of its relatively low elevation this region is an important highway between France and Madrid. The Basque people are probably descended from the earliest inhabitants of Spain, and in racial type, character, customs and language they are markedly different from the rest of the inhabitants of Iberia.

(c) THE PYRENEES.—The Pyrenees, rising to over 11,000 feet extend from the Bay of Biscay to the Mediterranean and their crest is the frontier between Spain and France. These mountains are of the “Sierra” type with few low passes and consequently form a difficult barrier to cross. For centuries the two main routes between France and Spain lay round the eastern and western ends of the Pyrenees. The Pyrenees are actually more difficult to cross than the Alps because of the narrow gorge-like valleys and the steep sided cirques at their heads. Recently, however, (1928) the Pyrenees were tunnelled to provide a railway route between Saragossa and Pau in France. In the east the swift streams are used for the generation of electricity, which is conveyed to Barcelona for use in industry. Large areas on the southern slopes of the Pyrenees are composed of limestone and are used mainly as sheep pastures, but the northern slopes are often heavily forested.

### **The Spanish Plateau**

RELIEF.—The “core” of Spain is a plateau of ancient rocks known as the Meseta, which occupies about five-sixths of Spain. This tableland is tilted from east to west and is similar in structure to the Central Plateau of France. In the east it



VIEW FROM THE TERRACE OF THE ALCAZAR, SEGOVIA, SPAIN.

E.N.A.

This picture illustrates the extreme barrenness which is typical of vast areas of the Spanish Plateau. Notice the even skyline; the treelessness of the higher levels; the exposures of bare rock. Settlement and cultivation is limited to the lower land of the river valleys where water is available, while the dry plateau is mainly used for sheep-rearing.

risers steeply from the plains of Aragon to a height of over 7,000 feet. From this high eastern edge the Rivers Douro, Tagus and Guadiana flow eastward across the plateau to the lowlands of Portugal. Rapidly flowing, they have eroded deep trench-like valleys, and owing to their swiftness, variations in volume, and the depth of their beds below the general plateau level, they are of little value for navigation. They are in many ways a hindrance rather than a help to transport. Some of the valleys open out here and there into basins which are centres of irrigation and cultivation. In these basins are the principal towns and route centres.

Above the river gorges are gently sloping stretches of plateau, above which rise high ridges such as:—

(1) The Sierras de Guadarrama, Gredos, Gata and Estrella which separate the basin of the Douro and Tagus.

(2) The Sierras de Toledo and Guadeloupe between the basins of the Tagus and Guadiana.

CLIMATE, VEGETATION AND AGRICULTURE.—The plateau is everywhere a region of extreme temperatures and light rainfall, parts of New Castile in the south-east receiving less than 10 inches of rain annually. Madrid has the greatest seasonal extremes of temperature of any large city in Europe.

Because of the light rainfall there are few trees, except along the river valleys, or on the mountain ridges where the rainfall is heavier. But much of the original forest of the higher regions has been cleared, *e.g.* in the neighbourhood of Madrid. There has been no re-forestation so that rapid soil erosion has resulted. Much of the Meseta is grassy steppe, but in the drier portions of New Castile the grass gives way to a poor scrub vegetation which often presents the monotonous yellow-brown appearance characteristic of some desert lands (Fig. 92). The tough grass, known as alf-alfa or esparto grass, which will grow in semi-arid regions, is one of the most important products of the plateau. The percentage of cultivated land is low. The most productive areas are in Old Castile and Leon where the rainfall is less scanty and more dependable. Here the region around Valladolid is the chief granary of Spain where wheat and barley are extensively grown. These cereals are for the most part grown by dry-farming methods, *i.e.* the fields are allowed to lie fallow

periodically in order to permit the accumulation of ground water sufficient for the needs of the crops. The yields of wheat are not high (14 bushels per acre) and the total crop is insufficient for the requirements of the country, so that some wheat must be imported.

Vines are cultivated in the Douro valley and on the hill slopes of New Castile. Olives are grown on the hill slopes of the west of the plateau around the Tagus valley. There are a

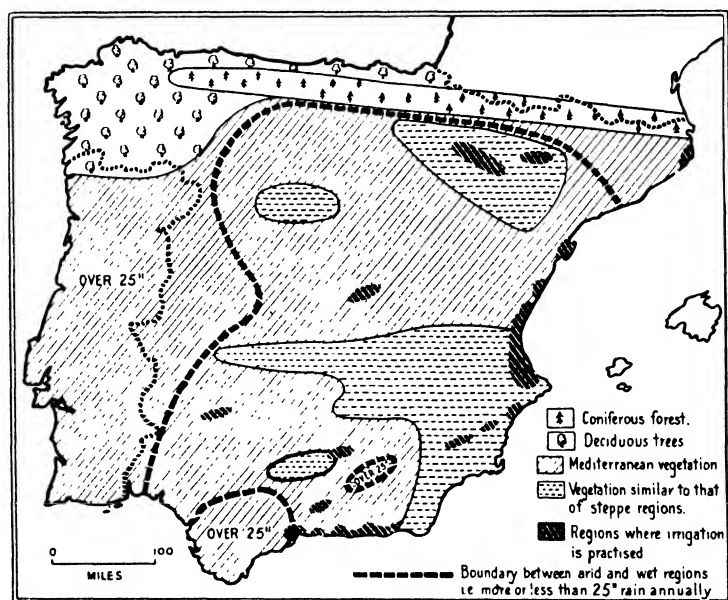


Fig. 92. IBERIA. NATURAL VEGETATION REGIONS.

few small irrigated areas, viz. around Aranjuez and Toledo in the Tagus valley, and around the Guadiana in Estremadura.

**SHEEP REARING.**—The most widespread occupation of the plateau is sheep rearing. Spain has always been famous for the wool of its merino sheep, introduced from Africa by the Moors, but the trade in wool has suffered because of the competition of Australia and Argentina. During the dry summer when the scorched pastures provide insufficient grass, sheep are moved to the mountains, *i.e.* to the Cantabrians in

the north and the Sierra Nevada in the south. Until a century ago the sheep farmers were so powerful that they were able to insist on the maintenance of sheep routes between the plateau and the mountains. This made the tilling of the land impossible over large areas and prevented agricultural progress. To-day the sheep are often transported to the mountains by rail.

**MINERALS.**—The southern edge of the plateau, known as the Sierra Morena, is one of the richest mineralised zones of Iberia. Coal is mined near Belmez, lead near Linares, mercury at Almaden, and copper and tin at Rio Tinto and Tharsis. Spain provides about 40 per cent. of the world's output of mercury.

**TOWNS.**—Because of its unpleasant climate, scanty resources, and backward agriculture, the Spanish Meseta is one of the mostly sparsely populated areas in Europe. Over most of the plateau the population density is less than 25 per square mile (see Fig. 23).

But in spite of their relative poverty the Castiles have dominated Spain throughout history, and the capital cities of the country have always been situated in the heart of the plateau. Aranjuez, Toledo, Valladolid, Leon and Burgos have all been capitals in turn.

*Madrid* (1,010,000), the present capital, is almost the geometrical centre of the country (Fig. 93). Situated in dry and unproductive region on a small tributary of the Tagus, it has few of the normal advantages of a capital city. Railways have been built to link it with the towns of the coastal areas so that it has acquired an artificial nodality. It is the only town on the Meseta with more than 100,000 inhabitants, and its population of approximately one million is largely due to its function as a capital city.

*Valladolid* (95,000) the great market centre of the Douro valley ranks next, and is comparable in size to Reading or Grimsby.

### **The Plains of Andalusia**

The plains of Andalusia lie between the Sierra Nevada and the steep southern edge of the Sierra Morena. They extend inland for over 150 miles to Cordova, and are well watered

because they are open to the Atlantic. The soil, mainly alluvial, is very fertile, particularly between Seville and Cordova. Large crops of oranges and olives are grown and the vines of Jerez are used for the manufacture of sherry. There are large stretches of rich pasture land which are used for rearing the bulls for bull fighting.

The coastal belt, known as Las Marismas, is a swampy region similar to the plains of the lower Tiber in Italy.

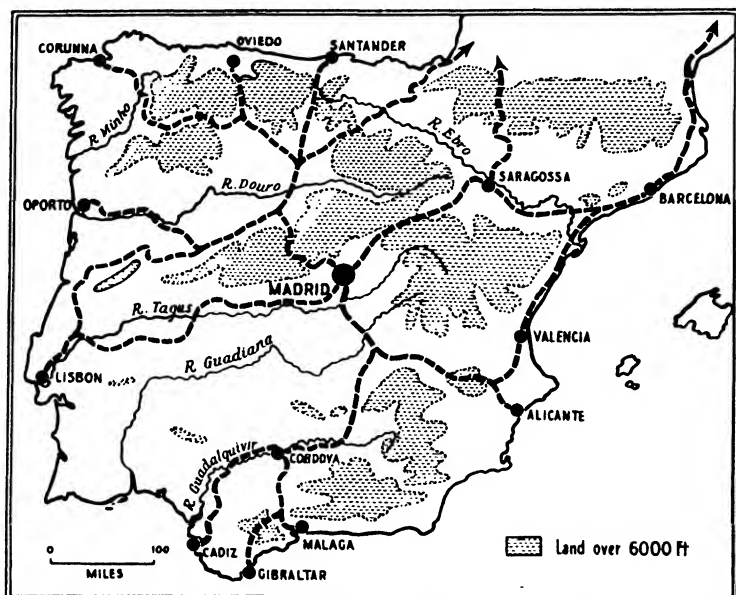


Fig. 93. IBERIA. THE CHIEF ROUTES IN RELATION TO HIGHLAND AND RIVER VALLEYS.—Note the way in which Madrid is linked with the important coastal towns.

Ports such as Palos and Cadiz are much less important than formerly because of the silting of their harbours. Huelva is the port through which the minerals of Rio Tinto and Tharsis are exported. Seville and Cordova are the two most important cities of the plain. They were strongholds of the Moors during the Moorish invasions of Spain and contain beautiful examples of Moorish architecture, e.g. the Alcazar of Seville.

### The Plains of Aragon

The plains of Aragon, drained by the River Ebro, lie between the Pyrenees and the Meseta. Sheltered on all sides by mountains from rain-bearing winds the rainfall is scanty (10 to 12 inches) and though some of the land is irrigated, much more could be done to increase the productiveness of Aragon.

In the upper part of the basin are fields and vineyards, but south-east of Saragossa vast areas are only fit for sheep pasture. The valley is as scantily populated as the Meseta, and there is only one important town in the basin, viz. Saragossa, the cross roads of routes from France to Madrid and from Bilbao to Barcelona.

### The Mediterranean Borderlands

This section of Spain includes:—

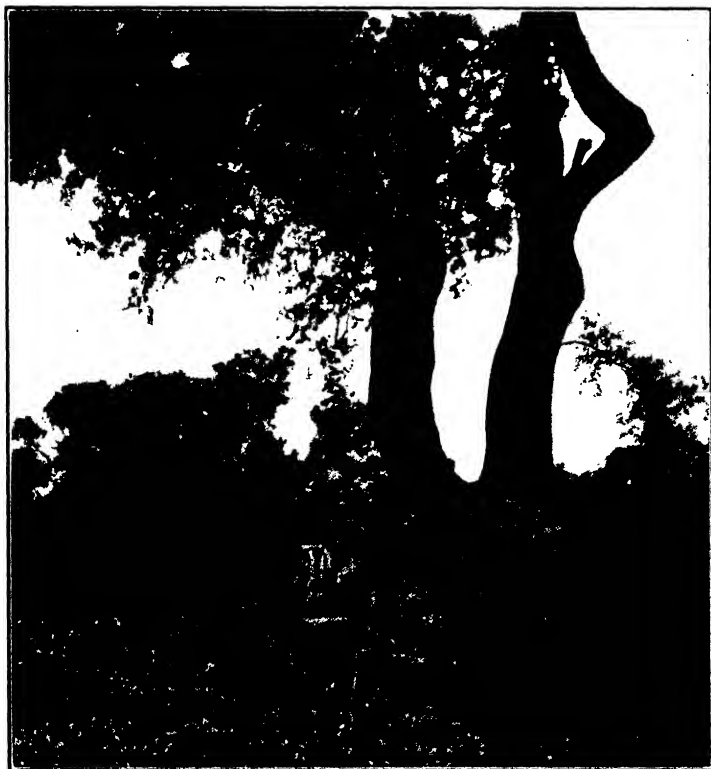
- (a) The highlands of Granada and Murcia.
- (b) A number of small coastal plains between Gibraltar and the mouth of the River Ebro.
- (c) Catalonia.

(a) HIGHLANDS OF GRANADA AND MURCIA.—The Highlands extend from Gibraltar to Cape Nao and are part of the fold mountain system of Southern Europe. In many places the mountains rise steeply from the coast and reach their greatest elevation in Mulhacen (11,421 feet). Between the mountain ranges are fertile valleys which are irrigated by the waters of the mountain streams. These high oases are known as *vegas* and the original irrigation works were constructed by the Moors. Wheat, vines and other fruits are cultivated.

Granada, once a Moorish stronghold, is situated in one of these high valleys of the Sierra Nevada. Like Cordova and Seville it is famous for its Moorish buildings, *e.g.* the Alhambra.

(b) COASTAL PLAINS.—Along the Mediterranean coast are a number of small and extremely productive plains each having at least one large town, *e.g.* Malaga, Almeria, Murcia, Alicante and Valencia. These rich alluvial plains are really the deltas of the swift flowing streams from the Sierra Nevada. Situated on the side of Spain away from the

rain-bearing winds from the Atlantic these plains have a low rainfall but nearly all have been carefully irrigated. These lowlands are known as *huertas* (Lat. hortus—a garden). They are the richest, most intensively cultivated and most densely



E.N.A.

#### A CORK STRIPPER AT WORK.

The life of a cork tree is from 80 to 150 years. A tree 20 years old will produce about 11 pounds of bark.

populated areas in Spain. Because of the high temperatures in summer and the mildness of the winters an amazing variety of crops can be grown throughout the year. Rice and even sugar-cane, cotton and bananas can be grown on the irrigated land. The date palm thrives at Elche near Alicante, the only



locality in Europe where it can be grown. Olives, figs, vines, oranges, lemons, pomegranates, almonds and a variety of stone fruits are grown. Maize and wheat are both important cereal crops. Valencia is especially noted for almonds and raisins, Almeria for table grapes and oranges, and Malaga for oranges also. It is these fertile plains which make Spain the greatest exporter of oranges in the world in spite of the competition of California, Brazil and South Africa. The Valencian plains have a population of over 1,000 per square mile, a striking contrast to the Meseta.

(c) CATALONIA.—Agriculturally Catalonia is similar to the rest of the Mediterranean coastlands and grows large quantities of wheat, vines, olives, etc. In addition, it is the chief industrial area of Spain. Catalonia lacks coal resources, but to-day relies on the hydro-electricity generated in the Pyrenees. The industries of this area include the manufacture of cotton, woollen and silk goods, engineering, paper making, and the manufacture of leather goods and cork goods. Olive oil and wine are manufactured, Tarragona being an important centre for the latter. Barcelona (1,060,000) is the largest city in Spain and the premier port. It is the great industrial centre of Catalonia.

The contrast between the backward agricultural peasantry of the interior of Spain and the progressive industrialists of Catalonia is probably accentuated by the position of Catalonia at the extreme eastern end of the peninsula. These differences have caused Catalonia to be a region of political unrest and dissatisfaction. Both in 1931 and 1934 attempts were made to establish an autonomous state in Catalonia but without success.

The Balearic islands which include Majorca, Minorca and Iviza are structurally a continuation of the fold ranges of Southern Spain. The islands are mountainous with picturesque limestone peaks. The products are those typical of Mediterranean lands, viz. oranges, olives, grapes, etc. The chief town is Palma.

### **Under-Development and Backwardness in Spain**

Compared with the other countries of Western Europe Spain is backward and undeveloped. The average density of population (123) is only slightly more than half of that of

France (196), and one-quarter that of the British Isles (407). This is not because Spain lacks resources but because little is done to develop her natural sources of wealth. Agriculture could be improved by scientific methods, the use of fertilisers, the adoption of a rotation system for crops, the extension of irrigation and improved methods of marketing goods.

In spite of high tariffs there is little industrial development. The extension of hydro-electricity schemes to provide power would overcome, to some extent, the disadvantage of coal shortage. The supplies of minerals might be more fully exploited and used as the basis of metallurgical industries instead of being exported.

Undoubtedly Spain is faced with a number of difficulties, the chief of which are the difficulty of communication, the low rainfall of large areas, and the low cultural level and illiteracy of a large proportion of the peasant population.

The exports of Spain consist largely of agricultural products and mineral ores, fruit and fruit products accounting for over two-thirds of the total value. The principal exports are fruit, iron and other ores, cork, wool and esparto grass. The principal imports include food products not grown or insufficiently grown, and manufactured goods.

### **Spanish Colonies**

Spanish colonial possessions are:—

- (1) Rio de Oro and Adrar in N.W. Africa.
- (2) Ifni in N.W. Africa.
- (3) Spanish Guinea.
- (4) Fernando Po and Annobon in the Gulf of Guinea.
- (5) Spanish Morocco.

### **Canary Isles**

For administrative purposes the Canary Islands are considered as part of Spain. The largest island is Teneriffe which contains a high volcanic peak nearly 12,000 feet high. In total area the islands are about the size of Devonshire. They are important as a calling point for ships sailing on the Cape route. Las Palmas is the chief town and it exports wine, early vegetables and fruit (e.g. bananas and tomatoes).

## PORTUGAL

Portugal lies to the west of the Spanish Meseta. Except for the lowland around Coimbra and Lisbon the country consists of upland regions and is crossed from east to west by well-marked ridges, *e.g.* the Sierra de Estrella and the Sierra de Monchique which are continuations of the ridges of the Meseta. The country is drained by the lower courses of the Douro, Tagus and Guadiana. Since the eastern frontier corresponds roughly to the edge of the Meseta the Spanish sections of these rivers differ from the Portuguese sections. Where the streams leave the deep gorges of the Meseta their courses are interrupted by falls and rapids which limit upstream navigation. In Portugal these rivers are more navigable and flow through wider and more fertile valleys than in Spain. This is one of the reasons for the existence of Portugal as a separate political unit. But Portugal differs from Spain in other ways. Open to the Atlantic, it has more equable temperatures and heavier rainfall than the Spanish plateau. The rich pastures and extensive forests of Portugal contrast sharply with the semi-arid steppe lands of the interior of Iberia. The Portuguese section of Iberia was freed from the Moorish invasions at a much earlier date than Spain, and was able to establish an organised state while the struggle with the Moors still continued in Spain. Finally Portugal, as a result of her contact with the sea has developed more maritime interests than her compact and "continental" neighbour.

North of the River Douro Portugal is mountainous but there are extensive forests of cork-oak. Here, wolfram, the source of tungsten, is mined. The Douro valley is the great vine growing district of Portugal. Oporto at the mouth of the river is the natural outlet of the region exporting large quantities of port wine, apples and oranges.

South of the Douro are the plains of Coimbra backed by low plateau and the Sierra de Estrella. The plains yield large crops of wheat, maize, barley, vines and olives, but the highlands are largely forested or used for pasture.

The plains of Lisbon produce similar crops to those of the plains of Coimbra. Further south is the less productive plateau of Alemtejo, the most scantily peopled portion of Portugal.



*Casa de Portugal.*

VINEYARDS IN THE DOURO VALLEY, PORTUGAL.

These vineyards are on the northern (*i.e.* south-facing) slopes of the Douro valley. Notice how the hillsides are terraced; that the vines are kept low and are not like the vines grown in hothouses in England; the relief of the land in northern Portugal.

In the extreme south the province of Algarve is a continuation of the Sierra Morena of Spain.

*Lisbon* (600,000) situated on the estuary of the Tagus is the capital and chief port. The Tagus estuary is sheltered on the west by a high ridge. The chief industries (mainly textiles) are centred in Lisbon, and the port handles the bulk of the import and export trade of the country. Lisbon is connected by rail with Oporto and Madrid.

### **Development and Industries**

Although Portugal is much richer than Spain agriculturally it is very similar to Spain in the sluggish development of industrial and commercial activity.

The mountains are known to be rich in minerals with deposits of copper, lead, tin, and wolfram. Few of the mineral deposits are worked because Portugal has negligible quantities of coal and the development of hydro-electric power is backward. The total annual production of wolfram for instance is only 300 tons, and of copper 600 tons.

The chief industry is the manufacture of textiles for which cotton and wool must be imported. The second industry in importance is fishing and the principal sardine canning centre is at Setubal about ten miles south of Lisbon. A characteristic occupation of Portugal is the manufacture of porcelain tiles, an industry inherited from the Moors. These tiles are used extensively for interior and exterior decorative work. The chief centre is at Sacavem near Lisbon. Porcelain is also made at Coimbra. Because of the lower proportion of unproductive land Portugal is more densely populated than Spain, viz. 192 per square mile as compared with 123 for Spain.

The principal exports of Portugal in 1933 were, fish (including sardines) cork, fruit and olive oil. The chief imports were iron and steel goods, coal, raw cotton, petroleum and tropical produce.

## CHAPTER XX

### UNION OF SOCIALIST SOVIET REPUBLICS

#### **Introductory**

Russia in Europe occupies the whole of the great plain of Eastern Europe. Although it includes so large a portion of the continent it has always been the least European of all European countries, and its present political fabric makes it more detached than ever.

But Russia is not confined to Europe. Her adjoining Asiatic territories, separated only by the ineffective barrier of the Urals, extend eastward to the Pacific Ocean. European Russia and Asiatic Russia were formerly considered as two separate units though the Asiatic territory was not a Russian colony, but was rather a vast undeveloped appendage.

To-day Russia, from the Baltic Sea to the Pacific Ocean is *one*, united by the common bond of national and economic development. This vast territory is known as the "Union of Soviet Socialist Republics," the U.S.S.R. (hereinafter referred to as Russia). The resources of this immense country, the gold of Yakutsk, the coal of Kuznetsk, the cotton of Turkestan, the oil of Transcaucasia, the minerals of the Urals, the coal and grain of the Ukraine and the forests of the north are all being made tributary to the common welfare. By the famous Five Year Plans (1st, 1928–1933; 2nd, 1932–1937) Russia is developing her almost unlimited resources and is attempting to achieve, in the short space of ten years, a standard of agricultural and industrial development which it took Britain a century and a half to evolve.

#### **Position and Extent**

Russia consists of a federation of Soviet Republics, viz:—  
(Fig. 94).

1. White Russia, chief centre Minsk.
2. Ukraine, chief centre Kiev.
3. Transcaucasia, chief centre Tiflis.

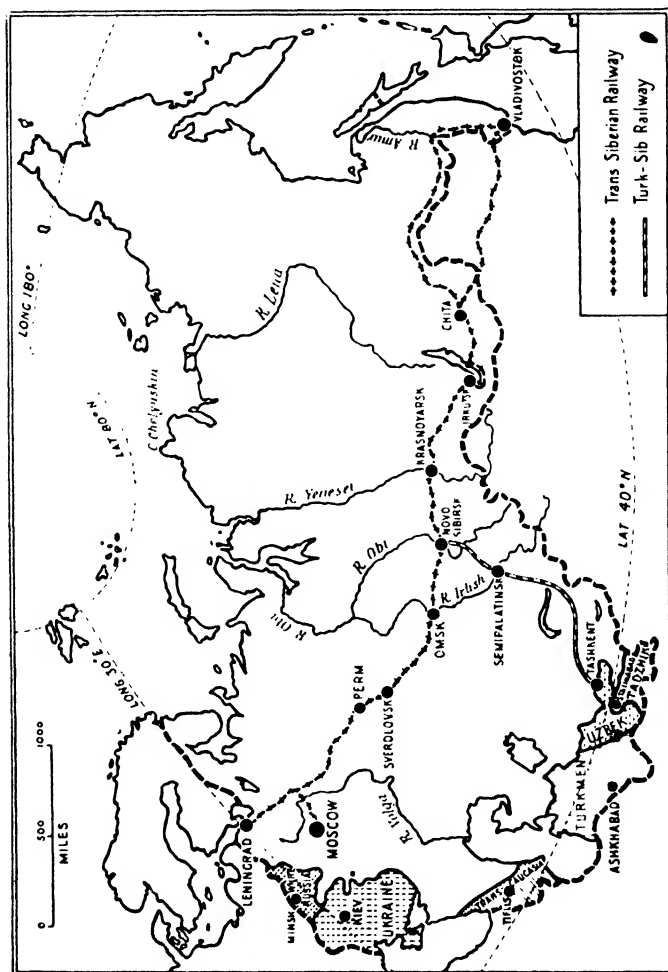


Fig. 94. U.S.S.R. POLITICAL DIVISIONS AND THE TRANSIBERIAN RAILWAYS.—The unshaded area is the R.S.F.S.R. The shaded areas represent the other six Soviet Republics.

4. Usbek, chief centre Tashkent.
5. Turkmen, chief centre Ashkhabad.
6. Tadzhik, chief centre Stalinabad.
7. R.S.F.S.R., chief centre Moscow.

The R.S.F.S.R. (Russian Socialist Federal Soviet Republic) comprises all Russian lands not included in 1-6 and

within its limits are thirteen autonomous republics (*e.g.* Yakutsk, Crimea, etc.) and fourteen autonomous regions.

The total area of Russia is  $8\frac{1}{4}$  million square miles, so that it is more than twice the size of the whole of Europe ( $3\frac{1}{2}$  million square miles), more than half the size of all Asia, (16 million square miles) ninety times the size of England, and represents one-seventh of the total land surface of the world.

At its greatest width in the north, Russia extends through  $160^\circ$  of longitude, *i.e.* nearly halfway round the world at the Arctic Circle, a distance of almost 6,000 miles (approximately as far as from Liverpool to Buenos Aires). The mainland extends north to latitude  $77^\circ\text{N}$ , at Cape Chelyuskin, and south to latitude  $55^\circ\text{N}$ , on the borders of Afghanistan, *i.e.* nearly 3,000 miles (*cf.* Liverpool to New York).

Russia is bounded on the North by the Arctic Ocean, and on the east by the Pacific Ocean. In the extreme east its southern boundary is the River Amur. From the River Amur, westwards to the Caspian Sea, the southern frontiers consist of the high mountains of Central Asia. Further west the southern boundary follows the south of the Caspian Sea, the mountains of the Turko-Armenian border, and the Black Sea. On the west, Russia is bounded by Romania, Poland, the Baltic States and Finland. Her only western outlet to the sea is a short length of coast at the head of the Gulf of Finland near Leningrad. Throughout the whole length of her coastline Russia has only one ice free port, *viz.* Murmansk in the extreme north-west, on the north shores of the Kola peninsula. This port is ice free because of the warming influence of the North Atlantic Drift.

The lack of easy outlets to the rest of the world is one of the great disadvantages of the position of Russia. The Arctic shores are frozen for nine months, and the Pacific shores are not only frozen during the winter months but as yet are linked with the interior only by one railway line. On the south the mountains, plateau, deserts, and semi-deserts of Central Asia form an almost impassable barrier. The Caspian Sea is an inland sea. The Black Sea and the Baltic Sea are almost enclosed and their narrow exits controlled by other powers. Russia's desire for an ice-free Pacific port (Dairen, in the south of Manchukuo) was one of the major



causes of the Russo-Japanese war in 1905. The same desire for natural outlets has driven Russia, during the last ten years to make a detailed survey of the Arctic coasts and to establish ports (*e.g.* Igarka, on the Yenesei estuary) that can be used during the short summer season.

### **Physical Features: Plains and Lowlands**

It may generally be said that the mountains and plateaux of Russia are peripheral (Fig. 95). Within the encircling mountains lies an immense plain which stretches from the western boundary to the River Yenesei. This plain, one of the most extensive in the world, may be divided into three sections:—

- (a) The plains of European Russia.
- (b) The plains of West Siberia.
- (c) The lowlands to the east of the Caspian Sea.

(a) **THE PLAINS OF EUROPEAN RUSSIA.**—These plains are almost featureless. The rocks of the plain are either practically horizontal or so gently tilted that the only relief features are broad gently rising uplands, such as the Valdai Hills, or the depressions of river valleys. The highest point of the plain is the Valdai Hills (1,062 feet) to the north-west of Moscow. From these hills a low platform (about 600 feet) of ancient rocks trends south-eastward forming a divide between the basins of the Volga and Dnieper. The north and central portions of European Russia were covered with ice during the Glacial Epoch. As in North Germany, there are extensive deposits of morainic soils, and large areas of swamp and peat bogs. The best known of the marshlands are the Pripet marshes on the Polish border.

The European plains of Russia are drained by:—

- (1) The Dwina flowing to the White Sea.
- (2) The Dnieper to the Black Sea.
- (3) The Don to the Sea of Azov.
- (4) The Volga to the Caspian Sea.

The latter river rises in the Valdai Hills and within its basin lies the greater part of the European Russia. After a course of 2,399 miles it enters the Caspian Sea which is below sea

level. Thus a large area of European Russia is a region of inland drainage.

A feature of the rivers of South Russia is the occurrence of sharp elbow bends (see Fig. 106). This is well seen at Stalin-grad (Tsaritsin), where the Volga turns sharply south-eastwards, and at Dnepropetrovsk on the Dnieper.

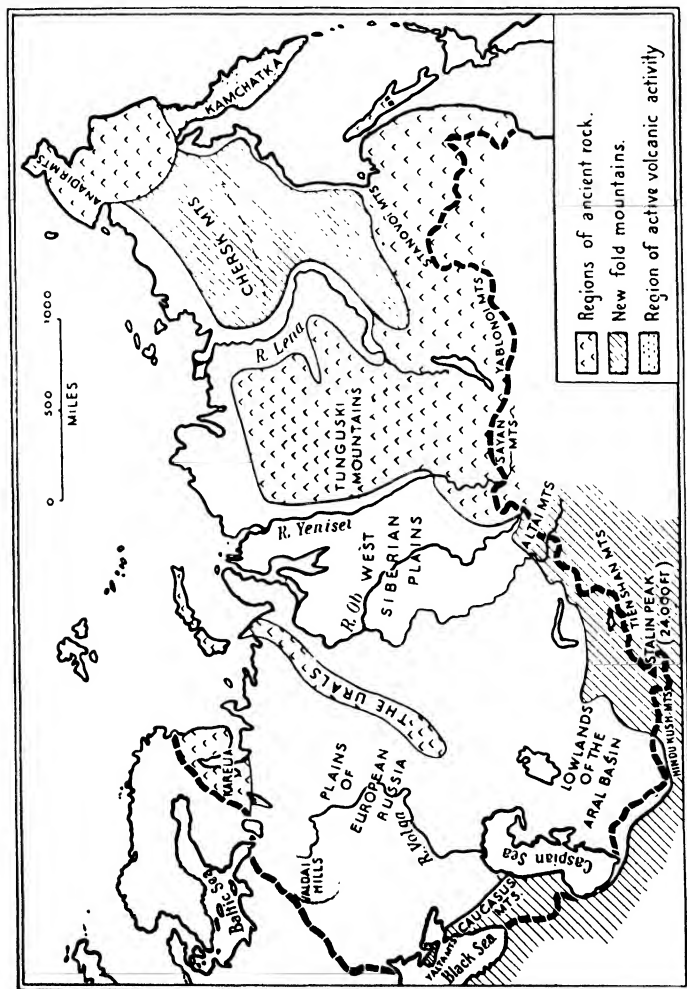
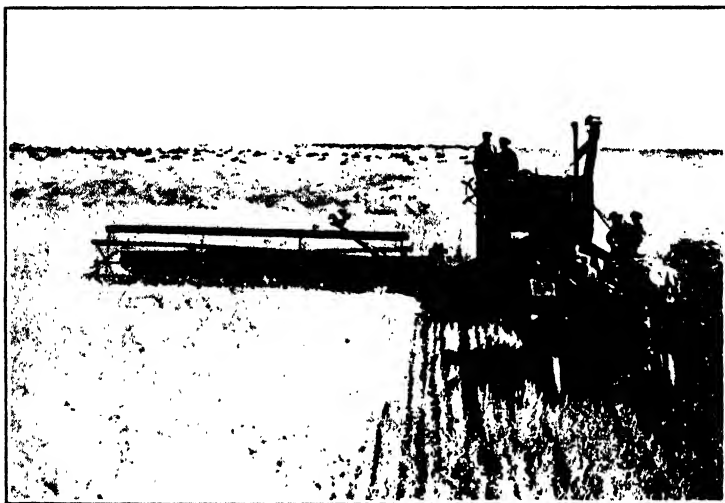


Fig. 95. PHYSICAL DIVISIONS—SHOWING THE PERIPHERAL ARRANGEMENT OF HIGHLAND.

During the winter the Russian rivers are frozen. About April they thaw and receive large quantities of water from the melting of the winter snows. Hence there are extensive floods in early summer which do not subside quickly because of the low gradients and poor drainage. In late summer the water level is low, particularly owing to excessive evaporation and partly because the summer rains are insufficient to maintain a high level. The rivers of Russia are an important



*Planet News Ltd.*

#### HARVESTING WHEAT ON A COLLECTIVE FARM IN THE AZOV REGION.

Large scale methods of production have been introduced to Russia since 1928. Notice the levelness of the plain, the vast area under cultivation (reminiscent of the Canadian prairies), and compare the type of agriculture with that shown on page 9 and page 37.

factor in transport. In winter sledges are used on the ice and in summer the absence of strong currents makes navigation easy.

To the east of the plain the Ural Mountains run north to south for a distance of 1,500 miles approximately along 60°E. In the north they rise to over 5,000 feet and are steep on the eastern side. In the south they are lower and broader and slope very gently to the plains so that they are in no way an effective barrier. The railway between Perm and Sverdlovsk

(Ekaterinburg), crosses them easily by a pass less than 1,000 feet high. The Urals are not a barrier either politically or climatically, and except in the north-east are not mountainous in character.

(b) THE PLAINS OF WEST SIBERIA.—To the east of the Urals is the great lowland of Western Siberia, drained by the River Ob. It differs from the plain of European Russia in that it is more uniformly flat, no part of it rising to 600 feet. In the central part of the Ob basin, extending from Tobolsk eastward nearly to the River Yenesei, is the vast Kasyugane Swamp. The River Yenesei flows northward along the eastern borders of the West Siberian lowland.

The rivers of Siberia, *i.e.* the Ob, Yenesei, and Lena are all subject to extensive flooding. They rise in the high mountains of Central Asia and flow northwards to the Arctic Ocean. Their lower courses freeze first and floods result. In the spring the upper courses thaw first and floods again occur.

(c) LOWLANDS EAST OF THE CASPIAN SEA.—The third division of the Russian lowlands lies south of the Obi basin and to the east of the Caspian Sea. This lowland is an inland drainage region, the centre of which is the Sea of Aral, into which flow the rivers Syr Daria and Amu Daria. In the east is another lake of inland drainage, Lake Balkhash, fed by the River Ili.

### Physical Features: Highlands

The highlands of Russia fall into two groups:—(Fig. 95)—

(a) High folded ranges.

(b) Low plateaux and ranges of ancient rocks.

(a) HIGH FOLDED RANGES.—In the extreme south of the Crimean peninsula are the Yalta Mountains. These are a continuation of the Alpine system of South Europe. Eastward the fold ranges are continued in the high Caucasus Mountains which trend N.W. to S.E. across the isthmus between the Black and Caspian Seas. The highest peak of the Caucasus Mountains is Mount Elbruz (18,529 feet) a volcanic peak which was thought to be extinct until it erupted unexpectedly during the present century.

Beyond the Caspian Sea the crests of the Asiatic fold mountains lie outside the boundary, but in Tadzhik and Khirgiz are high ridges, offshoots of the Pamirs. Here are the highest peaks of Russia, Stalin Peak (24,590 feet) and Lenin Peak (23,353 feet). From the Pamirs north-eastward to Lake Baikal are mountainous regions comprising the north facing slopes and foothills of the Tien Shan, Altai and Sayan ranges. To the east of Lake Balkhash, between the Tien Shan and Altai mountains is the Dzungarian Gate, one of the few easy routes across the mountains of Central Asia.

(b) **PLATEAUX OF ANCIENT ROCKS.**—In Northern Siberia, to the east of the River Yenesei, lies a region of plateau and old mountain ranges extending to the Bering Straits. Between the Yenesei and Lena rivers is an ancient plateau (Angaraland) comparable in structure to the Canadian Shield. The highest part, the Tunguski Mountains, forms the watershed between the Yenesei and the Lena. Eastward of the River Lena is a region incompletely known, though recent explorations (1926) by the Soviet government have shown that the mountains rise to 9,000 feet in the Chersk range.

Kamchatka, a large south-trending peninsula, contains many active volcanoes, and is structurally part of the volcanic fringe of the western Pacific.

## **Climate**

In a country as immense as Soviet Russia great variations of climate are to be expected. There is, however, a remarkable uniformity of climate over large areas on account of the uniformity of relief. Three factors dominate the climatic conditions of the country:—

(1) The E.-W. arrangement of the highland along the southern frontiers. While this mountain barrier shuts out warm winds from the south, the Russian plains are exposed to bitterly cold northerly winds.

(2) Its “interior” position, vast areas being remote from the open ocean.

(3) The bordering seas which only slightly affect either temperature or rainfall. For instance:—

(a) The Arctic Ocean is frozen for nine months of the year so that while it helps to keep the summers of the northern margins cool, it exerts little moderating influence upon winter conditions.

(b) The Pacific shores are not only washed by a cold current, but in winter the winds blow outwards from the land and are bitterly cold. The summer winds blowing in from the sea make the summers cooler.

(c) The Caspian Sea is an enclosed sea with little moderating influence.

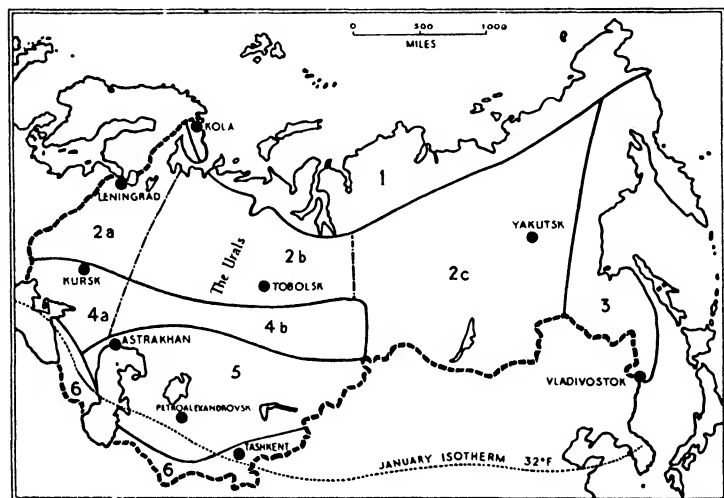


Fig. 96. THE CLIMATIC DIVISIONS OF THE U.S.S.R.—Note carefully the regions which lie outside the 32° F. January isotherm, viz. (a) the southern Crimea, (b) Transcaucasia, (c) the southern borders of Central Asiatic Russia in Turkmen, Usbek, Tadzhik, Kirghizia.

(d) The Black Sea and Baltic Sea are almost enclosed and their influence is not felt far inland. Only in the extreme north-west on the north of the Kola peninsula is sea influence strongly felt, as a result of the westerly winds from the north Atlantic.

Throughout nearly the whole of Russia three climatic characteristics are predominant:—

(1) Excessively cold winters except in the extreme south. Practically the whole of Russia lies within the January isotherm of 32° F. (see Fig. 96).

(2) Large annual ranges of temperature.

(3) A summer maximum of rainfall except on the southern margins.

The Russian lands may be divided into a number of climatic provinces based on latitude, distance from the sea, and total annual rainfall. These climatic divisions (as shown on Fig. 96) are:—

(1) The Tundra.

(2) The cool temperate interior lands or Siberian type.

(3) The cool temperate eastern margin or Laurentian type.

(4) The warm temperate interior lands (steppe type).

(5) Interior semi-arid region.

(6) The southern margins.

The climatic statistics for towns within these regions are given in the accompanying table.

REGION	PLACE	TEMP. IN ° F.			RAINFALL IN INCHES		
		July	Jan.	Range	Total	Summer	Winter
1	Kola ...	54	9	45	8	5	3
2 (a)	Leningrad ...	64	15	49	19	12	7
(b)	Tobolsk ...	66	— 2	68	18	13	5
(c)	Yakutsk ...	66	— 46	112	14	11	3
3	Vladivostok ...	66	4	62	15	12	3
4 (a)	Kursk ...	67	14	53	18	12	6
(b)	Semipalatinsk	72	0	72	7	5	2
5 (a)	Astrakhan ...	78	19	59	6	2	4
(b)	Petro Alexandrovsk (Turt Kul)	80	22	58	2	1	1
6 (a)	Yalta ...	76	38	38	20	7	13
(b)	Tashkent ...	81	30	51	15	5	10

(1) THE TUNDRA.—This region is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean and on the south by the July isotherm of 50° F. Although in the example quoted (Kola) the summer temperature is 54° F. the mean summer temperature of the tundra, is in general, less than 50° F. The winter temperatures vary from 10° F. in the west to — 40° F. near the mouth of the

River Lena. The rainfall is scanty (less than 10 inches) and falls chiefly in summer. Winter precipitation is in the form of snow, which does not melt but accumulates in great drifts.

(2) THE COOL TEMPERATE INTERIOR.—The whole of this immense region is characterised by summer temperatures averaging about 65° F. and by a well-marked summer maximum of rainfall. Winter temperatures, however, vary considerably according to the distance from the western ocean. It is therefore convenient to subdivide this region into three sections, A, B, and C, illustrated by the conditions of Leningrad, Tobolsk, and Yakutsk. The winter temperature of Leningrad is 15° F. Further east at Tobolsk the January temperature has dropped to -- 2° F. and still further east at Yakutsk to -- 46° F. Since the summer temperatures are nearly uniform the range of temperature increases eastward with the increase of winter cold. Verkhoyansk, to the north-east of Yakutsk, has the largest range of temperature in the world (120° F.) and is also the "cold pole" of the world, with an average January temperature of -- 60° F.

In this section of Russia too, the total annual rainfall and the winter rainfall decrease slowly eastward (for Leningrad has 19 inches as compared with 14 inches at Yakutsk) and the summer maximum of rain becomes more pronounced towards the east.

(3) THE EASTERN MARGINS.—The part of Russia which borders the Pacific has somewhat lower summer temperature than the interior. It should be noted that while Yakutsk and Vladivostok have similar summer temperatures, the latter is much farther south than the former. The winters, while very cold, are not as intensely cold as those of the interior. Though the Pacific margins are subject to intensely cold west winds from the interior of the continent during the winter months, the sea moderates the winter temperatures slightly. In summer the winds blowing inland both lower the summer temperatures and increase the rainfall. In these eastern margins the summer maximum of rainfall is more strongly marked than elsewhere in the cool temperate belt.

(4) THE WARM TEMPERATE INTERIOR (STEPPE TYPE).—In this region as in the cool temperate belt there are considerable



differences between the western and eastern sections. The change from west to east, is, as in the more northerly belt, marked by a decrease in winter temperatures, a corresponding increase in annual range of temperature, and a decrease in the total annual rainfall.

Throughout the region the average summer temperatures are approximately 70° F., but between Kursk and Semipalatinsk the winter temperature drops by 14° F. Kursk in the west, has an annual rainfall of 18 inches, but at Semipalatinsk, further from the sea, the rainfall drops to 7 inches, most of which is of the convectional type.

(5) **INTERIOR SEMI-ARID REGION.**—This area includes the northern margins of the Caspian Sea and the lowlands around the Sea of Aral.

Here the summer temperatures are high (80° F.) the winters cold (but not as low as 0° F.) and the rainfall scanty. Again the rainfall decreases towards the interior and falls as low as 2 inches annually in the valley of the River Syr Daria. Much of this inland drainage area is sandy desert.

(6) **THE SOUTHERN MARGINS.**—This section of Russia includes:—

(a) The south facing slopes of the extreme south of the Crimea.

(b) The Batum to Baku depression south of the Caucasus.

(c) The southern mountain borders of Usbek and Tadzhik.

Here, in great contrast to the remainder of Russia, average January temperatures are generally above 32° F. and the greater part of the rainfall occurs during the winter half of the year. This winter maximum of rainfall is due to eastward moving depressions from the Mediterranean. The climate of the southern Crimea is (except for the slightly colder winters) Mediterranean in type. Batum has the highest rainfall in Russia, viz. 93 inches annually. This is largely relief rainfall due to the mountainous nature of the surrounding country.

The high summer temperatures of Usbek and Tadzhik (*e.g.* Tashkent) are of special importance (as will be seen later) because of their influence on the type of products that can be cultivated.

# Vegetation

The distribution of natural vegetation in Russia is closely connected with the climatic divisions. A comparison of Figs. 96 and 97 will show how far this is true.

(a) The Arctic coastland (corresponding to region 1 in the climate map) is a region of tundra. Here the summers are too cool for the growth of trees. The ground is frozen for

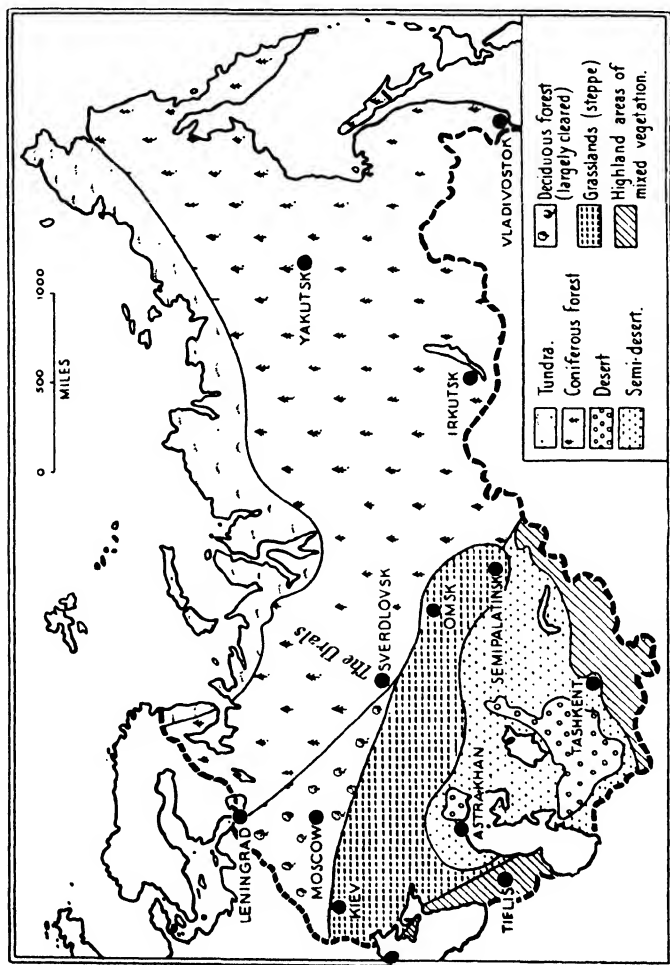


Fig. 97. NATURAL VEGETATION OF THE U.S.S.R.

most of the year and during the summer the surface soil only thaws to a depth of 2 feet. The natural vegetation of this region consists of mosses and lichens, small berry-bearing bushes (*e.g.* the whortleberry) and stunted birch trees along the watercourses. Well-drained south-facing slopes are often carpeted with flowers during the short summer season.

(b) Extending across the cool temperate zone of Russia from the Baltic Sea to the Pacific is a great belt of forest land. This forest zone corresponds to regions 1 and 2 on the climate map. It consists almost entirely of virgin coniferous forests in which pines, fir, spruce, and larch are the chief trees. In the south-west in European Russia where the climate is more humid, and warmer in winter than the interior, the original forest (much of which has been cleared) was of the deciduous type. This zone of deciduous forest tapers eastward and disappears near the southern end of the Urals.

In the south-east, also, where proximity to the Pacific moderates the winter temperatures, deciduous as well as coniferous trees are found.

(c) South of the forest belt and extending over the western half of Russia is a rich grassland region, comparable in type to the prairies of North America or the pampas of Argentina. This steppeland corresponds to region 4 of the climatic map. The grassland is richest in the Ukraine (south of European Russia).

(d) Around the north of the Caspian Sea and in the lowlands drained to the Sea of Aral are extensive areas with deficient rainfall, corresponding to region 5 on the climatic map. These are regions of poor steppeland, often without a continuous covering of grass. In the centre of this area, especially to the south and east of the Sea of Aral are true deserts, the Kysyl Kum and Kara Kum deserts. These are among the most extensive sandy deserts of the world.

(e) The southern extremity of the Crimea has vegetation typical of Mediterranean areas. The mountain slopes of the Transcaucasian region are forested with conifers at the higher, and deciduous trees at the lower, levels. The mountain slopes of Usbek and Tadzhik are similarly forested except where the mountains are too high to allow tree growth.

## The Soils of Russia

The view was formerly held that, especially in the temperate zone, the properties of soils, *i.e.* their colour, depth, fertility, etc., varied in direct relation to the nature of the underlying rock. Investigations have, however, shown that certain soils repeatedly occur throughout the world, where similar conditions of climate and vegetation exist. Scientists have, therefore, come to the conclusion that climatic factors have a far greater influence in the formation of a particular type of

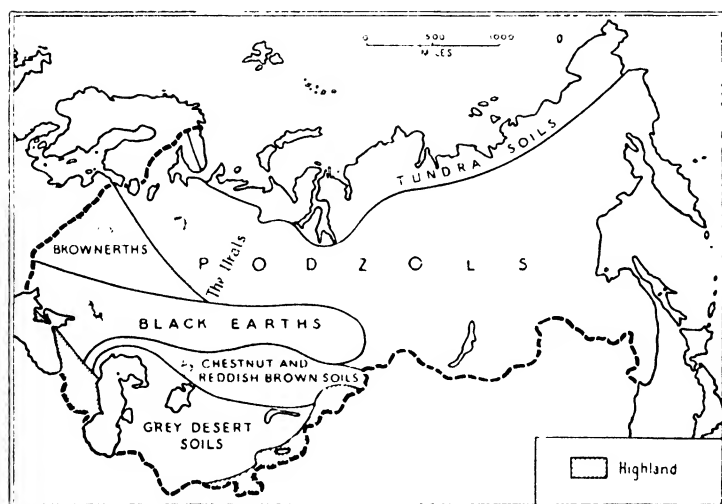


Fig. 98. THE MAJOR SOIL ZONES OF THE U.S.S.R.

soil than was formerly supposed. Evidence in support of this belief is especially strong in a study of the soils of Russia.

There are six belts of soil which run from east to west across the country. The distribution of these soils conforms very closely to the climatic and vegetation regions (compare Figs. 96, 97, 98).

(1) In the north are the poor tundra soils, waterlogged and frozen for the greater part of the year. These soils are infertile, pale grey in colour and contain little humus (decayed vegetable matter).

(2) South of the tundra in the region of coniferous forests, low temperatures and moderate rainfall, the soils are known as podzols,\* or "soils of the pine forests." These are slightly less infertile than the tundra soils and are grey in colour. They have been formed slowly because the thick mantle of forest debris protects the underlying rocks from rapid weathering. The podzols are generally acid in type (*i.e.* deficient in lime) and do not contain a high percentage of humus or other plant foods. Such soils when brought under cultivation need liberal application of lime and manure. Since they occur in the cool temperate zone they are principally used for the cultivation of hardy cereals, oats, rye and clover.

(3) In the region of the deciduous forests of European Russia the forest debris has decomposed more rapidly and become incorporated with the soils. These soils, especially the upper layers, are darker in colour than the podzols and are more fertile and better aerated. As they are characteristically brown, they are usually referred to as "Brownerts."

(4) In the steppe regions are rich dark soils known as "Black Earth" or "chernozem." These soils occur throughout the world in grassland regions where the annual rainfall is about 15-20 inches. This rainfall is insufficient to dissolve and carry away the mineral salts. Hence the Black Earth is extremely fertile, being rich in humus, lime, and other plant foods. These soils form some of the richest agricultural land in the world, though a limit is set to the crops that can be cultivated on them by the low rainfall. The chief crop of such regions is wheat.

(5) South and east of the steppeland is the semi-arid steppe. Here the Black Earth gives place to (a) Reddish brown, and chestnut coloured soils.

In this zone the rainfall is less and the grassy covering poorer and less continuous. The soils contain less humus than the Black Earth but are rich in lime and other plant foods. They are used extensively for pastoral occupations, but with irrigation become productive agricultural lands.

\* "Podzol" is a word of Russian origin meaning "soil the colour of ashes."

(6) Finally in the deserts of the Aral Basin are the grey desert soils. In these regions mechanical weathering is rapid and rocks are quickly disintegrated. But owing to the low rainfall chemical weathering is slow and because of the absence of vegetation there is little humus in the soils. Desert winds blow the loose soil from place to place so that new rock surfaces are constantly exposed. The cultivation of desert soils is usually limited to the oases.

## CHAPTER XXI

### UNION OF SOCIALIST SOVIET REPUBLICS: AGRICULTURE

#### **Agriculture in Russia before the Revolution.**

Before 1914 agricultural development in Russia was comparable with that of England in the Middle Ages. Although agriculture had reached a more advanced stage in European Russia than in Asiatic Russia, yet the former was far behind the countries of peninsular Europe in development. Methods of cultivation were primitive; yields were low, (*e.g.* 8 bushels of wheat per acre); soils became exhausted because of lack of manuring; rotation of crops was almost unknown; and the habit of single crop cultivation made the farmer insecure, because of the fluctuation of prices in the world market.

Before the Revolution, two types of agriculture prevailed in Russia.

(a) The cultivation of large estates held by the Russian aristocracy. It was the existence of these huge estates, in spite of low yields, that made possible the export of vast quantities of wheat, flax, hemp and sugar to Western Europe.

(b) The cultivation of small fields by the peasants. These poor peasant holdings were farmed primarily to supply the food requirements of the cultivators and only a small percentage of the produce was sold. Usually rye was cultivated for home consumption, whilst wheat was the "money" crop. After the revolution of 1917 the great estates were seized by the peasants and divided into relatively small holdings. But through lack of knowledge, the old-fashioned farming methods continued and there was little hope of any real agricultural progress.

#### **Recent Agricultural Activities**

In 1928, under the schemes of the First Five Year Plan (1928-1933) the agricultural economy was entirely reorganised. Some of the recent agricultural activities of Russia and their results are outlined in the following pages.

(1) KOLKHOZES.—Peasant farmers were amalgamated into large scale collective farms (kolkhozes). To these co-operative units the government supplied selected seeds, tractors, and up-to-date agricultural machinery. Instruction in scientific agriculture and technical help in the use of machinery was provided. By 1934 three-quarters of the peasant farmers were amalgamated in kolkhozes, and over a quarter of a million tractors were in use, and nearly 4,000 tractor stations and repair depots had been established in the agricultural regions.

(2) SOVKHOZES.—In the undeveloped agricultural lands where few peasant farmers were already established (*e.g.* the drier south-east of European Russia and the steppelands of Siberia) large scale state farms (sovkhozes) have been formed. The most famous sovkhov is the Giant, near Rostov, which is over half a million acres in area (*i.e.* about as large as Nottinghamshire). Since the sovkhoves are farmed on modern lines they can produce crops much more cheaply than the peasant farmers and the yields per acre are higher.

(3) RECLAMATION OF MARSHLAND.—Extending from the Polish border eastwards to the River Lena is a broad belt of marshland. Already over 5,000,000 acres of these marshlands have been drained. Special progress has been made in White Russia and in West Siberia. The drained lands provide rich meadows for the dairying industry, and are also being cultivated for the production of flax, hemp, wheat and vegetables.

Malarial marshes have been drained in the Kuban valley between the Sea of Azov and the Black Sea, and in Transcaucasia, near Batum. Here reclaimed lands are being used for the cultivation of oranges, lemons, rice, tea and tobacco.

(4) IRRIGATION.—Much greater attention is being paid to irrigation than formerly. In the extreme south and south-east of European Russia, in the Azov-Black Sea isthmus and in the Trans-Caspian provinces, are large areas of deficient rainfall which are, by nature, semi-desert or desert. Before 1914 several million areas of land in Russian Turkestan were irrigated, but generally the methods used were old-fashioned. Apart from food grown for the local population the chief crop of the older irrigated lands of Russian Turkestan was cotton.



To-day the old-fashioned methods of irrigation are being replaced by modern mechanical methods and reservoirs and irrigation canals are being constructed. In the lower Amu Daria alone 70,000 wooden waterwheels have been replaced by modern irrigation schemes. Vast storage reservoirs have been constructed in Usbek and Tadzhik (e.g. the Vakhsh reservoir), in Transcaucasia and in the valleys of the Amu Daria, Syr Daria and many other rivers of Central Asia.



SUN DRYING OF FLAX NEAR PORKHOV.

*Planet News.*

Flax is one of the most important products of the Brownerth region of Central Russia.

Other schemes have been formulated, notably for a dam at Kamyshin on the Volga so that the semi-arid lands north of the Caspian may be irrigated.

(5) **THE COMBAT WITH DROUGHT.**—Surrounding the desert zone of Russia is a region extending from the lower Volga eastward into Asia where the mean annual rainfall varies from 8 to 15 inches. This is, agriculturally, one of the most critical regions in Russia, both because the annual rainfall is

subject to great variations from year to year, and because it is the region with some of the richest soils in the country. In the past the peasant farmers were helpless in face of a rainfall shortage and the resultant famine due to poor yields. For instance, in 1919, a year of average rainfall, the yield of wheat per acre was 16 bushels, but in 1920 it fell to 4 bushels per acre, and in 1921, the year of great famine, was less than one-third of a bushel per acre.

Soviet Russia is introducing into these "famine" zones, special drought resisting crops, including drought resisting varieties of the principal cereals. Dry farming methods are being practised in order to make the most profitable use of the water in the soil.

(6) SOIL IMPROVEMENT.—Over large areas particularly in the northern half of Russia, the soils are, by nature, infertile. In other regions the persistence of one crop cultivation and the lack of manuring, have exhausted the natural fertility of the soil.

The Russian schemes for the improvement of the fertility of the soil include:—

- (a) The introduction of scientific crop rotation.
- (b) The use of fertilisers.
- (c) The treatment of the acid soils of the northern zone with lime.

(7) POLAR AGRICULTURE.—The regions beyond the Arctic Circle were formerly considered as being entirely unsuitable for agriculture. Although the summers are cool the summer days are long and the duration of daylight partly compensates for the low temperatures. In the last six years a large variety of crops has been cultivated in these northern areas. They include vegetables such as cabbages, onions, turnips, carrots, potatoes, etc., but in addition special varieties of barley, wheat and oats have been successfully ripened. Igarka, a new port, at the mouth of the Yenesei, has its own local supply of fresh vegetables. Even the nomads of the tundra are in some districts growing fodder grasses and rearing cattle as well as reindeer.

(8) NEW CROPS.—The most spectacular features of the agricultural development of Soviet Russia have been:—

- (1) The introduction of plants not already cultivated in Russia, and

(2) The determined search for new crops, *i.e.* the careful examination of wild plants and a consideration of their possible commercial value. Modern Russia seems determined, as far as possible, to produce within her borders, all the raw materials she requires for her ever-growing industries. There is to-day a rapidly increasing demand for rubber, tanning materials, vegetable oils and dyes, etc. The investigation of new plants is carried out by the All Union Institute of Plant Culture, a government department similar to the American Plant Bureau.

Crops not originally cultivated in Russia but which have now been successfully grown include sorghum, a drought-resisting grain; Italian hemp; soya beans, once almost the complete monopoly of Manchukuo and now a successful crop of the Ukraine; tounge-hu, a Chinese tree which yields varnish; cork oak; and the Chinese fibre "ramie" which is successfully grown in Central Asia. Even the date palm, Brazil nuts and bamboo have been grown on the hot irrigated areas of South Russia, and preparations are being made for an experimental cocoa plantation. In Turkmen, guayule, a Mexican rubber yielding plant, is being cultivated.

The study of wild plants has yielded interesting results. For instance, three plants, the chief of which is Krim-sagiz, have been found to yield rubber of good quality and the cultivation is now beyond the experimental stages. Other examples are topinambur (artichoke) which yields alcohol, sugar and synthetic rubber; and kender, grown in Kirghizia and Kazak, which supplies a very strong fibre.

(9) REDISTRIBUTION OF CROPS.—Before 1914 the cultivation of most of the principal crops of Russia was almost exclusively limited to certain areas, *e.g.* wheat in the Ukraine, cotton in Turkestan, sugar beet near Kiev. Moreover, agriculture was limited in its distribution. A line from Kiev to Sverdlovsk divided European Russia into two zones, an agriculturally productive zone in the south, and to the north a consuming region which produced little except rye and flax.

It is one of the aims of Soviet Russia to extend the cultivation of crops into other areas which are suitable for their production. In particular, great attention has been given to the wider regional distribution and increased production of wheat, sugar beet, cotton and rice (Fig. 99).



*Planet News Ltd.*

**A TEA PLANTATION IN THE CAUCASUS REGION.**

Notice the arrangement of the tea bushes; the low clipping of the bushes; the well-drained sloping ground on which the tea is grown; the palm trees suggestive of Mediterranean conditions. In Russia the output of tea is rapidly increasing and Russia is the chief producer outside South-East Asia.

(a) *Wheat*.—The chief changes in the distribution of wheat lands are as follows:—

(1) In European Russia wheat cultivation is no longer limited to the rich Black Earth lands of the south. By clearing the forest, adopting scientific methods and by sowing grain suited to the cooler but longer days of the more northerly latitudes, the cultivation of wheat has been rapidly extended to the north of the Kiev-Sverdlovsk line. The northern extension of wheat cultivation in European Russia may be compared with the northern extension of wheat production in Central Canada.

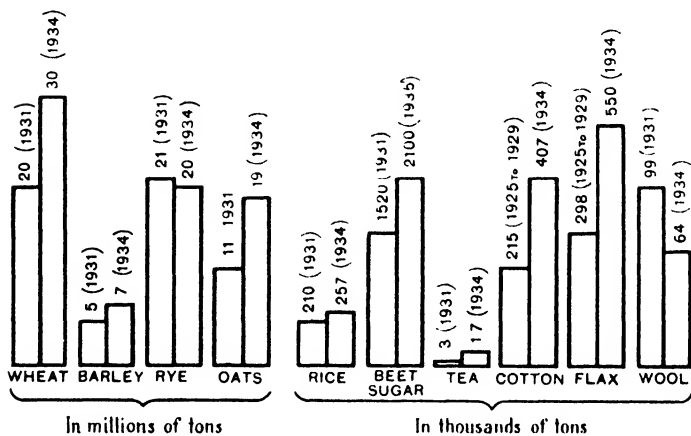


Fig. 99. CHANGES IN THE PRODUCTION OF THE CHIEF AGRICULTURAL CROPS IN U.S.S.R. (N.B. The vertical scales of the above columns are not uniform.) The years are indicated by the numbers in brackets.

The increase of wheat cultivation has been very rapid in West Siberia in the regions of rich black soil extending from the southern Urals eastward to Semipalatinsk.

In East Siberia the original annual deficit of wheat is decreasing in spite of the increase in population.

Only in one large area is there any marked decrease in wheat production. This is in Tadzhik, Usbek and Turkmen in Central Asia. This region, because of improved transport facilities (the "Turk-Sib." Railway) can now obtain supplies from the wheat lands around Semipalatinsk, and the irrigated lands can now be used for the cultivation of other crops such as rice, cotton, etc.

In spite of the rapid extension of wheat cultivation in other areas the Ukraine is still the leading wheat region, accounting for over 17 per cent. of the total acreage in both 1928 and 1934.

The principal wheat regions (1934) in order of acreage are:—

Ukraine .. .. .	17·4 per cent.
West Siberia .. .. .	13·2 per cent.
Orenburg region .. .. .	8·1 per cent.
Kazak and Kara Kalpak ..	7·6 per cent.

Between 1928 and 1934 the biggest increases in wheat acreage were around Orenburg, Kursk, Gorki, and Moscow.

(b) *Sugar beet*.—At one time the cultivation of sugar beet in Russia was almost entirely limited to the region between Kiev and Kursk, even though there were other areas in Russia just as suitable. Sugar beet is now cultivated in Transcaucasia, in West Siberia and in the Far East, as well as in other parts of south and central European Russia.

(c) *Cotton*.—Originally cotton cultivation was limited to Transcaucasia and Russian Turkestan. It was thought that cotton would only grow in these hot irrigated regions. Much of the raw cotton necessary for the cotton industries of the Moscow region had to be imported. Cotton is now cultivated:—

(i) In the Crimea, (ii) to the north of the Black Sea, (iii) to the north and east of the Sea of Azov.

The rainfall of these regions is far from heavy and cotton cultivation has only become possible by the introduction of special drought resisting varieties. The northward limit of cotton cultivation has thus been moved from lat. 43° N. in Central Asia to lat. 47° N. in European Russia. Usbek and Azerbaijan are still the leading cotton regions. Though they both produce more cotton than formerly their percentage of the total output is smaller because of the great increase of the total Russian production.

The following are the chief cotton areas in order of acreage (1934):—

Usbek .. .. .	46 per cent.
Azerbaijan .. .. .	10 per cent.
Azov-Black Sea and North Caucasus .. .. .	9 per cent.
Ukraine .. .. .	8 per cent.

(d) *Rice*.—Rice cultivation was originally limited to the irrigated areas where it competed with cotton for the water supply. The extension of cotton growing and the smaller available supplies of water for rice has led to a search for new rice lands, as in the N. Caucasus, the southern Ukraine and Kazak. The cultivation of rice in Russia is on very modern lines, totally different from the traditional methods of rice culture in India and China. The seeds are often sown in the swampy ground by aeroplanes, and huge reapers are used for harvesting (cf. Texas).

In addition much has been done to increase the acreage and yield of plants formerly cultivated only on small areas. Thus there is a great increase in the cultivation of tea in the Batum region; of lemons and oranges in the Crimea and on the eastern coastlands of the Black Sea. Russian figures state that in 1934 more than a hundred different kinds of sub-tropical plants were being grown experimentally in the Central Asiatic regions of Russia, *e.g.* Tadzhik, Kirghizia, etc.

(10) *ANIMALS*.—While the development of agriculture was prominent in the First Five Year Plan, the improvement of animal industries is a special feature of the Second Five Year Plan. Herds are being improved by the introduction of new stock from abroad; milk yields are higher; the number of cattle is increasing and cattle rearing is being introduced into areas where it has hitherto been of little importance, *viz.* in the northern lands and in the East of Siberia. As in other parts of Europe dairy farming areas are developing near to the industrial centres, *viz.* near Moscow, in the Ukraine, and in West Siberia (for the Kusnetsk region). Similar careful attention is being paid to the rearing of horses, sheep, goats and pigs. In the semi-arid districts north of the Caucasus and to the north and east of the Caspian Sea there is a very rapid increase in the numbers of black Astrakhan sheep. The tightly curled fleeces of Astrakhan lambs command good prices for use in the clothing trade.

Not only domestic animals, but wild animals also, are regarded as a valuable national asset. The northern forests once possessed almost unlimited numbers of fur bearing animals. In the past the hunting of these animals was so unrestricted that in many regions the most valuable animals

were almost exterminated. Hunting is now an organised industry, and protective measures are enforced to prevent the further reduction of the numbers of certain animals.

Large sovkhoses are devoted to the rearing of foxes, sables, martens, minks, and other fur bearing animals. These are probably the forerunners of large numbers of organised "fur" farms. Large sanctuaries have been created, which are so distributed as to include regions and animals typical of all the widely differing areas of Russia, *e.g.* in Kamchatka, the Altai Mountains, the Caucasus, etc. These sanctuaries will, in the future, provide surplus animals for the restocking of other areas. The introduction of fur bearing animals from other countries, *e.g.* N. American skunks, Argentine beavers, etc., is in the experimental stage.

By these means (1-9) Russia hopes to reorganise her agricultural resources so thoroughly that in the near future she will not only supply all her own requirements of food and raw materials, but will also have a large surplus of some commodities for export.

### **Present Distribution of Chief Agricultural Crops in European Russia**

From the agricultural point of view European Russia may be divided into seven zones (see Map, Fig. 100).

1. THE TUNDRA OF THE NORTH.—Here little cultivation is possible. In these regions experiments have been made in growing potatoes and vegetables.

2. THE CONIFEROUS FOREST BELT OF INFERTILE PODZOLS.—In the forest clearings agriculture is being developed by scientific means similar to those used on the poor soil areas of Sweden and Denmark. The chief crops are oats, rye and potatoes. Dairy farming is increasing rapidly and special varieties of wheat have been grown near Leningrad and nearly as far north as Archangel.

3. THE DECIDUOUS FOREST ZONE.—Here most of the forests have been cleared and the soils, though marshy, are, when drained, more fertile than the podzols further north. The chief crops are flax, rye and oats. In recent years there has been a rapid increase in dairy farming. Formerly little or



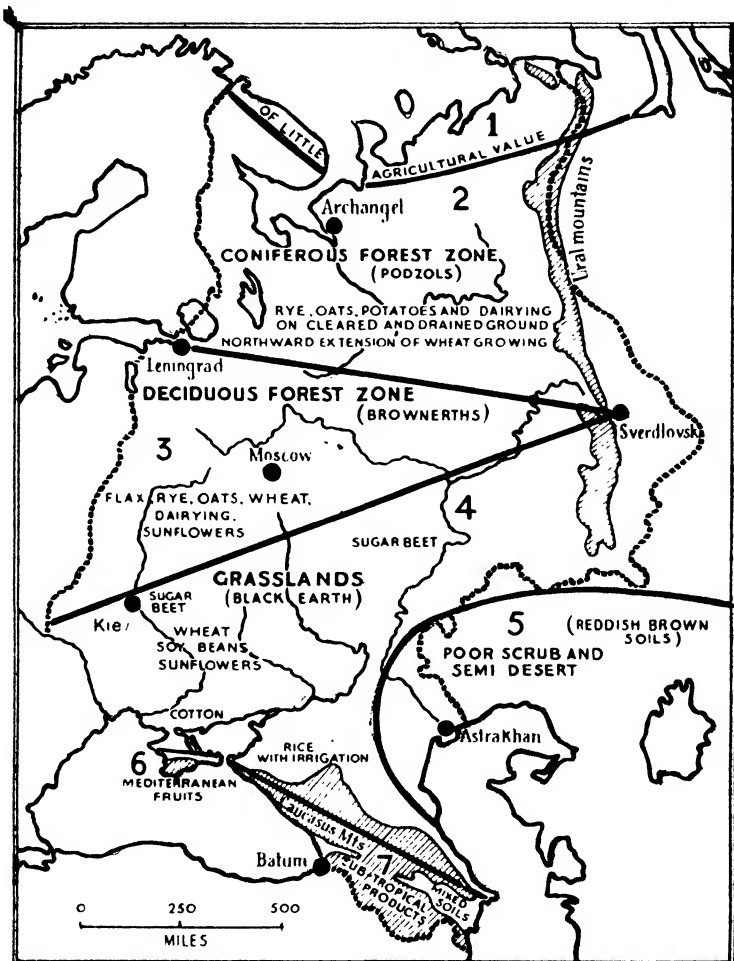


Fig. 100. U.S.S.R. (EUROPE ONLY). DISTRIBUTION OF AGRICULTURAL CROPS.

no wheat was grown in this region but it is now grown increasingly in the latitudes of Moscow and Gorki.

4. THE STEPPE LANDS.—This is the richest agricultural land of Russia and by far the most important crop is wheat. The yield per acre and total output are increasing. Sugar beet

is a second crop of importance especially around Kiev and Kursk, but its cultivation is extending eastwards. Soya beans have been introduced to the southern Ukraine and these, as well as the ubiquitous sunflower, are an important source of vegetable oil. In the hotter areas of the extreme south special varieties of cotton are being successfully grown.

5. THE ARID STEPPE.—Here water is scarce but agriculture is developed by means of irrigation. Land formerly unproductive is producing wheat, cotton and rice.

6. THE SOUTHERN CRIMEA.—This region has a climate very similar to that of the Mediterranean regions. Here are grown most varieties of Mediterranean fruits, oranges, grapes, almonds, etc.

7. TRANSCAUCASIA.—This region has higher temperatures both in summer and winter than the rest of European Russia. The agricultural products are therefore of the sub-tropical type. Fruits (including figs and oranges), cotton, silk, and tobacco are some of the important crops. Cork oak has been introduced successfully from Algeria. Tea is grown successfully near the Black Sea coast and an experimental cocoa plantation has been started.

## CHAPTER XXII

### UNION OF SOCIALIST SOVIET REPUBLICS: MINERALS AND INDUSTRIAL DEVELOPMENT

#### Mineral Resources

Russia is rich in minerals. During the last ten years rapid progress has been made in the survey of mineralised areas, and many new mining regions have been exploited. Because of ~~the~~ vastness of the area to be surveyed the work is still unfinished. Large areas in the basins of the River Yenesei and the River Lena will, it is expected, prove to be rich in a variety of minerals, for the region is similar in structure to the Canadian Shield of North America, one of the most highly mineralised regions of the world.

The mineral resources of Russia may be divided into three groups:—

(a) Coal; (b) oil; (c) other minerals including the metal ores.

(a) COAL.—The present coal reserves of Russia appear to be at least five times greater than they were known to be in 1914. The annual output of coal has also increased as is shown by the following figures:—

					millions of tons.
1913	..	..	..	..	29.1
1928	..	..	..	..	35.5
1934	..	..	..	..	93.5

Russia, in 1934, ranked fourth in the world as a producer of coal, but it is estimated that the production will increase to over 150 million tons and Russia will then hold third place, being surpassed only by the United States and the United Kingdom.

In pre-war Russia one coalfield, the Donetz, accounted for nearly 90 per cent. of the Russian output of coal. The modern "Donbas" region is still the most important and most actively developed coalfield of Russia. But although its present

output of coal is more than double that of 1913, it is no longer the only important coal mining area.

The Kuznetsk (Kuzbas) region of West Siberia (S.E. of Novo Sibirsk) has reserves of coal nearly six times as great as those of Donbas, and the output is increasing rapidly. Much of the Kuzbas coal is excellent for coking.

The coalfield south of Moscow (in the Tula district) yields brown coal and in pre-war days the output was decreasing because of the competition of the better quality coals of Donbas. Recent surveys show that the reserves of this field are greater than was formerly believed, and scientific methods of utilising the brown coals have led to increased output.

The three coalfields named above were the three principal coal regions of pre-war Russia. Coal was known to exist in other regions but the output was insignificant.

The principal coalfields of Modern Russia in order of their estimated reserves of coal are (see Fig. 101):—

- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. Kuzbas                     | *9. Karaganda                               |
| 2.*Tunguz (the Yenesei basin) | 10. Minusinsk                               |
| 3. Irkutsk                    | 11. Moscow                                  |
| 4. Donbas                     | 12. Central Asia (south of Ferghana)        |
| 5.*Pechora                    | 13. Ural (near Sverdlovsk and Chelyabinsk). |
| 6.*Burein (in the Amur basin) | 14. Far East (nr. Vladivostok)              |
| 7.*Yakut (the Lena basin)     | 15. Transcaucasus (nr. Batum)               |
| 8.*Kansk (brown coal)         |   |

\* Discovered and exploited since 1928.

The Yenesei and Lena basins (Tunguz and Yakut) are known to have vast reserves of coal, but investigation of these areas is, as yet, incomplete.

The Pechora coalfield lies in the tundra region of the north of European Russia. While it was formerly thought that coal existed there, the inaccessibility of the region prevented its investigation and exploitation.

Karaganda is in the steppe region of Asiatic Russia. The output of coal is not great at present, but the reserves are extensive and in the future it may rank as third coalfield of Russia.

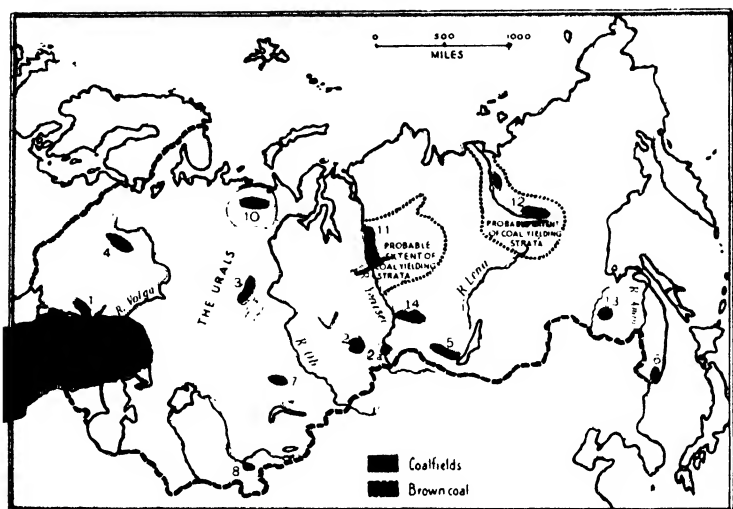


Fig. 101. THE COALFIELDS OF THE U.S.S.R.—The first nine are numbered in order of importance according to the 1934 output, the annual yield of the remaining five is at present low. 1. Donbas. 2. Kuzbas and 2a Minusinsk. 3. Ural. 4. Moscow (brown coal). 5. Irkutsk. 6. Far East. 7. Karaganda. 8. Central Asia. 9. Transcaucasia. 10. Pechora. 11. Tunguz. 12. Yakut, 13. Bureinsk. 14. Kansk (brown coal).

In the Urals coal mining was originally limited to the brown coal district near Chelyabinsk, but coal deposits have now been discovered and exploited in the Sverdlovsk region. These resources are, however, insufficient for the great metal industries of the Ural region and additional supplies are brought from Kuzbas.

The opening-up of the Asiatic coalfields is of great importance in relation to the fuel supply of the Trans-Siberian railway. This is especially true of the Kuzbas, Minusinsk, Irkutsk, Bourein and Vladivostok coal deposits. The far Eastern coalfields will also be important in relation to Northern Pacific shipping routes and as the basis of industrial development in a region remote from other manufacturing areas.

The following figures show the major changes in coal production in Russia since 1913:—(see also Fig. 102)—

COALFIELD				1913 IN MILLIONS OF TONS	1934	BRITISH COALFIELDS WITH SOMEWHAT SIMILAR YIELDS	
Donbas	...	...	...	25·3	60·0	York, Derby and Nottingham	66·6
Kuzbas	...	...	...	·8	11·6	Lancashire	13·7
Ural	...	...	...	1·2	5·5	Warwickshire	5·1
Moscow	...	...	...	·3	4·9	—	—
East Siberia	...	...	...	·8	3·4	Ayrshire	4·0
Far East...	...	...	...	·4	3·0	N. Wales	2·7
Karaganda	...	...	...	—	1·8	Kent	2·0
Central Asia	...	...	...	·2	1·0	Forest of Dean	1·2
Transcaucasia	...	...	...	·07	·2	Shropshire	·6
Others	...	...	...	·1	1·9	—	—
Total	...	...	...	29·17	93·3	Total for all British Isles	220·7

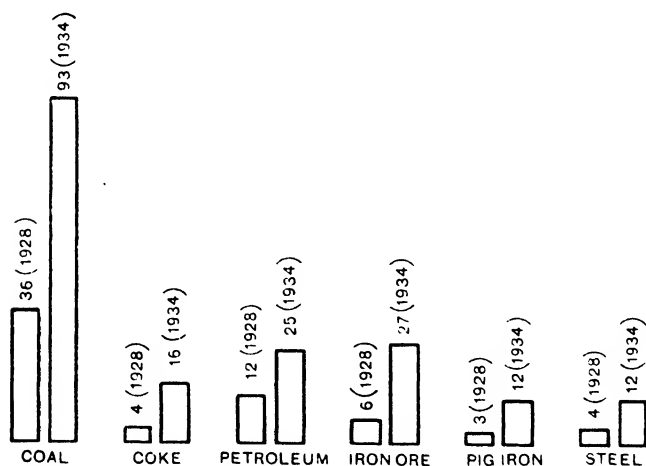
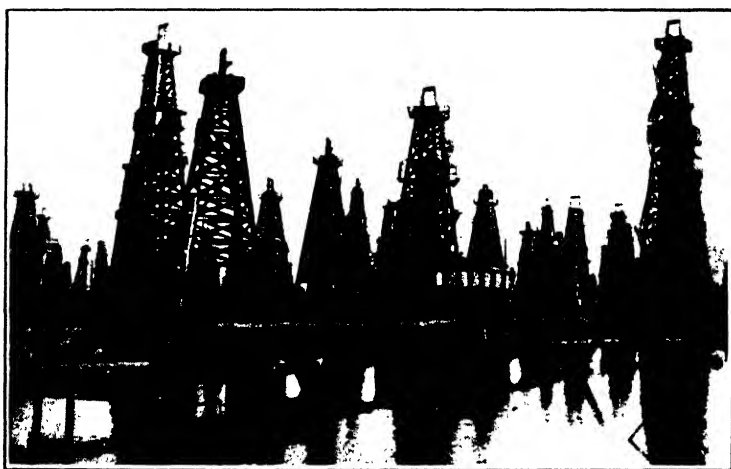


Fig. 102. U.S.S.R. TO SHOW INCREASE IN PRODUCTION OF MINERALS  
(FIGURES DENOTE MILLIONS OF TONS).

*Peat.*—Extending from the Polish border eastward to the Urals are vast peat deposits. Until recently these have not been utilised, but already Russia ranks as the first producer and consumer of peat. It is used primarily as fuel in the regions poor in coal, but in the Moscow district it is used instead of coal in one of the electric power stations.

(b) *OIL.*—The Russian oilfields of Baku in Transcaucasia have long been famous. The oil wells of Baku on the south side of the Caucasus, and of Grozny and Maikop on the north



*Planet News Ltd.*

**OIL DERRICKS AT BAKU.**

These oilfields yield over 10,000 tons of oil daily. The oil is conveyed by pipe line to Batum on the Black Sea.

side used to account for 96 per cent. of the total Russian output of oil. Oil was also obtained in small quantities in the northern half of the island of Sakhalin, at Emba near the northern shores of the Caspian Sea, and at Ferghana in Central Asia.

Recent surveys of the oil resources have revealed new supplies and Caucasia is no longer the only important oil region. The Caucasian oilfields have been re-surveyed and new wells opened. Oil has also been found at Neftedag on the eastern shores of the Caspian opposite to Baku.

The outstanding feature of the new discoveries is the oil belt which extends along the whole length of the Urals on their western side from Ukhta in the north to Sterlitamak in the south.

The changes in the oil production of Russia are shown by the following figures:—

REGION				1913	1933
				in thousands of tons.	
Transcaucasus	..	..	..	7,669	15,939
North Caucasus	..	..	..	1,295	5,927
Ural Belt	..	..	..	118	234
Far East (Sakhalin)	..	..	..	—	197
Central Asia	..	..	..	152	206
				<hr/>	<hr/>
				9,234	22,503
				<hr/>	<hr/>

A number of pipe lines transport the oil to the industrial districts and to the coast for export.

(1) From Baku to Batum on the Black Sea.

(2) From Grozny and Maikop to Tuapse on the Black Sea.

(c) MINERAL ORES.—In addition to her reserves of coal and oil Russia is rich in other minerals. Investigations since 1928 have revealed very large reserves, especially of iron ore.

The most important mineral regions are (Fig. 103):—

(1) The Urals, where in addition to coal and oil there are deposits of iron, copper, gold, aluminium ore, nickel, manganese and platinum.

(2) The Caucasus region—with important deposits of copper, aluminium, nickel and iron.

(3) The mountains of Usbek and Tadzhik where copper, gold, lead and zinc are obtained.

(4) The mountain regions between Lake Balkhash and Lake Baikal yielding gold, lead, zinc, iron and manganese.

(5) The Lena basin which has rich gold deposits.

The estimated mineral reserves are so abundant that Russia has apparently greater resources of iron, manganese, phosphorus, potassium and oil than any other country.



The principal iron ore regions are:—

1. In the neighbourhood of Kursk.
2. Near Orsk in the southern Urals.
3. At Telbes in the Kuzbas region.
4. The Murmansk peninsula.
5. The Magnet mountain near Magnitogorsk in the Urals.

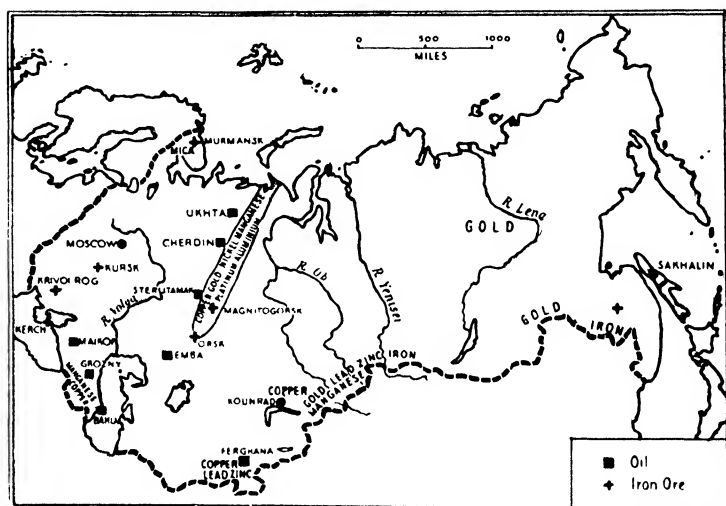


Fig. 103. U.S.S.R. MINERALS OTHER THAN COAL.

6. At Krivoi Rog in the Ukraine. This was the principal iron-ore region of Tsarist Russia.

### Water Power and Electricity

In Tsarist Russia there was very little development of electricity and not a single hydro-electric power station. To-day there are great electric power stations in all the industrial regions and the generation of electricity has increased tenfold since 1913.

The chief groups of electric power stations are: (1) around Leningrad; (2) in the Moscow region; (3) in the Ukraine; (4) in Transcaucasia; (5) in the Urals and (6) in Kuzbas.

The chief hydro-electric centres are:—(1) The famous power-station at Dnieproges on the River Dnieper about 60 miles south of Dniepropetrovsk (see Fig. 106).

(2) Two large hydro-electric centres in the neighbourhood of Leningrad, one on the River Volkhov and the other on the River Svir.

(3) Near the north-west corner of the White Sea on the River Niva.

(4) In the Caucasus mountains.

(5) In the Volga basin where hydro-electric stations are in course of construction, near Yaroslav, Gorki and Perm.

So far there has been little progress in the establishment of hydro-electric centres in the mountainous areas of Asiatic Russia. Here there are many swift-flowing mountain streams which could provide abundant electrical energy.

### **The Industrial Development of Russia**

(1) **PRE-WAR INDUSTRIAL DEVELOPMENT.**—It has already been shown that Russia is striving to organise her agricultural and mineral resources. She is making even greater efforts to develop manufacturing industries.

Whereas twenty years ago industrial activity was much less important than agriculture, to-day industrial enterprises are more than twice as important as agriculture, even though the latter has itself increased rapidly.

In pre-war Russia manufacturing was not only relatively unimportant but it consisted mainly of home industries and was entirely confined to European Russia.

More than 50 per cent. of Russian manufacturing industries were located in the region of Leningrad, Moscow, Ivanovo and Gorki. There was a second industrial zone in the Ukraine on the Donetz coalfield which utilised the iron ore of Krivoi Rog and some of the mineral ores from the Urals. The Urals, themselves rich in minerals, had few metallurgical centres, but acted as a source of raw material for the small metal works of the Ukraine and Moscow districts. The same was true of Central Asia (Turkestan) which produced cotton for the mills of the Moscow region, but did not manufacture cotton goods. Thus, in the past the raw materials of the

whole of Russia were tributary to the industrial areas of the European section.

(2) MODERN INDUSTRIAL DEVELOPMENT.—The Soviet re-organisation aims at effecting a widespread re-distribution of industries throughout the country, so that the European area will no longer have an industrial monopoly. It has been shown that the output of coal, iron-ore, petroleum, mineral-ores and peat has increased very rapidly (Fig. 102). The industries based on these materials are being developed with

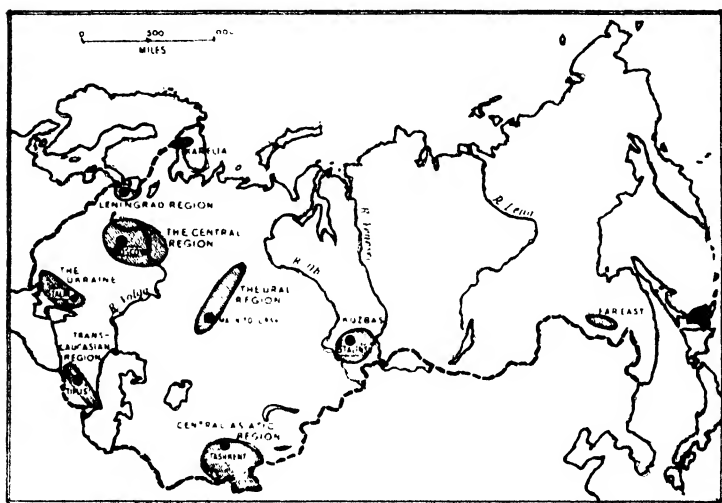


Fig. 104. THE INDUSTRIAL REGIONS OF U.S.S.R.

equal speed. Russia already ranks as the second producer of pig-iron and the fourth producer of steel in the world. Progress in the textile industries and in the manufacture of wood products, leather, etc., is almost equally great.

Large scale development is one of the characteristic features of modern Russia; and already a number of industrial concerns rank as among the largest of their kind in the world, e.g. the Dnieproges hydro-electric station; and Rostov tractor works; the Moscow truck factory; the Gorki motor works, etc. Modern Russia is a country of impressive figures and immense undertakings.

The beginning of the industrial reorganisation during the First Five-Year Plan, were concerned with the heavy industries, the manufacture of machinery, farm implements, motor tractors, motor cars, etc.

During the Second Five-Year Plan (1932-37) more attention has been paid to the development of the lighter industries, textiles, leather manufacturing, pottery, chemicals, and agricultural industries, *e.g.* the refining of sugar, extraction of vegetable oils, the preserving of fruit and foods, the making of margarine, etc. It would seem that the final aim of Soviet Russia is to produce, as far as possible from Russian raw materials, every manufactured article that can possibly be required in the homes, farms, fields and factories of the country.

The chief industrial areas of modern Russia are (Fig. 104):—

(1) The Moscow-Ivanovo-Gorki region in the centre of European Russia.

(2) The Donbas region of the Ukraine.

(3) The Urals.

(4) The Leningrad region.

(5) The Kuzbas region of Siberia.

(6) Transcaucasia.

(7) Central Asia in Usbek and Tadzhik.

### The Moscow Region

In Tsarist Russia the Moscow region was responsible for over 50 per cent. of the manufactures of the country and it still remains the most important industrial area.

This district (Fig. 105) includes the towns of Moscow, Yaroslav, Tula, Lipetsk, Stalinogorsk, Voronezh, Gorki, Kalinin and Ivanovo. In contrast to the industrial regions of Britain, the towns of the premier industrial area of Russia are long distances apart, *e.g.* Tula is over 100 miles from Moscow, and Gorki over 200 miles distant (*cf.* London to Liverpool).

The early development of manufacturing in this region was primarily due to the fact that it was virtually the geometric centre and the route centre of European Russia. The brown coal deposits of the Tula district were of poor quality and considered to be practically useless for industry. Also there

were no deposits of metal ores. Coal was brought from the Donetz coalfield and cotton from the Tashkent region of Central Asia. In spite of obvious drawbacks such as the lack of local supplies of fuel and raw material, the Moscow region was responsible for 99 per cent. of the cotton manufactures of pre-war Russia, and nearly all the manufactures of wool and leather. Metal industries were few, most of the industrial machinery being imported from the manufacturing countries of Europe, viz. England and Germany.

Modern methods of utilising brown coal in conjunction with better grade Donetz coals have led to a rapid development

of the brown coal region, the output having increased sixteen-fold since 1913.

Supplies of peat are used in the great power houses, e.g. at Shatura, and the towns of the Moscow region are now linked by an electric grid system, by which ample supplies of electricity are carried to the factories.

This region still accounts for over 90 per cent. of the cotton

manufactures of Russia, and increased supplies of raw cotton are brought from Central Asia and the new cotton fields of the southern Ukraine. The chief cotton centres are around Moscow and Ivanovo (the Manchester of Russia).

Linen is manufactured around Ivanovo and Kalinin (Tver), there being abundant supplies of local flax.

Metal industries are being developed. Formerly no pig-iron was produced but now there is a considerable output. Most of the iron-ore is obtained from Kursk and other metal ores are brought from the Ural region.

In the Moscow region to-day are located 36 per cent. of the metal working industries of Russia. These include the making

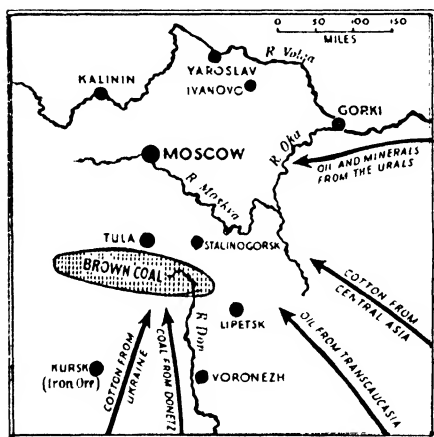


Fig. 105. THE MOSCOW INDUSTRIAL REGION.

of machinery for other industries, the manufacture of motor cars, railway engines, aeroplanes, electrical equipment, ball-bearings, etc. There are important metal works at Tula and Lipetsk; motor cars are made at Moscow and Gorki; Briansk and Kolomna specialise in the manufacture of locomotives and machinery; while at other centres are manufactured river steamers, escalators, watches, microscopes, and a great variety of scientific apparatus.

In addition to the textile and metal industries the Moscow area is responsible for over 60 per cent. of the newly-created chemical industries. Formerly Russia imported chemicals from other countries and manufactured none herself. This branch of industry has grown rapidly and includes the production of chemicals from coal and peat, the manufacture of fertilisers, the distillation of alcohol from potatoes (which are extensively grown in the central area of European Russia) and the manufacture of synthetic rubber. The latter industry, located at Yaroslav and Voronezh, has, proved completely successful.

Moscow (3,600,000) is not only the centre of the greatest region of industrial development but is the capital of "All the Russias." It was established as a fortress on the River Moskva in the eleventh century. Its position in the open forest zone gave it protection from the nomadic peoples of the grasslands to the south. From this centre, partly because of the ease of transport along the valleys of the many tributaries of the River Volga, and partly because of its central position, the power of Muscovy spread in all directions. To-day it is the great nodal centre of Russian routes and from it railways diverge to Leningrad, Riga, Warsaw, Kiev, the Ukraine, Central Asia, Siberia, the Urals and Archangel. In 1703 St. Petersburg (modern Leningrad) was founded as a new capital during the period of Western expansion, but because of its more central position and historical significance, Moscow again became the capital in 1927. It is a great industrial centre. In addition to textiles and metal goods it also manufactures woollen goods, leather goods, paper, etc.

### **The Ukraine**

The southern section of European Russia is not only the richest agricultural area of the U.S.S.R. producing immense

crops of wheat, sugar beet, sunflowers (for oil-seeds) and cotton, but it contains the most productive Russian coalfield, Donbas; the largest hydro-electric power-station (the Dnieprostroi); has rich deposits of iron-ore (Krivoi Rog, and Kerch); and is within easy reach of oil-producing regions (Maikop, Grozny and Baku). Because of its natural advantages, *i.e.* sources of power, supplies of iron-ore and oil, easy communication across the treeless steppes, and its fertility, this is the most densely populated area of the whole country, and contains over half the population of European Russia. The average density of population (114 per square



Fig. 106. THE UKRAINIAN INDUSTRIAL REGION.—Numbers refer to areas described in the text.

mile) is however, small when compared with that of the industrial areas of Western Europe.

In South Russia there are four distinct centres of industrial development (Fig. 106).

(1) THE DONBAS.—Immediately to the south of the River Donetz is an extensive coalfield over two hundred miles long. Before the Revolution this coalfield supplied nearly 90 per cent. of the coal mined in Russia. The output has more than trebled since 1913, but in spite of the increase the coalfield now accounts for only 64 per cent. of Russian coal, because of the opening up of new fields. Most of the coal is of good



*Planet News Ltd.*

#### THE DNIEPER HYDRO-ELECTRIC POWER STATION.

In this district many large-scale heavy industries have been established, e.g. the Zaporozhye steel plant, the Dnieper aluminium and magnesium plants. The power is used to run the trains from Zaporozhye to Krivoi Rog, where it is used in the iron mines. The dam is about half a mile long and 180 feet high. There are nine turbines each capable of developing 90,000 H.P. The raising of the river level has made the river navigable where formerly there were rapids.



quality and suitable for coking, while in the east of the coalfield are deposits of anthracite.

Large modern blast furnaces and foundries have been constructed, as at Makeyevka and Stalin (Youzovsky). Most of the iron-ore is obtained from Krivoi Rog to the west of the River Dnieper, and from the Kerch peninsula. There is a large number of metallurgical works and machine building factories, *e.g.* at Lugansk, and Kramatorsk. To the east of the coalfield at Stalingrad (Tsaritsin) on the bend of the Volga, are the now world-famous agricultural tractor works.

(2) **THE DNEPER COMBINE.**—The second industrial centre is the great Dnieper combine, around Dnipropetrovsk\* and Dnieproges, both on the River Dnieper. This region lies midway between the coal of the Donetsk and the iron-ore of Krivoi Rog. South of Dnipropetrovsk the river is impeded by rapids and there is a fall of over 100 feet in 40 miles. The Dnieper dam is over half a mile long, and 180 feet high (*cf.* Niagara Falls). The electrical energy developed at Dnieprostoi is used for the production of coke, steel, aluminium, and chemicals. A cable carries electricity to the industrial centres of the Donetsk coalfield, upwards of 150 miles away. Novo Zaporozhye (192,000) a new town of extremely rapid growth, is an engineering centre specialising in agricultural machinery.

(3) **KRIVOI ROG.**—The third industrial region of South Russia is around Krivoi Rog. The iron-ore district extends from Krivoi Rog south-westwards to Nikolaev at the mouth of the River Bug. There are large metal works at Krivoi Rog.

*Odessa* (491,000) to the east of the mouth of the River Bug is a great wheat exporting centre and manufactures agricultural machinery.

(4) **SEA OF AZOV SHORES.**—The fourth industrial region of South Russia is to be found along the shores of the Sea of Azov. The chief centres are Rostov, Mariupol and Taganrog. Iron-ore is brought by steamers from the Kerch peninsula in the Eastern Crimea and coal carried back as return cargo.

In addition to the four metal working centres described above, there are a number of other industries in the large towns. These include flour milling, the extraction of sun-flower

seed oil, and the refining of sugar, industries which are the direct outcome of agriculture. Nearly 70 per cent. of the sugar production is in Southern Russia, around Kiev, though the growing of sugar beet and the refining of sugar is moving eastwards. There are also tanneries, boot and shoe factories, and tobacco factories. *Kharkov* (650,000) formerly a large market town, is now the centre for a number of agricultural industries, makes agricultural machinery and has a large electrochemical works.

Odessa, Berdiansk, Mariupol, Taganrog, and Rostov are the exporting centres for the surplus agricultural produce, principally wheat.

### The Urals (Fig. 107)

The Urals are rich in minerals, such as iron, copper, nickel, lead, zinc, petroleum, and platinum. Russia is once more the leading world producer of platinum. In pre-Revolution days the methods of extraction of the ores and of smelting were extremely primitive. The known coal deposits were poor in quality and unsuitable for coking. Hence there were formerly few metallurgical centres in the Ural region and most of the ores raised were sent to the Moscow region. Now, the economic development of the Ural region has

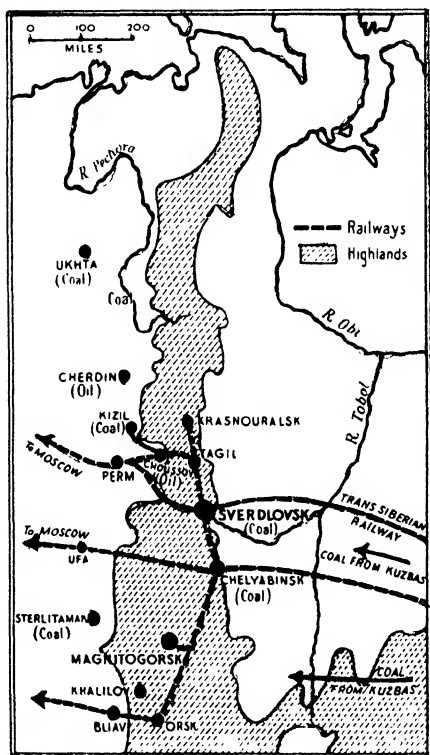


Fig. 107. THE TOWNS OF THE URAL REGION.  
—The chief manufacturing towns lie south of Tagil.

completely changed. Coal is mined around Sverdlovsk and Chelyabinsk, but the total output of coal from these fields is small in relation to the requirements of the metal working centres, and vast quantities of good coking coal are brought nearly 1,400 miles from Kuznetsk in Central Asia.

There appears to be a rich oil yielding zone along the western side of the Urals. Oil is already being obtained at—

- (a) Ukhta in the north.
- (b) Choussov, to the east of Perm, and
- (c) Sterlitamak, to the east of Samara.

The industrial development of the Northern Urals is retarded by difficulty of communication, and so the distribution of the metal industries is located in the centre and south between Tagil and Orsk. The chief centres are Sverdlovsk and Magnitogorsk. The most spectacular feature of the Urals is a town of 170,000 inhabitants, Magnitogorsk, which did not exist eight years ago. Four huge blast furnaces are already working, using the rich ores of Magnet mountain and coal from Kuznetsk. Four more furnaces are in progress of construction and when complete the production of pig-iron and steel from Magnitogorsk alone will be nearly half the total output of the British Isles.

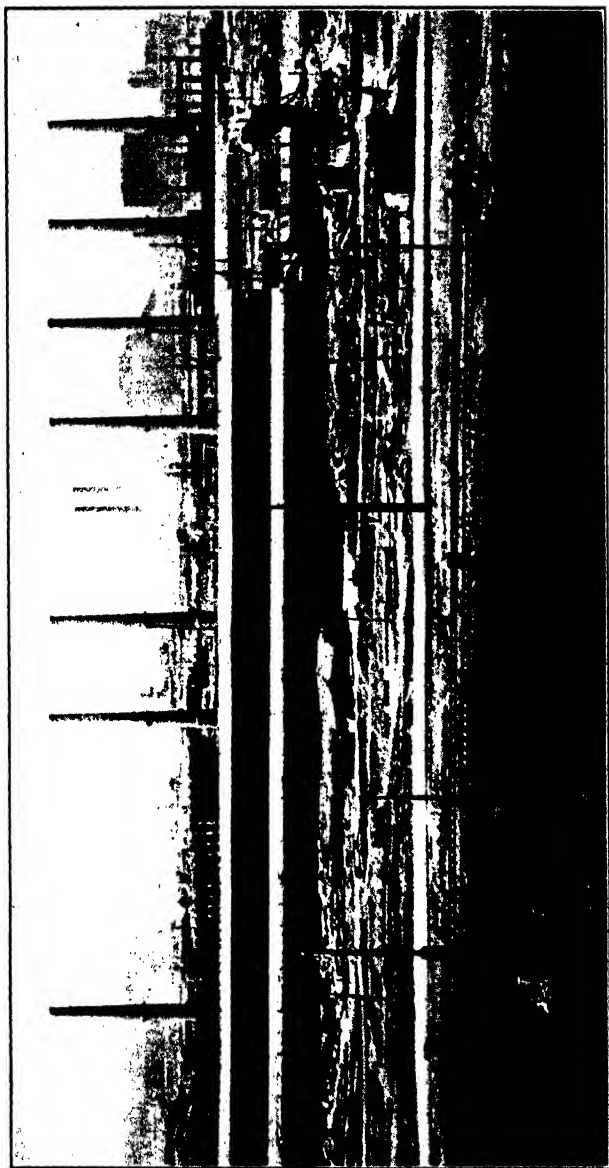
Iron is also smelted at Tagil, Sverdlovsk, Chelyabinsk, and Khalilov, copper at Krasno-Uralsk and Bliav; and chromium, nickel and copper at Orsk.

Iron manufacturing is proceeding apace. Railway wagons are made at Tagil, tractors at Chelyabinsk, electrical equipment at Sverdlovsk and diesel engines at Orsk.

### **The Leningrad Region**

This region lacks both coal and raw materials. Industries developed there during the period when Leningrad was the capital. There is a small textile industry and, because Leningrad is a port, shipbuilding is important, especially the construction of ice breakers. There is some engineering, the manufacture of electrical equipment, and of railway stock.

Two great hydro-electric stations have been built near Leningrad on the River Volkhov and the River Svir. Cheap and abundant electricity has led to the development of a number of new industries, viz. paper, cellulose and aluminium.



*Planet News Ltd.*

A PORTION OF THE IRONWORKS AT MAGNITOGORSK.  
Magnitogorsk, situated near the southern end of the Urals, is one of the "mushroom" towns of the Five Year Plan.

*Leningrad* (2,776,000) was built by Peter the Great, at the mouth of the River Neva, in a district which was almost uninhabited marshland. This was during the period of the westward expansion of Russia, and St. Petersburg, as it was then named, was the natural outlet of Russia to Western Europe. During its period as capital (1703-1927) it became a great port, through which Russia received manufactured goods from Western Europe, and exported large quantities of timber, and food products. The position of Leningrad was essentially marginal in relation to the Russian Empire, and this marginal position was emphasised when Russia lost so much of her Baltic territory during the Great War. Moreover, the Russians had always regarded Moscow as their national centre, and so in 1927 Leningrad was superseded by Moscow, but it remains the one great Baltic port of the country, since the ports of Reval, Riga, etc., are no longer Russian.

### **The Kola Peninsula**

During the Great War a railway was built from Leningrad through Kandalashka (on the western arm of the White Sea) to the ice-free harbour of Murmansk. In recent years there has been active industrial development in the neighbourhood of the railway north of Kandalashka. The chief centre is Kirovsk. In this region are aluminium works, chemical works, fish canning factories, and wood-working centres. The district appears to be rich in mineral ores awaiting development, the chief being iron, copper, nickel, bauxite (for aluminium) and mica.

### **Transcaucasia (Fig. 108)**

South of the Caucasus Mountains is a great east to west depression drained to the east by the River Kura, and to the west by the River Rion. This region comprises the Georgian, Azerbaijan and Russian Armenian Soviet Republics. It differs climatically from the rest of Russia in that it has warmer winters and a large percentage of winter rain. All types of Mediterranean fruits are grown as well as wheat, sugar beet, tobacco, silk and cotton. Tea is grown on the hill-slopes, and though the yield is insufficient for Russian needs, Russia ranks as the greatest producer of tea outside south-east Asia.

Baku, Batum, Tiflis, and Erivan are the chief towns.

*Baku* (700,000) on the Caspian Sea is one of the most important oil-yielding centres in the world. The oil is carried by pipe-line westwards to Batum on the Black Sea where it is exported.

*Tiflis* (400,000) in the upper Kura valley, commands routes eastward down the Kura valley to the Caspian, westward down the Rion valley to the Black Sea, northwards via the

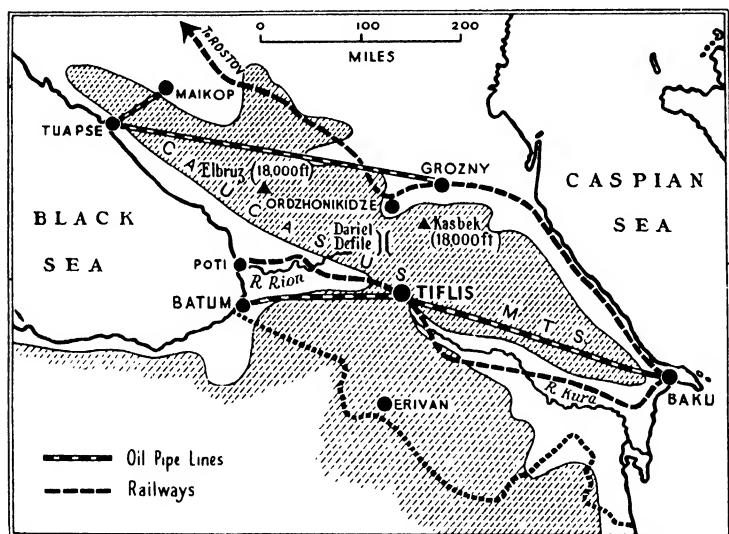


Fig. 108. THE CAUCASIAN REGION.

great military road through the Dariel Defile across the Caucasus Mountains, and south-westwards to Erzerum and Asia Minor. It is engaged in the manufacture of cotton, woollen and silk goods, clothing, and in fruit-canning, and the manufacture of margarine. It has film studios and manufactures musical instruments.

*Erivan* (111,000) in Armenia, is also engaged in the canning of fruit, and has tobacco works, clothing factories and film studios.

**Central Asia**

In Asiatic Russia the development of manufacturing industries is taking place in:—

- (1) Kusbas.
- (2) Tadzhik and Usbek, around Samarkand and Tashkent.
- (3) Around Irkutsk.
- (4) In the Far East.

These regions will be described fully in the volume on Asia.

**The Forest Industries**

The great coniferous forest belt of Russia, extending from the borders of Finland to the Pacific Ocean contains one-third of the total forest land of the world. There are vast resources of pine, fir, larch, and spruce of various types which could be used for timber, paper making, and the manufacture of cellulose. So far, these resources have not been fully investigated. The western section (*i.e.* in European Russia) near to the greatest centres of population, has been far more extensively exploited than the forests of Siberia. The timber of these forests is used in the paper and cellulose works of the Leningrad and Moscow regions. The output of timber has increased since 1928 by 25 per cent. in European Russia, but by 100 per cent. in eastern Siberia, and 200 per cent. in Western Siberia. A number of large timber combines (*i.e.* factories, including saw mills, paper and cellulose works, etc.) have been constructed, *e.g.* at:—

- (1) Kondopozh in Karelia (to the east of Finland).
- (2) Kama in the northern Urals.
- (3) Krasnoyarsk in eastern Siberia, and
- (4) Igarka, the new Arctic port at the mouth of the River Yenesei, which acts as a summer outlet for the Siberian forests.

**The Development of Transport**

**RAILWAYS.**—The outstanding feature of the railway system of Russia before 1913 was the existence of immense railway networks converging on Moscow and Leningrad in

European Russia, and little more than two main lines (the Trans-Siberian and the Trans-Caspian railways) in Asiatic Russia. European Russia had 11·3 miles of railway per 1,000 square miles while Asiatic Russia had ·6 miles of railway per 1,000 square miles. In European Russia there were only three railway lines in the forested zone north of the latitude of Leningrad. These were:—

(a) Leningrad to Murmansk.

(b) Vologda to Archangel.

(c) Kirov (Viatka) to Kotlas on the northern Dwina river.

Railways are now being constructed in this forest zone. Apart from the routes which converged on Moscow and Leningrad, the main railways of European Russia ran to the Baltic ports, (Riga, Reval, etc.), to the Black Sea ports, (e.g. Odessa). They were an essential part of the old economy of exporting wheat, flax, butter, timber, etc., and of carrying imported supplies of coal, and manufactured goods to the consuming regions. As the dependence of Russia on imported coal and manufactures is rapidly diminishing, so the importance of these railways will decrease.

The need for new railways was greater in Asiatic Russia than in European Russia, and while many new railways have been built in the former territory, in the latter more attention has been paid to the improvement of existing tracks and the construction of a few important through routes. For example:—

(a) A new railway runs northward from Rostov, giving direct communication between Rostov and Moscow.

(b) A new length of railway north of Briansk gives Leningrad direct communication with the Ukraine, without touching Moscow.

(c) A new railway links Kazan with Sverdlovsk, thus lessening the pressure of traffic on the existing line, via Ufa and Chelyabinsk, between Moscow and Siberia. In the Ukraine many of the railways east of the River Dnieper are being electrified.

While the railways of European Russia have been improved, far more attention has been paid to the construction of first-class motor roads and the manufacture of automobiles.



Motor routes will operate from the railways just as omnibus services are now used in the rural areas of England.

**RIVERS.**—The rivers of Russia, because of their size and gentle gradients are suitable for the extensive development of water transport, though ice breakers are necessary in the winter. In the past, little was done to unify the water transport system of Russia by the construction of canals. Several canals linking the rivers and providing through water routes have already been constructed and others have been planned.

**AIRCRAFT.**—There has been an amazing development of air transport since 1928 and Russia is now one of the leading countries in the development of aircraft. There are now regular air services between Moscow and Leningrad, the Ukraine, Transcaucasia, central Asia, and the Far East.

There are also regular air services through the forested zones, both of European and Asiatic Russia, where road and rail communication is as yet poor or non-existent. Most of the large Russian cities are linked by regular air services. The aeroplane, however, is not merely used for the transport of passengers and mail. It is being used in the surveying of remote areas, to fight forest fires, and to sow seeds in the semi-desert areas.

### **The Future of Russia**

From the foregoing description it will be clear that great changes have been wrought in Russia since 1928. In the short space of eight years the economic geography has been virtually re-made, and changes have been effected which, in our own country, have taken over 150 years to accomplish. What these changes augur for the future of Russia and what may be their ultimate effect on the rest of the world, is a matter to which thoughtful people throughout the world are giving serious consideration.

Up to 1914 agriculture in Russia was primitive, industries in the remote areas were mostly of the domestic type, and mineral resources were poorly developed. In spite of immense and varied natural resources Russia imported large quantities of both coal and raw materials and nearly all the manufactured goods and machinery her people required. In fact,

she was one of the most valued markets for the manufactures of the industrial regions of western Europe.

In the near future Russia hopes to be self-supporting. Producing her own machinery, textiles, chemicals, etc., she will no longer provide a market for the manufactured goods of Western Europe. Rather, as her industrial development proceeds Russia may also be seeking world markets for her surplus manufactures and so add to the already acute competition in other continents. Again, by developing new sources

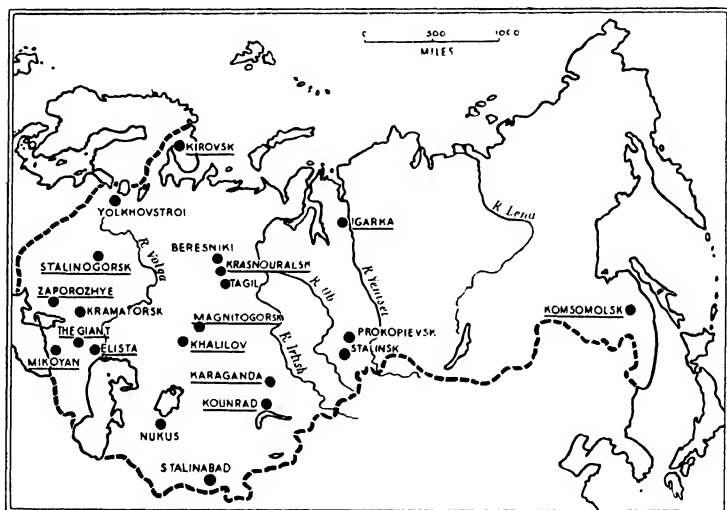


Fig. 109. THE NEW TOWNS OF U.S.S.R.—New towns underlined. The other towns marked have experienced mushroom growth from small villages.

of food and raw materials Russia will need to buy very little from other countries. On the other hand as the exploitation of her forests and agricultural lands proceeds she will have increasing quantities of wheat, flax, butter, sugar, timber and oil to sell to other countries, in competition with those lands already producing these commodities. Thus Russia in the future may always have a large favourable trade balance, which will be used for the further improvement and development of the country. It is for these reasons that some people consider that Russia with a population of 170,500,000 is an economic,

social, and military menace to the rest of the world. It is essential that all citizens, and all those who will shortly have the privilege of citizenship, should study the problems of the new Russia carefully and logically from a sane and unbiassed standpoint.

### **Some of the New Cities and Towns of Russia**

The development of new industrial districts and agricultural areas has led to the creation of many new towns and the development of large towns where only small villages existed. Some of the chief of these are enumerated below and where possible their population is given. Their location is given on the map (Fig. 109).

In all, nearly a hundred new towns have been created and 2,000,000 people live in them. In addition many of the old towns have increased in size very rapidly. The population of Moscow increased by 37 per cent. between 1926 and 1931. During the same period Makeyevka increased by 190 per cent. Chelyabinsk by 106 per cent. and Stalingrad by 104 per cent. These are merely a few instances of the rapid growth of the industrial towns of Modern Russia.

SOME NEW TOWNS OF EUROPEAN RUSSIA.

TOWN	POP.	DISTRICT	OCCUPATIONS
Magnitogorsk ...	170,000	S. Urals ...	Iron Works
Khalivov ...	—	S. Urals ...	Metallurgy
Beresniki ...	80,000	N. Urals ...	Chemicals
Krasnouralsk ...	—	Central Urals ...	Copper
Tagil ...	—	N. Urals ...	Metallurgy and Wagon Works
Zaporozhe ...	192,000	Ukraine ...	Metallurgy
Kramatorsk ...	78,000	Ukraine ...	Metallurgy
Kivorsk...	40,000	Kola peninsula ...	Canning and Metal and Chemical Works
Stalinogorsk ...	5,000	Moscow region ...	Chemicals

## SOME NEW TOWNS OF ASIATIC RUSSIA.

TOWN	POP.	DISTRICT	OCCUPATIONS
Stalinsk ...	200,000	Kuzbas ...	Metallurgy
Prokopeivsk ...	117,000	Kuzbas ...	Coal Mining
Anjero Sudjeansk	100,000	Kuzbas ...	Mining
Karaganda ...	120,000	Kazakslan ...	Coal Mines
Kounrad ...	50,000	Kazakslan ...	Copper Mining and Smelting
Kemerova ...	106,000	W. Siberia ...	Zinc, Coal and Oil
Igarka ...	10,000	Mouth of Yenesei	Arctic Port, Saw Mills
Stalinabad ...	50,000	Tadjik ...	Development of Tropical Agriculture and Cotton
Frunze ...	100,000	Kirghizia ...	New Capital
Komsomolsk ...	—	Lower Amur ...	River Port and Ship-building
The Giant ...	—	N. of the Caucasus	Agricultural Sovkhoz



## QUESTIONS

1. What do you understand by the Baltic Shield, the Hercynian System, and the Armorican System? Describe the main features of each.
2. Describe the various types of lowland which occur in Europe.
3. Which areas of Europe may be said to have benefited from the Ice Age, and which have not? Give reasons for your answer.
4. By reference to European lakes, indicate the various ways in which lakes may be formed.
5. Describe the coastal features of Europe along the west coast from Hammerfest to Lisbon.
6. Explain: (a) Why Berlin has a higher average summer temperature than Valencia.  
(b) Why the shores of Iceland have temperatures in January similar to those of the northern shores of the Black Sea.  
(c) Why Central Europe has most rain in summer.
7. To what extent is it true to say that "the three southern peninsulas of Europe have warm winters and most rain in winter"? Account for any variations you have noted.
8. Describe the main changes in natural vegetation which may be observed during journeys—  
(a) from Havre to Moscow;  
(b) from Archangel to the Crimea.
9. On a sketch-map of Europe show the chief areas producing wheat, marking distinctively those which have a surplus for export.
10. What are the climatic conditions which determine the areas in which large-scale production of vines, flax, and olives may occur? Illustrate by reference to the chief producing areas in Europe.
11. Give instances in Europe of the development of new coalfields in the twentieth century and state carefully the present and potential effects of such developments.
12. On an outline map of Europe, mark the political boundaries and insert the chief mining centres, excluding coal and iron regions. Add a key to your map.
13. "European supplies of gold, silver, tin, and nickel are insignificant." From what parts of the world does Europe obtain these minerals?
14. "The greatest industrial advances have occurred in those European countries possessing large supplies of coal and iron." To what extent is this statement true?
15. Show by sketch-maps or diagrams the control exercised by physical features on the routes followed by any two of the railway routes given in Fig. 22.

16. Compare the distribution of population in—  
(a) Italy and the Balkan Countries;  
(b) Belgium and Portugal.

Account for any marked differences.

17. State concisely the racial problems affecting Yugoslavia, Romania, and Poland respectively.

18. Compare and contrast the economic development of Aquitaine and the Paris Basin.

19. On a map of France mark one important area for each of the following:—

- (a) flax, apples, olives, wheat;
- (b) iron ore, bauxite (aluminium), kaolin;
- (c) the chief fishing centres and naval ports;
- (d) one important town concerned with the manufacture of each of the following: silk, cotton, linen, pottery, gloves.

20. (a) Draw a map of France indicating the main rivers, then mark and name clearly the principal canals connecting them.

(b) Why is it that the volume of canal traffic is much greater in France than in Britain?

21. Construct a map showing the principal air routes between England and the Continent, and calculate the approximate distance along each route.

22. Describe the position of the ports of Marseilles, Havre, and Bordeaux. Discuss the relative importance of these ports to France.

23. Why is it that most of the French farms are extremely small? What are the advantages and disadvantages of such a system?

24. Make a list of the chief imports into France, adding if possible the value of each in a recent year. To what extent can these imports be obtained from her colonies?

25. Compare the farming and industrial activities of Holland and Belgium.

26. Describe the methods adopted by the Dutch to improve (a) Polder land, (b) Geestland.

27. Which is better situated for dealing with the trade of Holland—Amsterdam or Rotterdam?

28. How does the trade of Holland and Belgium benefit by their colonial possessions?

29. (a) Divide an outline map of Belgium into natural regions and indicate the distribution of crops within them.

(b) On a second map mark the chief industrial centres and name the industries connected with each.

30. Give reasons for the division of the Netherlands into two political regions.

31. Compare the physical and climatic conditions of Denmark and the Central Plain of Ireland. Which appears to be better placed for the development of dairy farming?

32. Account for the importance of Copenhagen.

33. Compare the positions of Gibraltar, Copenhagen, and Istanbul.

34. How has the construction of the Kiel Canal affected Denmark?

35. Draw comparisons between Norway and Sweden with regard to (a) Physical features, (b) Climate, (c) Occupations.

36. Describe the characteristic features of a Norwegian fiord.

37. Explain clearly why the possession of a large share of the carrying trade of the world is of great importance to the people of Norway.

38. Describe the position of Oslo and Stockholm, and discuss the suitability of these towns to be the capitals of their respective countries.

39. How has the creation of the Baltic States affected the trade of Russia?

40. Give an account of the mineral and agricultural resources of Poland.

41. Draw sketch-maps to illustrate the importance of the position of (a) Danzig, (b) Warsaw, (c) Vilna.

42. Explain how the canal system of Germany tends to focus the trade of the country upon the port of Hamburg. Illustrate your answer by a sketch-map.

43. Give an account of the cargoes which a vessel plying between England and the Baltic would probably carry in each direction.

44. Show how the lives and occupations of the inhabitants of either Finland or Switzerland are influenced by geographical conditions.

45. Select two markedly different regions of Europe which are sparsely inhabited. Describe the lives of the inhabitants and account for the lack of development within the areas.

46. Draw a sketch-map of the Rhine Basin. Indicate clearly the Rift Valley, the canals linking the Rhine or its tributaries with other river systems; the chief river ports and mining centres.

47. Show on a sketch-map the outlets for the Ruhr coalfield and sources of supply of imported raw materials.

48. What is the importance of the potash industry to Germany? In what other region of Europe do valuable potash deposits occur?

49. Point out similarities and differences in the occupations of the people of Denmark and Holland.

50. Describe and account for the distribution of textile industries in Germany.

51. Describe the methods which have been employed in various parts of Germany to improve the fertility of the soil.



52. Compare the Rhone and the Rhine as highways of trade.
53. Explain why the town of Vienna was adversely affected by the creation of a number of independent states in Central Europe.
54. What geographical factors help to account for the development of manufactures in Switzerland? Which are the chief manufacturing centres?
55. Show clearly on a sketch-map the principal routes across the Alps. Mark the chief towns controlling the passes.
56. Compare and contrast Switzerland and Finland.
57. Describe the sites of the towns of Berne, Interlaken, and Basel.
58. Point out the main differences in physical features and economic development of Bohemia, Moravia, and Slovakia.
59. Discuss the relative advantages of North Sea and Mediterranean ports for handling the trade of Bohemia.
60. Compare the economic resources of Hungary and Austria.
61. Draw a sketch-map, similar to Fig. 63, to show the position of Budapest.
62. Describe the course of the River Danube, naming the countries and referring to the physical characteristics of the different regions through which it flows.
63. Obtain temperature and rainfall statistics for the plains of Hungary and the Paris Basin. Draw graphs to show the climatic conditions prevailing and account for any marked differences indicated by the graphs.
64. "A river is generally a bad political boundary." By examining the rivers of Europe which form political boundaries discuss the truth of this assertion.
65. Compare the physical features of the opposite shores of the Adriatic Sea.
66. What are the characteristic features of the Karst type of scenery? Refer to three regions in Europe, one of them in Great Britain, in which such scenery occurs.
67. "The importance of the Balkan peninsula arises from the routes which cross it." Show on a sketch-map the principal Balkan routes and the physical features controlling them.
68. Some European countries have been provided with special facilities for trade at ports outside their own frontiers. Find as many examples as you can of such ports and briefly explain the circumstances which have made such arrangements necessary.
69. Write a brief description of the following regions:—Bessarabia, Dobruja, and Transylvania.
70. Compare the eastern and western basins of the Mediterranean Sea.
71. Show on a map of the Mediterranean Sea the parts of the coastline and the islands controlled by Britain and Italy respectively. Account for the growth of British interests in this part of the world.

72. Describe the physical features of Greece.
73. With the aid of sketch-maps account for the importance of the sites of (a) Belgrade, (b) Salonika, (c) Athens, (d) the island of Corfu.
74. "Extensive deforestation leads to rapid soil erosion." What does this statement mean? Give examples from Europe in illustration.
75. Which regions in Europe depend upon irrigation? Give an account of the farming activities practised in these regions.
76. Under what conditions of soil, climate, etc., are tropical or sub-tropical products such as rice, cocoa, etc., cultivated in Europe?
77. Account for—
  - (a) The development of manufactures in the northern plain of Italy.
  - (b) The decline in importance of Venice as a port.
  - (c) The greater production of Northern Italy compared with Peninsular Italy.
78. In some countries of Europe the industries are based on agricultural products. Compare Germany, Holland, and Italy in this respect.
79. Compare the development of the lands on the western and eastern slopes of the Apennines.
80. Describe the sites of the towns of (a) Milan, (b) Rome, (c) Genoa, (d) Trieste, and account for their development.
81. Write brief geographical descriptions of Iceland, Spitzbergen, Sardinia, Crete, and Cyprus.
82. Describe the changes in physical, climatic, and vegetation conditions likely to be experienced during a journey following a line drawn from Toulouse to Malaga.
83. On a map of the Iberian peninsula mark (a) fold mountains, (b) irrigated regions, (c) fishing ports, (d) centres of copper, coal, mercury, and iron mining, (e) rail routes connecting (i) Corunna and Bilbao, (ii) Valencia and Cadiz, (iii) Barcelona and Madrid. Comment upon these routes.
84. Distinguish between the "Atlantic" and "Pacific" types of coastline. Give examples of each type along the coast of Europe.
85. Can the physical features of Iberia be regarded in these days as obstacles to the unification of the peninsula under one political control?
86. What results of the Moorish occupation of Spain are still evident in the country?
87. Comment upon the suitability of Madrid as the capital of Spain.
88. Show how modern inventions and the opening up of new lands have affected the trade of Spain.
89. Compare under the headings (a) physical features, (b) climate, (c) products, (d) occupations—
  - (i) Catalonia and Castile.
  - (ii) Galicia and Andalusia.

90. Make a list of the colonial possessions of Portugal, and write a brief geographical account of *one* of them.

91. State exactly the regions included in the U.S.S.R.

92. In view of the vast area and resources of Russia, why has it become necessary to attempt to develop the Arctic regions? What progress has been made in these regions in recent years?

93. "Russia will eventually be better able to supply all her own requirements than either the U.S.A. or the British Empire." Discuss this statement.

94. What climatic conditions give rise to steppe vegetation? State exactly the extent of this type of vegetation in Europe and describe the mode of life of the inhabitants of the steppe lands.

95. Show how the distribution of soils in Russia gives support to the view that climatic factors influence the formation of a certain type of soil.

96. Summarise the changes which have occurred in Russian agriculture in recent years.

97. What changes have occurred in the distribution of crops in Russia? Give examples.

98. Describe the agricultural and industrial activities of the inhabitants of the Russian Ukraine.

99. Write an account of recent developments in the Ural region and in the Donetsk valley.

100. Draw a sketch-map to explain the growth of the towns of Moscow, Leningrad, Kiev, and Tiflis.

101. Select three regions of Europe in which the use of hydro-electric power has led to important industrial developments. Describe the industries which have arisen in each case.

102. What are the principal types of mountains? Give examples in Europe and some explanation of the mode of formation of each type.

103. On an outline map of Europe insert the 70° F. July and 32° F. January isotherms. Note the regions into which the continent is divided and describe the main features of the climate of each.

104. Account for any peculiarities you may notice in the course taken across Europe by the 32° F. January isotherm.

105. Study the map showing distribution of population in Europe. Give a general description of the distribution in the three southern peninsulas, and account for the more striking differences.

## INDEX

AARGAU, 154  
 Abo, 109  
 Adria, 208  
 Adrianople, 193  
 Adriatic (Coast), 176  
 Agriculture, 26-8, 66  
 Airways, 34  
 Ajaccio, 61  
 Albania, 192  
 Alexandrovsk, 32  
 Alfalfa, 236  
 Almaden, 237  
 Alps, 156-7  
 Alpine People, 38  
   — System, 4  
   — Tunnels, 32  
 Aluminium, 154  
 Ammeberg, 101  
 Amsterdam, 77  
 Andalusia, 237  
 Angiers, 50  
 Ankara, 193  
 Antwerp, 69, 71  
 Apennines, 205  
 Apulia, 224  
 Aquitaine, 46-8, 63  
 Aragon, 240  
 Archangel, 32  
 Ardennes, 71  
 Armentières, 51  
 Armorican System, 44  
 Arno, R., 220  
 Arras, 51  
 Athens, 202  
 Aubusson, 52  
 Auvergne, 52

BAKU, 295  
 Balearic Is., 242  
 Balkan Mts., 188  
 Baltic Heights, 122  
   — Region, 22  
   — Sea, 97, 196  
   — States, 110-12  
 Balts, 110  
 Bananas, 241  
 Barcelona, 232, 242  
 Basel, 156  
 Basques, 234

Bastia, 61  
 Batum, 258  
 Bavaria, 141  
 Brie, 48  
 Brindisi, 224  
 Brittany, 43-4  
 Bromberg, 116  
 Brownerths, 262  
 Brunn (Brno), 167  
 Bruges, 71  
 Brussels, 69-76  
 Bucharest, 183, 185  
 Budapest, 173  
 Bulgaria, 186-90  
 Bulgarians, 162  
 Burgas, 189-90  
 Burgundian Canal, 58

### CATTARO (Kotor), 177

Campine, 69  
 Canals (German), 126  
 Canary Is., 243  
 Candia, 204  
 Canea, 204  
 Cantabrians, 233  
 Carcassonne, 46, 48  
 Carnac, 46  
 Carpathians, 118, 233  
 Carrara, 219  
 Catalonia, 242  
 Catania, 225  
 Cattle-rearing, 46, 66  
 Caucasus, 253, 280, 294  
 Central Lowland, 4  
   — Plateaux, 41, 52-6  
 Cevennes, 52  
 Champagne, 49  
 Charleroi, 72  
 Chaux-de-Fonds, 153  
 Chemicals, 287  
 Chernozem, 262  
 Citrus Fruits, 225  
 Climate, 8-14  
 Clermont Ferrand, 53  
 Coal, 28, 79, 166, 276, 292  
 Coblentz, 136  
 Cocoa, 275

Colmar, 56  
 Cologne, 134  
 Coniferous Forests, 16  
 Constanza, 185  
 Copenhagen, 86  
 Copper, 237  
 Cork, 234, 244  
 Corinth Canal, 202  
 Corsica, 61  
 Cote d'Azur, 60  
   — d'Or, 59  
 Cotton, 241, 271, 275  
 Cracow, 118  
 Crete, 204  
 Cuxhaven, 127  
 Cyclades, 204  
 Cyprus, 198  
 Czechs, 147, 162

### DAIRYING, 27, 46, 71, 77, 142, 153, 209, 272-3

Dannemora, 101  
 Danube, 159-60  
   — Lowlands, 145-6  
 Danzig, 113, 116  
 Dates, 241  
 Debreczen, 170  
 Deciduous Forests, 17  
 Dedcagach, 188, 204  
 Denmark, 81-6  
 Dijon, 59  
 Dinant, 71  
 Dneiper, R., 290  
 Dobruja, 186  
 Dolines, 178  
 Donbas, 276, 288  
 Donetz, 276  
 Dresden, 130  
 Dry Farming, 236  
 Duisburg, 134  
 Dunes, 73  
 Durazzo, 192  
 Dusseldorf, 134  
 Dzungarian Gate, 254

EAST Indies, 80  
 Eindhoven, 79

Electricity, 30, 55-6, 95,  
100, 141-2, 213-  
14, 234, 282

Engadine, 157

Engineering, 102, 166,  
214, 285 *seq.*

Erivan, 295

Esbjerg, 86

Esparto, 236

Estonia, 110, 112

Etna, 225

FALUN, 101

Farming, One Crop, 27

Faroes, 86

Finland, 4, 106-9

Finns, 39

Fiords, 87, 100

Fishing, 82, 92, 233, 246

Fiume, 174, 177, 216

Fjelds, 87

Flax, 69, 110, 116

Flemish, 72

Florence, 22

Flushing, 77

Fontainebleau, 48

Forests, 47, 94, 110-11,  
142, 260

Friedrichshafen, 142

France, 40-64

Fruits, 275

Furs, 273

GABLONZ (Jablonec),  
130, 166

Galatz, 185, 186

Galicja, 233

Garonne, 47

Gdynia, 116

Geelivara, 96, 100

Geestlands, 79, 81, 115

Geneva, 149

Genoa, 196, 216

Germany, 120-48

Ghent, 71

Gibraltar, 195, 198

Glass-Making, 130, 166

Glommen, R., 87

Goteborg, 104

Granada, 240

Grasse, 60

Graz, 144

Greece, 200-4

Grenoble, 60

Gronigen, 77

Gulf of Winter Warmth,  
10

HAARLEM, 77

Hague, The, 79

Hamburg, 126-7, 162

Havre, 50

Hammerfest, 92

Hango, 109

Helsingfors, 109

Hercynian System, 6,

Holland, 73-80

Hook of Holland, 77

Huelva, 239

Huertas, 241

Hungary, 170-4  
28

ICE Age, 7, 153

Iceland, 86

Igarka, 250, 267, 296

Ijmuiden, 77

Ile de France, 48

Imports (Invisible), 158

Industries, 30-31

Inland Drainage, 251

Inn, R., 157

Innsbruck, 144

Iron, 30, 56, 72, 144,  
234, 282

Irrigation, 265

Isotherms, 10-11

Istanbul, 193

Isthmus of Corinth, 202

Italy, 24, 205-27

JAVA, 65

Jonkoping, 104

Jura Mts., 152-3

Jurassic, 56

Jutland, 81

KAMCHATKA, 254

Kaolin (China Clay),  
52, 82, 166

Karlskrona, 104

Karst (Causses), 52, 178

Kharkov, 291

Kiel, 124

— Canal, 86

Kiev, 291

Kiruna, 100

Kolkhoze, 265

Konigsburg, 124

Kotor (Cattaro), 177

Kovno, 112

Krivoi-Rog, 290

LAKES, 101

Landes, 47, 81

Lannemezan, 48

Lapps, 39, 100

Las Palmas, 243

Latvia, 110

Le Creusot, 55

Leghorn, 221

Leningrad, 112, 292-4

Letts, 112

Leyden, 77

Libau, 112

Liège, 72

Liepzig, 130

Lignite, 129

Lille, 51

Limoges, 52

Linen, 70

Lisbon, 232, 246

Lithuania, 110, 112

Lodz, 117

Loess, 117

Lofoten Is., 90, 92

Longwy, 56

Longyearben, 96

Lorraine, 56

Louisiana, 225

Lubeck, 124

Lucca, 221

Lulea, 100

Lumbering, 296

Luxembourg, 72-3

Lyons, 58-60

MACCHIA (Maquis),  
61

Macedonia, 202

Madrid, 232, 236-7

Magdeburg, 128

Magnitogorsk, 292

Magyars, 39, 162

Mainz, 138

Malmö, 104

Malta, 195, 198

Mannheim, 138

Margarine, 77

Market Gardening, 46,  
77  
Maréges, 56  
Marseilles, 43, 61  
Mediterranean Coast-  
lands, 60  
— People, 38  
— Region, 6, 26  
— Sea, 194-8  
Memel, 112  
Mercury, 237  
Meseta, 229, 234-6  
Messina Straits, 225  
Metz, 56  
Meuse, 71, 73  
Milan, 207, 215  
Minerals, 28-30, 281  
Minorities, 39, 160-3  
Mongolian People, 39  
Mons, 72  
Montélimar, 59  
Moraines, 7, 208, 250  
Moravia, 167  
Morea, 201  
Moscow, 285-7  
Mulhouse, 56  
Munich, 141  
Murmansk, 249, 294

NANCY, 56  
Nantes, 43, 46  
Naples, 207, 223  
Narva, 111  
Narvik, 95, 100  
Natural Regions, 18-25  
Nehrungs, 124  
Neuchâtel, 153  
Nicosia, 198  
Nidaros, 96  
Nish, 180  
Nordic People, 38  
Norrköping, 104  
Norrland, 100  
North Cape, 91  
Northern Mountains, 4,  
7  
Norway, 87-96  
Nurnberg, 139

OCEAN Routes, 31-2  
Odessa, 290  
Oils, 61, 280, 292  
Olives, 212, 221, 224  
Oporto, 244

Oranges, 242  
Orleans, 50  
Oslo, 95-6  
Ostrava, 167

PALERMO, 225  
Paris, 43, 50-51  
— Basin, 48-51, 63  
Patros, 202  
Pauillac, 47  
Peat, 280  
People of Europe, 38-9  
Philippopolis, 190  
Pilsen, 164  
Pindus Mountains, 201  
Piraeus, 202  
Pisa, 221  
Platinum, 291  
Ploesti, 185  
Po River, 208  
Podzols, 262, 273  
Poitou, 46  
Poland, 113-19  
Polders, 69, 74-7, 126  
Polish Corridor, 115  
Poljes, 178  
Population, 34-8  
Porjus, 100  
Port Said, 195  
Portugal, 224-6  
Potash, 131  
Potatoes, 116, 124  
Pottery, 246  
Prague, 166  
Priwet Marshes, 7, 116  
Pushta, 172  
Puys, 52  
Pyrenees, 40, 234  
Pyrites, 94

RAILWAY Routes,  
32-4  
Rainfall, 12  
Ratisbon, 142  
Rayon, 214  
Reclamation, 265  
Rennes, 46  
Reims, 49  
Reykjavik, 86  
Rhine, 73, 139-41  
— Gorge, 134, 136, 145  
— Highlands, 134  
Rhodope Mountains,  
190

Rhone, 58, 60  
Ria, 44  
Rice, 209, 241, 272  
Rift Valley, 6, 56, 137-8  
Rio Tinto, 237  
Riviera, 220  
Romania, 182-6  
Romanians, 162  
Rome, 222  
Roquefort, 52  
Rotterdam, 77, 78, 126  
Roubaix, 51  
Rouen, 50  
Rubber, 268  
Ruhr Coalfield, 132  
Ruschuk, 190  
Russia, 22  
Ruthenia, 167  
Rye, 120

SAAHEIM, 95  
Saar, 138  
Saeters, 90, 92  
St. Etienne, 55, 59  
St. Gallen, 154  
St. Moritz, 147  
Salonika, 202  
Salt, 56, 118  
Sambre River, 71  
Santiago, 232  
Saone River, 58  
Sardinia, 226  
Saverne Gate, 58  
Saxony, 129  
Scania, 104  
Schaffhausen, 154  
Scheldt River, 69  
Schleswig-Holstein, 124  
Scutari, 192  
Sea of Azov, 290  
Sheep-rearing, 27  
Sicily, 224-6  
Sierra Morena, 237  
Silesia, 117, 128  
Silk, 59, 211, 214  
Skerryguard, 87  
Slavs, 38  
Slovakia, 167  
Slovaks, 147  
Smaland, 104  
Smyrna, 193  
Sofia, 188, 190  
Soils, 261-3  
Solothurn, 153  
Sound Dues, 82

- Sovkhoze, 265  
 Soya Bean, 275  
 Spas, 48  
 Spitzbergen, 96  
 Split (Spalato), 174, 177  
 Sporades, 204  
 Stalingrad, 290  
 Steppe, 257, 260  
 Stockholm, 102  
 Strasbourg, 138  
 Stuttgart, 139  
 Sudeten Lands, 130, 147  
 Suez Canal, 196  
 Sugar, 24, 165, 291  
 Sulphur, 225  
 Susak, 177  
 Sweden, 97-105  
 Switzerland, 149-58  
 Syracuse, 225  
 Szeged, 172
- TEA, 275, 294  
 Teneriffe, 243  
 Ternesvar, 185  
 Textiles, 130, 134, 144,  
 166, 214, 246  
 Thessaly, 202  
 Thorshaven, 86  
 Thuringia, 131-2
- Tiber River, 222  
 Tiflis, 295  
 Tilburg, 79  
 Tirana, 192  
 Tokay, 171  
 Tours, 50  
 Transylvania, 184  
 Trieste, 162, 216  
 Tromsö, 92  
 Trondheim, 96  
 Tundra, 256, 259, 273  
 Tungshen, 244  
 Turin, 214-5  
 Turkey, 192-3  
 Tuscany, 222
- UKRAINE, 287  
 Urals, 252, 291
- VALLADOLID, 236  
 Valletta, 198  
 Valona, 192  
 Vardar River, 180  
 Varna, 190  
 Venice, 196, 216  
 Versailles, 39  
 Verviers, 71  
 Vesuvius, 223
- Vienna, 145-6  
 Vilna, 112  
 Vines, 211, 221  
 Vistula River, 119  
 Volcanoes, 225
- WALLOONS, 72  
 Warsaw, 116  
 Watch-making, 153  
 Westphalia, 132-4  
 Whaling, 94  
 Wheat, 84, 209  
 Wolfram, 244, 246  
 Wool, 237  
 Wuppertal, 133
- YPRES, 69, 71  
 Yssel River, 76  
 Yugoslavia, 175-81
- ZAGREB, 181  
 Zeeland, 76  
 Zlin, 166  
 Zuider Zee, 76  
 Zurich, 153  
 Zurun, 153





## DATE OF ISSUE

This book must be returned within 3, 7, 14 days of its issue. A fine of ONE ANNA per day will be charged if the book is overdue.

---

1

**PRESCRIBED AS A**  
**TEXT BOOK**

**Not to be issued without permission.**